UB
160
.A5
1932
c.2

WAR DEPARTMENT

TENTATIVE
INFANTRY DRILL REGULATIONS
1932

(For Service Test Only)

FM 22-5

25 Jun 32

[redacted]
U.S. War Dept.

TENTATIVE
INFANTRY DRILL REGULATIONS
1932

(For Service Test Only)

PREPARED UNDER DIRECTION OF THE
CHIEF OF INFANTRY

UNITED STATES
GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE
WASHINGTON : 1932

For sale by the Superintendent of Documents, Washington, D. C.

PROPERTY OF US ARMY

[redacted]
UB
T60+
A5
1932
c.2
[redacted] 198606

WAR DEPARTMENT,
WASHINGTON, *June 25, 1932.*

Tentative Infantry Drill Regulations, 1932 (for service test only), is published for the information and guidance of all concerned.

[A. G. 062.11 (7-24-31).]

BY ORDER OF THE SECRETARY OF WAR:

DOUGLAS MACARTHUR,
General,
Chief of Staff.

OFFICIAL:

C. H. BRIDGES,
Major General,
The Adjutant General.

II

[redacted]

TABLE OF CONTENTS

PART ONE. Drill

	Paragraphs	Pages
CHAPTER 1. Introduction	1–18	1–8
2. Dismounted without arms.		
SECTION I. General	19–21	9–10
II. Elementary instruction	22–26	11–14
III. Steps and marchings	27–36	14–16
3. Dismounted with rifle and automatic rifle.		
SECTION I. General	37–40	17–20
II. Manual of arms	41–58	20–26
III. Loadings and firings	59–63	27–28
4. Manual of the pistol.		
SECTION I. General	64–65	29–30
II. Dismounted	66–74	30–31
III. Mounted	75–81	31–32
5. Close order—rifle company.		
SECTION I. The rifle squad	82–95	33–37
II. The rifle section	96–107	37–39
III. The rifle platoon	108–121	40–43
IV. The rifle company	122–131	44–50
6. Extended order.		
SECTION I. General	132–133	51–53
II. The individual skirmisher	134–144	53–59
III. The rifle squad	145–153	59–61
IV. The rifle section	154–166	62–66
V. The rifle platoon	167–176	66–70
7. Close-order drill—the machine-gun company.		
SECTION I. General, without transportation	177	71–72
II. The machine-gun squad, with transportation	178–190	72–78
III. The machine-gun section, with transportation	191–202	78–81
IV. The machine-gun platoon, with transportation	203–208	81–84
V. The machine-gun company, with transportation	209–215	84–86
8. Gun drill—the machine-gun company.		
SECTION I. Elementary machine-gun drill	216–232	87–95
II. Advanced machine-gun drill	233–251	95–107
III. Tests in elementary and advanced gun drill and immediate action	252–259	107–110
IV. Machine-gun battery drill	260–275	110–122
9. Extended order—the machine-gun company.		
SECTION I. General	276–279	123–124
II. The machine-gun squad	280–284	124–126
III. The machine-gun section	285–290	126–128
IV. The machine-gun platoon	291–298	128–131
V. Extended-order exercises	299	131–138

	Paragraphs	Pages
CHAPTER 10. Battalion, regimental, and brigade headquarters companies.		
SECTION I. General	300-304	139-142
II. Formations	305-312	142-148
11. Close-order drill—the howitzer company.		
SECTION I. General, without transportation	313	149
II. The howitzer squad, with transportation	314-320	149-153
III. The howitzer platoon, with transportation	321-334	153-157
IV. The howitzer company, with transportation	335-340	157-159
12. Gun drill—the howitzer company.		
SECTION I. 37-mm gun drill	341-353	160-172
II. 3-inch trench mortar drill	354-364	172-179
III. Ammunition drill	365-373	179-182
13. Extended order—the howitzer company.		
SECTION I. General	374-376	183-184
II. The howitzer squad	377-380	184-185
III. The howitzer platoon	381-391	185-189
14. The service company of the regiment	392-395	190-199
15. Formations of the battalion, regiment, and brigade.		
SECTION I. The battalion	396-400	200-207
II. The regiment	401-407	207-213
III. The brigade	408-409	213
16. Drill and combat signals.		
SECTION I. General	410-411	214
II. Whistle signals	412-414	215
III. General arm-and-hand signals	415-439	215-220
IV. Additional arm-and-hand signals for rifle companies	440-441	220
V. Additional arm-and-hand signals for machine-gun companies	442-449	220-221
VI. Additional arm-and-hand signals for howitzer companies	450-459	221-222
VII. Arm-and-hand signals for service companies (transportation)	460-469	222-224
VIII. Bugle signals	470-471	224
PART TWO. Ceremonies and inspections		
CHAPTER 1. Ceremonies.		
SECTION I. General rules	472-478	225-226
II. Reviews	479-482	226-234
III. Parades	483-487	234-239
IV. Presentation of decorations	488	239-241
V. Escorts	489-491	241-245
VI. Guard mounting, foot troops	492-494	245-251
VII. Relieving the old guard	495-502	252-254
Inspections.		
SECTION I. The rifle company	503-506	255-258
II. The machine-gun company	507-508	258-260
III. The battalion	509-516	260-262

	Paragraphs	Pages
CHAPTER 2. Inspections—Continued.		
SECTION IV. Battalion, regimental and brigade headquarters companies	517–518	262–263
V. The howitzer company	519–520	263–265
VI. The service company of the regiment	521	266
VII. The regiment	522–523	266
3. Manual of the guidon.		
SECTION I. General	524	267
II. Dismounted	525–535	267–269
III. Mounted	536	269–270
4. Manual of the saber.		
SECTION I. General	537	271–272
II. Dismounted	538–543	272–274
III. Mounted	544–546	274–275
5. Manual of the color and standard.		
SECTION I. General rules	547–550	276–280
II. Manual of the color	551–555	280–281
III. Manual of the standard	556–562	281–282
PART THREE. The infantry pack, display of equipment, and tent drill		
CHAPTER 1. The infantry pack.		
SECTION I. Methods of attaching and assembling	563–575	283–295
II. Adjustment of equipment	576–578	295–296
III. Special equipment	579	296–297
2. Display of equipment, foot troops, dismounted and mounted	580–584	298–302
3. Shelter-tent drill, foot troops.		
SECTION I. Pitching single shelter tents	585–589	303–305
II. Pitching double shelter tents	590–593	305–307
III. When packs are not carried	594	307
IV. To strike shelter tents	595–599	307
V. In the field	600–601	307–308
4. Wall and pyramidal tent drill.		
SECTION I. To pitch, strike, and fold common and wall tents	602–604	309–310
II. To pitch, strike, and fold pyramidal tents	605–607	310–313
III. In the field	608–609	313
APPENDIX I. Equipment carried by the rifle squad		314–316
II. Equipment carried by the machine-gun squad		317–318

TENTATIVE

INFANTRY DRILL REGULATIONS, 1932

(FOR SERVICE TEST ONLY)

PART ONE

DRILL

		Paragraphs
CHAPTER 1.	Introduction	1–18
2.	Dismounted without arms	19–36
3.	Dismounted with rifle and automatic rifle	37–63
4.	Manual of the pistol	64–81
5.	Close order—rifle company	82–131
6.	Extended order	132–176
7.	Close-order drill—the machine-gun company	177–215
8.	Gun drill—the machine-gun company	216–275
9.	Extended order—the machine-gun company	276–299
10.	Battalion, regimental, and brigade headquarters companies	300–312
11.	Close-order drill—the howitzer company	313–340
12.	Gun drill—the howitzer company	341–373
13.	Extended order—the howitzer company	374–391
14.	The service company of the regiment	392–395
15.	Formations of the battalion, regiment, and brigade	396–409
16.	Drill and combat signals	410–471

CHAPTER 1

INTRODUCTION

1. Definitions.

Alignment.—A straight line upon which several elements are formed, or are to be formed; or the dressing of several elements upon a straight line.

Base.—The element on which a movement is regulated.

Center.—The middle point or element of a command.

Column.—A formation in which the elements are placed one behind another.

Depth.—The space from head to rear of any formation or of a position, including the leading and rear elements. The depth of a man is assumed to be 12 inches.

Distance.—Space between elements in the direction of depth. Distance is measured with respect to dismounted men, from the back of the man in front to the breast of the man in rear; mounted men and animals, from the croup of the animal in front to the head of the animal in rear; vehicles, from the rear part of the vehicle in front to the front part of the vehicle or head of animal hitched thereto (as the case may be) in rear. Distance between troops in formation is measured from the rearmost individual, rank, or line, whether of men, animals, or vehicles of the unit in front to the foremost individual, rank, or line, whether of men, animals, or vehicles of the unit in rear. The commander of any unit, or of any element thereof, and those accompanying him are not considered in measuring distance between units. The color and guard are not considered in measuring distance between subdivisions of a unit with which they are posted. The distance between ranks of dismounted men is 40 inches in both line and column. The distance between ranks of mounted men in close order is 45 inches (1½ paces).

Double time.—Cadence at the rate of 180 steps per minute.

Element.—A file, squad, section, platoon, company, or larger body, forming part of a still larger body.

File.—A column of men one behind the other.

Flank.—The right or left of a command in line or in column or the element on the right or left of the line. Also the side of a force or of a position in the direction of depth.

Formation.—Arrangement of the elements of a command. The placing of all fractions in their order in line, in column, or for battle.

Front.—The space occupied by an element measured from one flank to the opposite flank. The front of a man is assumed to be 22 inches.

Guide.—An officer, noncommissioned officer, or private upon whom the command (or elements thereof) regulates its march.

Head.—The leading element of a column.

Interval.—Space between elements of the same line. Interval is measured with respect to dismounted men from the elbow; mounted men from the knee; animals from the shoulder; vehicles from the hub of the wheel or the track. Between troops in formation it is measured from the left flank of the unit on the right, to the right flank of the unit on the left. The commander of any unit, or of any element thereof, and those accompanying him are not considered in measuring interval between units. The color and guard are not considered in measuring interval between subdivisions of a unit with which they are posted. The normal interval is 28 inches and the close interval 4 inches. The interval between mounted men is 6 inches.

Left.—The left extremity or element of a body of troops.

Line.—A formation in which the different elements are abreast of each other.

Mass formation.—The formation of any unit in which the squads in column are abreast of one another with close interval between men.

Order, close.—The formation in which the units are arranged in line or in column with normal or close intervals and distances.

Pace.—A step of 30 inches; the length of the full step in quick time.

Piece.—The term "piece" as used in these regulations means the rifle and the automatic rifle.

Quick time.—Cadence at the rate of 128 steps per minute.

Rank.—A line of men placed side by side.

Right.—The right extremity or element of a body of troops.

Step.—The distance measured from heel to heel between the feet of a man walking. A step may be any prescribed number of inches. The half step, right step, and left step are about 15 inches. The steps in quick and double time are 30 and 36 inches, respectively.

2. Purposes of close-order drill.—The purposes of drill are—

a. To enable a commander to move his command from one place to another in an orderly manner and to provide simple formations from which dispositions for combat may readily be assumed.

b. As an aid in disciplinary training.

c. To provide a means through ceremonies of enhancing the morale of troops and giving interesting spectacles to the public.

d. To give junior officers and noncommissioned officers practice in commanding troops.

3. Precision in drill.—In order best to accomplish its mission drill should be frequent and of short duration. Smartness and precision should be required in the execution of every detail.

4. Quibbling.—In the interpretation of these regulations, the spirit must be sought. Quibbling over the minutiæ of form is indicative of failure to grasp the spirit.

5. Explanation of text in using right and left.—Movements that may be executed toward either flank are explained as toward but one flank. To adapt a description of a movement executed toward one flank to its execution toward the opposite flank it is necessary only to substitute the word "left" for "right" as the case requires.

6. Movements.—*a.* In movements executed toward the flank when marching, the command of execution is given when either foot strikes the ground.

b. Any movement may be executed either from a halt or when marching unless otherwise prescribed. If at a halt the command for movements involving marching, such as 1. ***Column right (left),*** 2. ***MARCH,*** is not prefaced by the command ***Forward.***

7. Double time.—*a.* Any movement not specially excepted may be executed in double time.

b. If a unit is at a halt, or marching in quick time, and it is desired that a movement be executed in double time, the command ***Double time*** precedes the command of execution.

c. To hasten the execution of a movement begun in quick time, the command: 1. ***Double time,*** 2. ***MARCH,*** is given. Where applicable, the leading or base unit continues to march in quick time, or remains at a halt if already halted; the other units complete the execution of the movement in double time and then conform to the gait of the leading or base unit.

8. Revoking a command.—To revoke a command, or to begin anew a movement improperly begun from a halt, the command: ***AS YOU WERE,*** is given, at which the movement ceases and the former position is resumed.

9. General rules for the guide.—*a.* Unless otherwise announced, the guide of a platoon or subdivision of a company in column or line is right.

b. To march with the guide other than as prescribed above, or to change the guide, the command: ***Guide (right, left, or center),*** is given. The leading man in each file is responsible for the interval. The leading man in the flank file on the side of the guide is responsible for the direction and cadence of march.

c. In successive formations into line, the guide is toward the point of rest.

d. The announcement of the guide, when made in connection with a movement, follows the command of execution for the movement.

10. Intervals and distances.—Intervals and distances between units and between units and leaders are based upon multiples of three.

11. Partial changes of direction.—*a.* Partial changes of direction may be executed by interpolating in the preparatory command the word half, as ***Column half right,*** so as to change direction 45°.

b. Slight changes in direction are effected by the command: ***Incline to the right (left).*** The guide or guiding element moves in the indicated direction, and the remainder of the command conforms.

12. Distance and step.—*a.* Full distance in column of subdivisions is such that in forming line to the right or left the subdivisions will have their proper intervals.

b. In column of subdivisions, the guide of the leading subdivision is charged with the step and direction; the guides in the rear preserve the trace, step, and distance.

13. Formation in three ranks.—In close order, all details, detachments, and other bodies of troops are habitually formed as squads, sections, or platoons as herein prescribed.

14. Duties of noncommissioned officers.—As far as practicable, considerable responsibility and initiative should be given to noncommissioned officers; they should be required to exercise actual command of their units in drill, as they will in combat. In order to add prestige to noncommissioned officers, those who exercise command are posted at ceremonies at the head of their units.

15. Numbering of units.—Squads, sections, and platoons are numbered consecutively throughout the company, and thereafter retain their permanent designation.

16. Posts of officers, noncommissioned officers, guidons, and special units.—*a.* The posts of officers, noncommissioned officers, guidons, and special units, in the various formations of infantry units are shown in the figures in succeeding chapters which cover the drill of each unit.

b. When changes of formation involve changes of posts the new post is taken by the most convenient and direct route, except where otherwise prescribed, as soon as practicable after the command of execution for the movement; officers and noncommissioned officers who have prescribed duties in connection with the movement ordered take their new posts when such duties are completed. In executing any movement or facing, in aligning units, or in moving from one post to another, officers and noncommissioned officers maintain a military bearing and move with precision.

c. When acting as instructors, officers and noncommissioned officers go wherever their presence is necessary. They rectify mistakes and insure steadiness and promptness in the ranks.

d. In subsequent movements after the initial formation, guidons and special units maintain their relative positions with respect to the flank or end of the command on which they were originally posted.

e. In all formations and movements, a noncommissioned officer commanding a section, platoon, or company carries his rifle as the men do, if he is so armed. He takes the same post as prescribed for an officer in command. When giving commands, making reports, or drilling a unit, his rifle is at the right shoulder, if he be so armed.

17. The staff.—*a.* General, field, and staff officers are habitually mounted.

b. The staff of an officer forms in his rear in one rank at a distance of 1½ paces, the second officer in line immediately in rear of the commander, and the enlisted personnel forming with the staff in one rank immediately in rear of and at a distance of 1½ paces from the commissioned staff. If only one officer is present, he is posted 1 pace to the right and 1½ paces to the rear of the commander. Staff officers are arranged from right to left generally in order of rank, the senior on the right, but

the commander may cause them to be arranged in any order desired by him. The enlisted personnel forming with the staff is posted in the same order from right to left as the officers of the staff, except that the bearer of a general officer's flag is on the right.

c. When necessary to reduce the front of the staff, as in movements to the front, rear, right, or left, or in marching, each rank forms a column of threes, under the direction of the staff officer, on the right of the leading rank and follows the commander.

d. The second in command of a company and the guidon bearer are not included in the term "staff," but take post as indicated in Figures 14 and 15.

18. Commands.—*a.* Commands only are employed in close-order drill at attention.

b. In these regulations a command is the direction of the commander expressed orally and in prescribed phraseology.

c. Where it is not mentioned in the text who gives the prescribed commands, they will be given by the commander of the unit.

d. There are two kinds of commands:

(1) The preparatory command, such as ***Forward,*** which indicates the movement that is to be executed.

(2) The command of execution, such as ***MARCH, HALT,*** or ***ARMS,*** which causes the execution.

e. Preparatory commands are distinguished in these regulations by ***heavy type (boldface or blackface)*** and those of execution by ***BOLDFACE CAPITALS.***

f. The preparatory command is given at such interval of time before the command of execution as to admit of proper understanding, and to permit necessary commands of subordinate leaders; the command of execution is given at the instant the movement is to commence.

g. The tone of the command should be animated, distinct, and of a loudness proportioned to the number of men for whom it is intended. Indifference in giving commands must be avoided, as this leads to laxity in execution. Commands must be given with spirit.

h. Commanders of companies and larger units repeat such commands of their superiors as are to be executed by their units except where otherwise prescribed.

i. When giving commands to troops the commander faces them. When the section or platoon in close-order drill or in ceremonies is part of a larger unit, the leader turns his head toward the column to give commands but does not face about.

j. Officers and men fix their attention at the first word of command.

k. If all men in the unit are to execute the same movement simultaneously, the subordinate leaders do not repeat commands; otherwise they repeat the command or give the proper new command for the movement of their own unit.

CHAPTER 2

DISMOUNTED WITHOUT ARMS

		Paragraphs
SECTION I.	General	19–21
II.	Elementary instruction	22–26
III.	Steps and marchings	27–36

SECTION I

GENERAL

19. Duties of instructor.—The instructor explains briefly each movement, first executing it himself. He requires the recruits to take the proper positions unassisted and touches them only for the purpose of correction, when they are unable to correct themselves. He avoids keeping the recruits too long at any position or movement. But each position or movement should be understood before passing to another. The instructor exacts by degrees the desired precision and uniformity.

20. Grouping recruits.—*a.* To permit of more individual instruction, recruits are separated into groups, each group being as small as is consistent with the number of trained instructors available. Each group is then formed as, and called, a squad (see par. 84) except that men are not assigned specific squad duties.

b. As instruction progresses, the recruits are grouped according to proficiency, those showing a lack of aptitude and quickness being separated from the others and placed under the most experienced drill masters. Care should be taken that men who are naturally inapt are not ridiculed or treated harshly; an officer should carefully superintend the instruction of such men to insure that they are given firm, but quiet and considerate handling.

21. Instruction by the numbers.—All movements for the purpose of instruction may be divided into motions and executed

in detail. The command of execution determines the prompt execution of the first motion. The other motions, depending on the number, are executed at the commands ***TWO, THREE, FOUR.*** To execute the movement in detail, the instructor first cautions: ***By the numbers.*** All movements are then executed in detail, one motion for each count until he cautions: ***Without the numbers.***

SECTION II

ELEMENTARY INSTRUCTION

22. Position of the soldier, or of attention.—*a.* Heels on the same line and as near each other as the conformation of the man permits.

b. Feet turned out equally and forming an angle of 45°

c. Knees straight without stiffness.

d. Hips level and drawn back slightly; body erect and resting equally on hips; chest lifted and arched; shoulders square and falling equally.

e. Arms hanging straight down without stiffness, so that the thumbs are along the seams of the trousers; back of the hands out; fingers held naturally.

f. Head erect and squarely to the front; chin drawn in so that the axis of the head and neck is vertical; eyes straight to the front.

g. Weight of the body resting equally on the heels and the balls of the feet.

h. In assuming the position of the soldier, or of attention, the heels are brought together smartly and audibly.

23. Rests.—*a.* Being at a halt, the commands are: ***FALL OUT; REST; AT EASE;*** and 1. ***Parade,*** 2. ***REST.***

b. At the command ***FALL OUT,*** the men leave the ranks, but are required to remain in the immediate vicinity. The men resume their former places at attention at the command ***FALL IN.*** On the march men will fall in at ease unless they were at attention when the command ***FALL OUT*** was given.

c. At the command ***REST,*** the right foot is kept in place, but silence and immobility are not required.

d. At the command ***AT EASE,*** the right foot is kept in place. Silence but not immobility is required.

e. The commands being 1. ***Parade,*** 2. ***REST,*** at the command ***REST,*** move the left foot smartly about 15 inches to the left of the right foot keeping the legs straight, so that the weight

of the body rests equally on both feet. At the same time, clasp the hands behind the back, palms to the rear, thumb and fingers of the right hand clasping the left thumb, without constraint; preserve silence and immobility.

f. Being at any of the rests, except fall out, to resume the attention: 1. ***Squad,*** 2. ***ATTENTION.*** Take the position of the soldier.

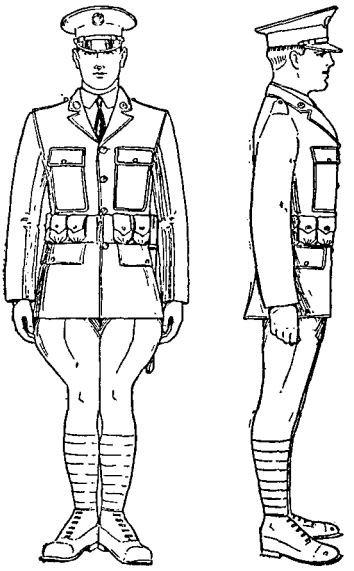


FIGURE 1.—Position of the soldier, or of attention

24. Eyes right or left.—The commands are: 1. ***Eyes,*** 2. ***RIGHT (LEFT),*** 3. ***Ready,*** 4. ***FRONT.*** At the command ***RIGHT,*** each man turns his head to the right. The eyes are fixed on the line of eyes of the men in, or supposed to be in, the same rank. At the command ***FRONT,*** turn the head and eyes to the front.

25. Facings.—Execute all facings in the cadence of quick time.

a. To the flank.—(1) The commands are: 1. ***Right (left),*** 2. ***FACE.*** Raise slightly the left heel and right toe; face to the

right, turning on the right heel, assisted by a slight pressure on the ball of the left foot. Hold the left leg straight without stiffness. ***(TWO)*** Place the left foot beside the right.

(2) Execute ***left face*** on the left heel in a corresponding manner.

b. To the rear.—The commands are: 1. ***About,*** 2. ***FACE.*** The movement is always made to the right about. It is executed in the same manner as ***right face,*** except that the turn is made so as to face to the rear.

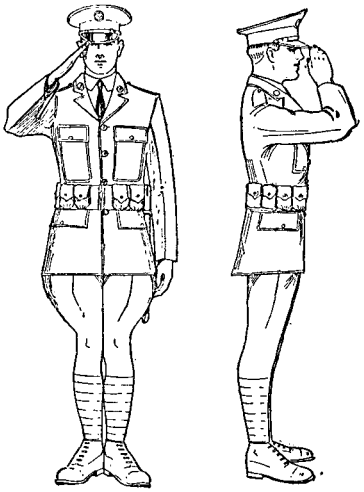


FIGURE 2.—Hand salute

26. Salute with the hand.—*a.* The commands are: 1. ***Hand,*** 2. ***SALUTE.*** Raise the right hand smartly until the tip of the forefinger touches the lower part of the headdress or forehead above and slightly to the right of the right eye, thumb and fingers extended and joined, palm to the left, upper arm horizontal, forearm inclined at about 45°, hand and wrist straight; at the same time turn the head and eyes toward the person saluted. ***(TWO)*** Drop the arm to its normal position by the side in one motion, at the same time turning the head and eyes to the front.

b. Execute the first position of the hand salute when 6 paces from the person saluted, or at the nearest point of approach,

if more than 6 paces. Hold the first position until the person saluted has passed, or the salute is returned. Then execute the second movement of the hand salute.

SECTION III

STEPS AND MARCHINGS

27. General.—*a.* All steps and marchings executed from the halt, except right step, begin with the left foot.

b. The instructor, when necessary, indicates the cadence of the step by calling one, two, three, four, the instant the left and right foot, respectively, should be planted.

28. Quick time.—*a.* Being at a halt, to march forward in quick time, the commands are: 1. ***Forward,*** 2. ***MARCH.***

b. At the command ***Forward,*** shift the weight of the body to the right leg, without perceptible movement.

c. At the command ***MARCH,*** move the left foot smartly straight forward 30 inches from the right, sole near the ground, and plant it without shock; next, in like manner, advance the right foot and plant it as above; continue the march. Swing the arms about 6 inches to the front and about 3 inches to the rear of the body.

29. Double time.—*a.* Being at a halt or in march in quick time, to march in double time the commands are: 1. ***Double time,*** 2. ***MARCH.***

b. If at a halt, at the command ***Double time,*** shift the weight of the body to the right leg without perceptible movement. At the command ***MARCH,*** raise the forearms, fingers closed, knuckles out, to a horizontal position along the waistline, take up an easy run with the step and cadence of double time, allowing a natural swinging motion to the arms.

c. If marching in quick time, at the command ***MARCH,*** given as either foot strikes the ground, take one step in quick time and then step off in double time.

d. To resume the quick time the commands are: 1. ***Quick time,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH,*** given as either foot strikes the ground, advance and plant the other foot in double time, resume the quick time, dropping the hands by the sides.

30. To halt.—*a.* To halt when marching in quick time the commands are: 1. ***Squad,*** 2. ***HALT.*** When marching forward or marking time, at the command ***HALT,*** given as either foot

strikes the ground, plant the other foot as in the movement being executed; raise and place the former by the latter.

b. To halt when marching in double time the commands are: 1. ***Squad,*** 2. ***HALT.*** At the command ***HALT*** given as either foot strikes the ground, plant the other foot as in double time, then halt in two counts as in quick time.

c. To halt from side step the commands are: 1. ***Squad,*** 2. ***HALT.*** At the command ***HALT*** given as the heels are together, plant the foot next in cadence as in the movement being executed, completing the halt when the heels are next brought together.

31. To mark time.—*a.* The commands are: 1. ***Mark time,*** 2. ***MARCH.***

b. Being in march, at the command ***MARCH,*** given as either foot strikes the ground, advance and plant the other foot; bring up the foot in rear, placing it so that both heels are on line and continue the cadence by alternately raising and planting each foot. The feet are raised 2 inches from the ground.

c. Being at a halt, at the command ***MARCH,*** raise and plant first the left foot, then the right as prescribed above.

32. Half step.—*a.* The commands are: 1. ***Half step,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** Take steps of 15 inches in quick time and 18 inches in double time in the same manner as in the full step.

b. Forward, half step, halt, and mark time may be executed one from the other in quick or double time.

c. To resume the full step from half step or mark time the commands are: 1. ***Forward,*** 2. ***MARCH.***

33. Side step.—*a.* Being at a halt or marking time the commands are: 1. ***Right (left) step,*** 2. ***MARCH.***

b. Carry the right foot about 15 inches to the right; place the left foot beside the right, left knee straight. Continue in the cadence of quick time.

c. The side step is used for short distances only and is not executed in double time.

34. To face in marching.—*a. To face in marching and advance from a halt.*—The commands are: 1. ***Column right (left),*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command of execution, turn in the designated direction on the ball of the right foot and at the same time step off in the new direction with the left foot with a half step, full step, or in double time, as the case may be.

b. To face to the right in marching and advance, being in march.—The commands are: 1. ***Column right (left),*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command of execution, given as either foot strikes the ground, advance and plant the other foot, turn on it in the new direction and step off with the foot on which the command ***MARCH*** was given.

35. To change step.—*a.* The commands are: 1. ***Change step,*** 2. ***MARCH.***

b. Being in march in quick time, at the command ***MARCH,*** given as the right foot strikes the ground, advance and plant the left foot; plant the toe of the right foot near the heel of the left and step off with the left foot.

c. Execute the change on the right foot similarly, the command ***MARCH*** being given as the left foot strikes the ground.

d. Being in march in double time, at the command ***MARCH,*** given as either foot strikes the ground, take one hop on the next foot and continue the march.

36. To march other than at attention.—*a.* The commands are: 1. ***Route step,*** 2. ***MARCH;*** or 1. ***At ease,*** 2. ***MARCH.***

b. At the commands: 1. ***Route step,*** 2. ***MARCH,*** men are not required to march at attention, in cadence, or maintain silence.

c. At the commands: 1. ***At ease,*** 2. ***MARCH,*** men are not required to march at attention or in cadence but they will maintain silence.

CHAPTER 3

DISMOUNTED WITH RIFLE AND AUTOMATIC RIFLE

	Paragraphs
SECTION I. General	37–40
II. Manual of arms	41–58
III. Loadings and firings	59–63

SECTION I

GENERAL

37. Instruction of recruit.—As soon as practicable, the recruit is taught the use, care, and nomenclature of the rifle. When fair progress has been made in the instruction without arms, he is taught the manual of arms. Instruction without arms and with arms should alternate.

38. Rules governing carrying of the rifle.—*a.* The rifle is not carried with cartridges in either the chamber or the magazine except when specifically ordered. When so loaded or when supposed to be loaded, it is habitually carried locked; that is, with the safety lock turned to the safe. At all other times it is carried unlocked, with the trigger pulled.

b. Whenever troops are formed under arms, pieces are immediately inspected at the commands: 1. ***Inspection,*** 2. ***ARMS.*** A similar inspection is made before dismissal. If cartridges are found in the chamber or magazine, they are removed and placed in the belt.

c. The cut-off is kept turned off except when cartridges are actually used.

d. The bayonet is fixed only when so ordered.

e. ***Fall in*** is executed with the rifle at the order arms.

f. (1) If at the order, unless otherwise prescribed, the rifle is brought to the right shoulder at the command ***MARCH*** (in quick time), the three motions corresponding with the first three steps. If ***Double time*** is given prior to ***MARCH,*** the unit is brought to the ***Right shoulder arms*** before the command ***Double time.***

(2) Movements may be executed at the trail by prefacing the preparatory command with the words ***at trail;*** as 1. ***At trail, forward,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** The trail is taken at the command ***MARCH.***

(3) When the facings, alignments, open and close ranks, side step, taking interval, and assembly are executed from the order, the rifle is brought to the trail while in motion and the order resumed on halting.

g. The rifle is brought to the order on halting. The execution of the order begins when the halt is completed.

h. In double time, when armed with the rifle, a disengaged hand is held as when without arms.

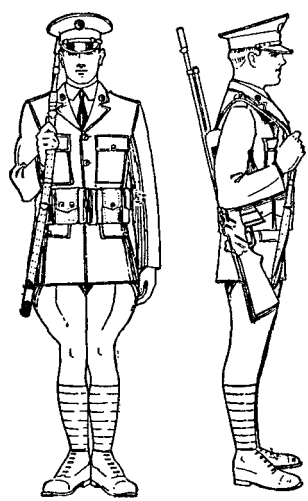


FIGURE 3.—Position of automatic rifle slung over right shoulder

39. Rules governing the carrying of the automatic rifle.—*a.* Except as otherwise prescribed, the automatic rifle is habitually carried slung over the right shoulder, butt down, barrel to the rear, right hand grasping the sling, hand in front of armpit.

b. For marches and field exercises, the automatic rifle may be carried slung over either shoulder.

c. When troops are at ease, the automatic rifle is kept slung unless otherwise ordered.

d. When troops are at rest, the automatic rifle may be unslung and the position of order arms taken.

e. The automatic rifleman does not execute the manual except:

(1) 1. ***Parade,*** 2. ***REST.*** Execute the movement as with the rifle, except that the right hand is not moved.

(2) 1. ***Inspection,*** 2. ***ARMS.*** At the command ***ARMS*** grasp the magazine with the left hand, at the same time pressing the magazine release with the right hand. Withdraw the magazine with the left hand and place in belt. Pull back the operating handle with the left hand.

(3) Being at inspection arms: 1. ***Order (port, right shoulder),*** 2. ***ARMS.*** At the command ***Order,*** pull the trigger, replace the magazine, and resume the position of the soldier, the automatic rifle being kept slung.

f. The automatic rifle belt is worn whenever the automatic rifle is carried.

g. Men armed with the automatic rifle salute with the hand salute.

h. For instruction, ceremonies, and drill, the organization commander may, at his discretion, substitute rifles for automatic rifles.

40. **Rules governing execution of the manual of arms.**—*a.* In all positions of the left hand at the balance, the thumb clasps the rifle; the sling is included in the grasp of the hand. In describing the manual of arms, the term "at the balance" in this text refers to the center of the rear-sight leaf of the M1903 rifle, and to the center of the groove on the hand guard of the M1917 rifle.

b. In all positions of the rifle, diagonally across the body, the position of the rifle, left arm and left hand is the same as in port arms.

c. In resuming the order from any position in the manual, the motion next to the last concludes with all fingers of the right hand grasping the rifle just above the lower band, the butt of the rifle about 3 inches from the ground, barrel to the rear, the left hand above and near the right, steadying the rifle, thumb and fingers extended and joined, forearm and wrist straight and inclining downward. To complete the order, lower the rifle

gently to the ground with the right hand, cut away the left smartly to the side, and take the position of order arms. Allowing the rifle to drop through the right hand to the ground, or similar abuse of the rifle to produce effect in executing the manual, is prohibited.

d. The cadence of the motions is that of quick time. The recruits are first required to give their whole attention to the details of the motions, the cadence being gradually acquired as they become accustomed to handling their rifles. The instructor may require them to count aloud in cadence with the motions.

e. (1) The manual is not executed while marching except in assuming the position of right shoulder arms at the commencement of a movement and in going from right shoulder to left shoulder and the reverse in order to prevent fatigue in long marches at attention.

(2) The manual is taught at a halt and the movements are, for the purpose of instruction, divided into motions and executed in detail. In this case, the command of execution determines the prompt execution of the first motion, and the commands ***TWO, THREE, FOUR,*** that of the other motions.

(3) To execute the movement in detail, the instructor first cautions: ***By the numbers.*** All movements divided into motions are then executed as above explained until he cautions: ***Without the numbers,*** or commands movements other than those in the manual of arms.

f. (1) Whenever circumstances require, the regular positions of the manual of arms and the firings may be ordered without regard to the previous position of the rifle.

(2) Under exceptional conditions of weather or fatigue, the rifle may be carried in any manner directed.

SECTION II

MANUAL OF ARMS

41. Position of order arms.—The butt rests on the ground, barrel to the rear, toe of the butt on line with the toe of, and touching the right shoe, right hand holding the rifle between the thumb and fingers, left hand as in position of the soldier without arms.

42. Being at order arms.—The commands are: 1. ***Trail,*** 2. ***ARMS.*** Raise the rifle and incline the muzzle forward so

that the barrel makes an angle of about 15° with the vertical, the right arm bent slightly.

43. Being at trail arms.—The commands are: 1. ***Order,*** 2. ***ARMS.*** Lower the rifle with the right hand and resume the order.

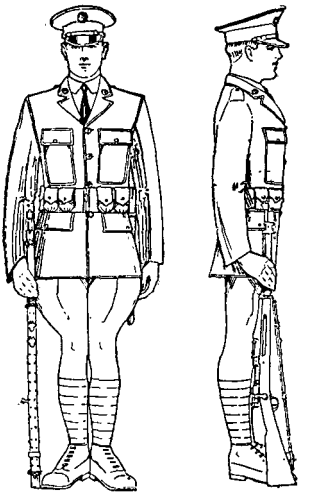


FIGURE 4.—Position of order arms

FIGURE 5.—Position of trail arms

44. Being at order arms.—The commands are: 1. ***Port,*** 2. ***ARMS.*** With the right hand, raise and throw the rifle diagonally across the body, regrasp it smartly with both hands at the same time; the right, at the small of the stock, palm down; the left, at the balance, palm toward the body, wrist straight; barrel up, sloping to the left and crossing opposite the junction of the neck with the shoulder; the right forearm horizontal; left forearm resting against the body; the rifle in a vertical plane parallel to the front.

45. Being at order arms.—The commands are: 1. ***Present,*** 2. ***ARMS.*** With the right hand, carry the rifle in front of the center of the body, barrel to the rear and vertical, grasp it with the left hand at the balance, forearm horizontal and resting against the body. Include the rear-sight leaf in the grasp of the left thumb. ***(TWO)*** Grasp the small of the stock with the right hand.

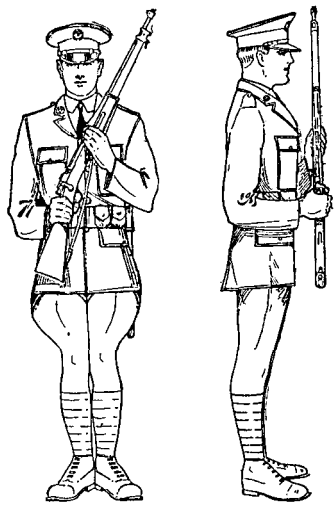


FIGURE 6.—Position of port arms

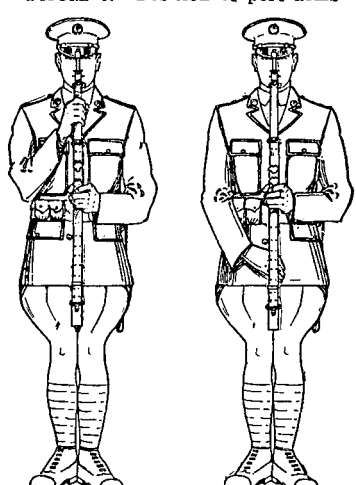


FIGURE 7.—1. *Present*, 2, *ARMS*

46. Being at present or port arms.—The commands are: 1. ***Order,*** 2. ***ARMS.*** Drop the rifle to the next to last position of order arms, at the same time regrasp it smartly with the

right hand just above the lower band and place the left hand above and near the right. (*TWO*) Complete the order, cutting away the left hand smartly to the side.

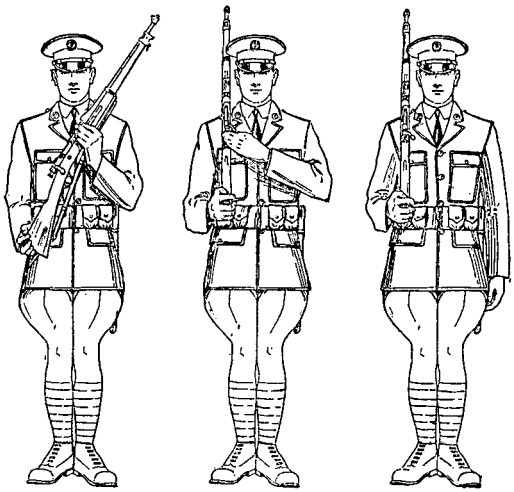
47. Being at order arms.—The commands are: 1. ***Inspection,*** 2. ***ARMS.*** Take the position of port arms except that the thumb and forefinger of the right hand grasp the bolt handle. (*TWO*) Turn the handle up, draw the bolt back, lower the head and eyes sufficiently to glance into the magazine. Having found the magazine empty or having emptied it, raise the head and eyes to the front.

48. Being at inspection arms.—The commands are: 1. ***Order (right shoulder, port),*** 2. ***ARMS.*** At the preparatory command, push the bolt forward, turn the handle down, pull the trigger, and assume the position of port arms. At the command ***ARMS,*** complete the movement ordered.

49. Being at order arms.—The commands are: 1. ***Right shoulder,*** 2. ***ARMS.*** With the right hand, raise and throw the rifle diagonally across the body; grasp it with the right hand at the butt, the heel between the first two fingers, thumb and fingers closed on the stock. (*TWO*) Without changing the grasp of the right hand, place the rifle on the right shoulder, barrel up and inclined at an angle of about 45° from the horizontal, trigger guard in the hollow of the shoulder, right elbow against the side, forearm horizontal, the rifle in a vertical plane, perpendicular to the front; carry the left hand, thumb and fingers extended and joined, to the small of the stock, first joint of the forefinger touching the cocking piece, wrist straight and elbow down. (*THREE*) Cut away the left hand smartly to the side.

50. Being at right shoulder arms.—The commands are: 1. ***Port,*** 2. ***ARMS.*** Press the butt down quickly and throw the rifle diagonally across the body, at the same time turning it to the left so as to bring the barrel up, the right hand retaining its grasp of the butt. (*TWO*) Change the right hand to the small of the stock.

51. Being at right shoulder arms.—The commands are: 1. ***Order,*** 2. ***ARMS.*** Press down the butt quickly and throw the rifle diagonally across the body, the right hand retaining the grasp of the butt. (*TWO*), (*THREE*) Execute ***order arms*** as prescribed from port arms.



First position Second position Third position

FIGURE 8.—1. *Right shoulder,* 2. *ARMS*

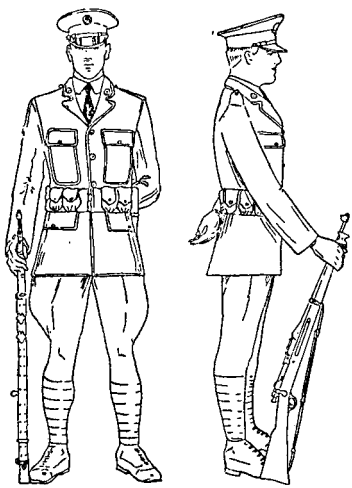


FIGURE 9.—Position of parade rest

52. **Being at port arms.**—The commands are: 1. ***Right shoulder,*** 2. ***ARMS.*** Change the right hand to the butt. ***(TWO), (THREE)*** Execute the last two movements as in right shoulder arms from order arms.

53. **Being at order arms.**—The commands are: 1. ***Parade,*** 2. ***REST.*** Move the left foot smartly about 15 inches to the left of the right foot, keeping the legs straight, so that the weight of the body rests equally on both feet. At the same time incline the muzzle of the rifle to the front, the right arm extended, right hand grasping the rifle just below the upper band. Hold the left hand behind the body resting in the small of the back, palm to the rear.

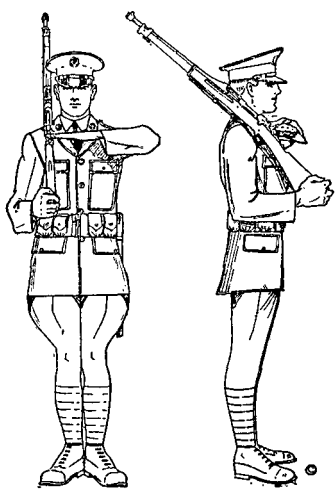


FIGURE 10.—Position of rifle salute

54. **Being at right shoulder arms, in march.**—The commands are: 1. ***Left shoulder,*** 2. ***ARMS.*** Move the right hand to the small of the stock, at the same time grasping the butt with the left hand, the heel between the first two fingers, thumb and fingers closed on the stock. ***(TWO)*** Place the rifle on the left shoulder. ***(THREE)*** Drop the right hand to the side.

Right shoulder from left shoulder, while in march, is executed in a similar manner.

55. Being at right shoulder arms.—The commands are: 1. ***Rifle,*** 2. ***SALUTE.*** Carry the left hand smartly to the small of the stock, forearm horizontal, palm of the hand down, thumb and fingers extended and joined, first joint of the forefinger touching end of cocking piece; look toward the person saluted. ***(TWO)*** Cut away the left hand smartly to the side; turn the head and eyes to the front.

56. Being at order or trail arms.—The commands are: 1. ***Rifle,*** 2. ***SALUTE.*** Carry the left hand smartly to the right side, palm of the hand down, thumb and fingers extended and joined, forearm and wrist straight, first joint of forefinger against the muzzle; look toward the person saluted. ***(TWO)*** Cut away the left hand smartly to the side; turn the head and eyes to the front.

57. Being at order arms.—The commands are: 1. ***Fix,*** 2. ***BAYONETS.***

a. If the bayonet scabbard is carried on the belt, move the muzzle of the rifle to the left front and grasp the rifle below the stacking swivel with the left hand; grasp the bayonet with the right hand, back of the hand toward the body; pressing the spring with the forefinger, draw the bayonet from the scabbard and fix it on the barrel, glancing at the muzzle; resume the order.

b. If the bayonet is carried on the haversack, draw and fix the bayonet in the most convenient manner.

58. Being at order arms.—The commands are: 1. ***Unfix,*** 2. ***BAYONETS.***

a. If the bayonet scabbard is carried on the belt, take the position for fixing bayonets; grasp the handle of the bayonet with the right hand, pressing the spring, raise the bayonet until the handle is about 12 inches above the muzzle of the rifle; drop the point to the left, back of the hand toward the body, and glancing at the scabbard, return the bayonet, the blade passing between the left arm and the body; regrasp the rifle with the right hand and resume the order.

b. If the bayonet scabbard is carried on the haversack, take the bayonet from the rifle as described above and return it to the scabbard in the most convenient manner.

SECTION III

LOADINGS AND FIRINGS

59. General.—*a.* The commands for loading and firing are the same whether standing, kneeling, sitting, or lying down.

b. The instruction in firing is preceded by a command for loading.

c. Except for ceremonial firing, loadings and firings are executed only in single rank or skirmish formation. For ceremonial firing the first rank only of the firing unit executes the loadings and firings.

d. Rifles having been ordered loaded, are kept loaded without command until the command ***UNLOAD*** or ***INSPECTION ARMS,*** fresh clips being inserted when the magazine is exhausted.

60. To load.—*a.* Being in single rank or skirmish formation at a halt, the commands are: 1. ***With dummy (blank or ball) cartridges,*** 2. ***LOAD.*** At the command ***LOAD*** each front rank rifleman or skirmisher faces half right and carries the right foot about 15 inches to the right to such a position as will insure the greatest firmness and steadiness of the body; raises or lowers the rifle and drops it into the left hand at the balance, left thumb extended along the stock, muzzle at the height of the breast, and if armed with the M1903 rifle, turns the cut-off up. With the right hand he turns the bolt and draws it back; takes a loaded clip and inserts the end in the clip slots; places his thumb on the powder space of the top cartridge, the fingers extending around the rifle and tips resting on the magazine floor plate; forces the cartridges into the magazine by pressing down with the thumb; removes the clip; thrusts the bolt home, turning down the handle; turns the safety lock to the safe and carries the hand to the small of the stock. Automatic riflemen do not execute the loadings or firings in close order.

b. For instruction in loading the commands are: 1. ***Simulate,*** 2. ***LOAD.*** Execute as above described except that the cut-off (M1903 rifle) remains off and the handling of the cartridges is simulated. The recruits are first taught to simulate loading and firing. After a few lessons, dummy cartridges may be used. Later blank cartridges may be used.

c. The M1903 rifle may be used as a single loader by turning the magazine off. The magazine may be filled in whole or in

part while off or on by pressing single cartridges down and back until they are in the proper place. The use of the rifle as a single loader is, however, to be regarded as exceptional. The M1917 rifle can not be used as a single loader.

61. To unload.—Being in line or skirmish formation the command is: ***UNLOAD.*** Take the position of load, turn the safety lock (M1903 rifle) up (if armed with the M1917 rifle turn the safety lock to the front), and move the bolt alternately backward and forward until all the cartridges are ejected. After the last cartridge is ejected, the chamber is closed by first thrusting the bolt forward slightly to free it from the stud holding it in place when the chamber is opened, pressing the follower down and back to engage it under the bolt, and then thrusting the bolt home. The trigger then is pulled, the cartridges are picked up, cleaned, and returned to the belt, and the rifle is brought to the order.

62. To fire by volley.—*a.* Being in any firing formation and rifles loaded the commands are: 1. ***Ready,*** 2. ***AIM,*** 3. ***Squad,*** 4. ***FIRE.*** (For ceremonial purposes.)

At the command ***Ready*** take the position of load if not already there and turn the safety lock to the ready. At the command ***AIM*** raise the rifle with both hands, butt placed and held firmly against the shoulder, left hand well under the rifle, grasping it at or in front of the balance, rifle resting in the palm of the left hand, right elbow at the height of the shoulder, right cheek held firmly against the stock as far forward as it can be placed without straining. The rifle is held 30° above the horizontal or, if ordered, at the horizontal. The left eye is closed, right eye aligning the sights. At the command ***FIRE*** the trigger is squeezed rapidly; the rifle is then lowered to the position of load and loaded.

b. To continue the firing: 1. ***AIM,*** 2. ***Squad,*** 3. ***FIRE.*** Each command is executed as previously explained. ***LOAD*** (from the magazine) is executed by drawing back and thrusting home the bolt with the right hand, leaving the safety lock turned up to the ready.

63. To cease firing.—The instructor blows a long blast of the whistle or commands: ***CEASE FIRING.*** Firing stops; sights are laid; rifles are held loaded and locked, in a position of readiness for instant resumption of firing. The men continue to observe the target or aiming point, or place at which the target disappeared, or at which it is expected to reappear.

CHAPTER 4

MANUAL OF THE PISTOL

	Paragraphs
SECTION I. General	64–65
II. Dismounted	66–74
III. Mounted	75–81

SECTION I

GENERAL

64. General.—*a.* The movements hereinafter described differ in purpose from the manual of arms for the rifle in that they are not designed to be executed in exact unison. Furthermore, with only a few exceptions, there is no real necessity for their simultaneous execution. They are not therefore planned as a disciplinary drill to be executed in cadence with snap and precision, but merely as simple, quick, and safe methods of handling the pistol. Commands are prescribed for only such movements as may be occasionally executed simultaneously by the squad or larger unit.

b. In general, movements begin and end at the position of raise pistol.

c. Commands for firing, when required, are limited to ***COMMENCE FIRING*** and ***CEASE FIRING.***

d. Whenever the pistol is carried mounted the lanyard will be used. The lanyard should be of such length that the arm may be fully extended without constraint.

65. Rules governing the conduct of men armed with the pistol.—*a.* Officers and enlisted men, armed with the pistol only, remain at the position of the soldier without arms during the execution of the manual, except when their units are brought to the present as a part of a ceremony such as:

(1) The ceremonies described in Chapter 1, Part Two.

(2) The presentation of an organization to its commander.

(3) At retreat.

(4) At guard mounting.

b. Under the conditions set forth above, officers and enlisted men, armed with the pistol only, execute the first motion of the hand salute at the command ***ARMS,*** and the second motion of the hand salute at the command of execution of the next command.

c. When organizations and detachments are not formed as part of a larger unit, and are composed entirely of men armed with the pistol, the commands for rendering the salute prescribed above are: 1. ***By the numbers,*** 2. ***Hand,*** 3. ***SALUTE,*** 4. ***TWO.***

d. Individuals leading or driving saddle or draft animals or standing to horse do not execute the salute.

SECTION II

DISMOUNTED

66. To raise the pistol.—The commands are: 1. ***Raise,*** 2. ***PISTOL.*** Unbutton the flap of the holster with the right hand and grasp the stock, back of the hand outward. Draw the pistol from the holster; reverse it, muzzle up, the thumb and last three fingers holding the stock, the forefinger extended outside the trigger guard, the barrel of the pistol to the rear and inclined to the front at an angle of 30°, the hand as high as, and 6 inches in front of, the point of the right shoulder. This is the position of raise pistol.

67. To withdraw the magazine.—Without lowering the right hand, turn the barrel slightly to the right; press the magazine catch with the right thumb and with the left hand remove the magazine. Place it in the belt or otherwise dispose of it; in no case throw it away.

68. To open the chamber.—Withdraw the magazine and resume the position of raise pistol. Without lowering the right hand, grasp the slide with the thumb and the first two fingers of the left hand (thumb on left side of slide and pointing downward); keeping the muzzle elevated, shift the grip of the right hand so that the right thumb engages with the slide stop. Push the slide downward to its full extent, and force the slide stop into its notch with the right thumb, without lowering the muzzle of the pistol.

69. To close the chamber.—With the right thumb press down the slide stop and let the slide go forward. Squeeze the trigger.

70. To insert a magazine.—Without lowering the right hand, turn the barrel to the right. Grasp a magazine with the first two fingers and thumb of the left hand; withdraw it from the belt and insert it in the pistol. Press it fully home.

71. To load the pistol.—The commands are: 1. ***Load,*** 2. ***PISTOL.*** If a loaded magazine is not already in the pistol, insert one. Without lowering the right hand, turn the barrel slightly to the left. Grasp the slide with the thumb and fingers of the left hand (thumb on right side of slide and pointing upward). Pull the slide downward to its full extent. Release the slide and engage the safety lock.

72. To unload the pistol.—The commands are: 1. ***Unload,*** 2. ***PISTOL.*** Withdraw the magazine. Open the chamber. Glance at the chamber to verify that it is empty. Close the chamber. Take position of raise pistol and squeeze the trigger. Then insert an empty magazine.

73. To inspect the pistol.—The commands are: 1. ***Inspection,*** 2. ***PISTOL.*** Withdraw the magazine. Open the chamber. Take the position of raise pistol. The withdrawn magazine is held in the open left hand at the height of the belt. After the pistol has been inspected, or at the commands: 1. ***Return,*** 2. ***PISTOL,*** close the chamber, take the position of raise pistol, and squeeze the trigger. Insert an empty magazine, and execute ***return pistol.***

74. To return pistol.—The commands are: 1. ***Return,*** 2. ***PISTOL.*** Lower the pistol to the holster, reversing it, muzzle down, back of the hand to the right; raise the flap of the holster with the right thumb; insert the pistol in the holster and thrust it home; button the flap of the holster with the right hand.

SECTION III

MOUNTED

75. General.—*a.* The following movements are executed as prescribed in Section II: ***Raise pistol, return pistol, close chamber.***

b. The mounted movements may be practiced when dismounted by first cautioning: ***MOUNTED POSITION.*** The right foot is then carried about 20 inches to the right, and the left hand to the position of the bridle hand.

c. Whenever the pistol is lowered into the bridle hand, the movement is executed by rotating the barrel to the right. Grasp the slide in the full grip of the left hand, thumb extending along the slide, back of the hand down, barrel down and pointing upward to the left front.

76. To withdraw the magazine.—Lower the pistol into the bridle hand. Press the magazine catch with the forefinger of the right hand, palm of the hand over the base of the magazine to prevent it from springing out; withdraw the magazine and place it in the belt, or otherwise dispose of it.

77. To open the chamber.—Withdraw the magazine. Grasp the stock with the right hand, back of the hand down, thrust forward and upward with the right hand, and engage the slide stop by pressure of the right thumb.

78. To insert a magazine.—Lower the pistol into the bridle hand. Extra magazines should be carried in the belt with the projection on the base pointing to the left. Grasp the magazine with the tip of the right forefinger on the projection, withdraw it from the belt, and insert it in the pistol. Press it fully home.

79. To load the pistol.—The commands are: 1. ***Load,*** 2. ***PISTOL.*** Lower the pistol into the bridle hand. If a loaded magazine is not already in the pistol, insert one. Grasp the stock with the right hand, back of the hand down, and thrust upward and to the left front; release the slide and engage the safety lock.

80. To unload the pistol.—The commands are: 1. ***Unload,*** 2. ***PISTOL.*** Withdraw the magazine. Open the chamber. Glance at the chamber to verify that it is empty. Close the chamber. Take the position of raise pistol and squeeze the trigger. Then insert an empty magazine.

81. To inspect pistol.—The commands are: 1. ***Inspection,*** 2. ***PISTOL.*** (The pistol is inspected mounted only at mounted guard mounting. The magazine is not withdrawn.) Take the position of raise pistol. After the pistol has been inspected, or at the command, pistols are returned.

CHAPTER 5

CLOSE ORDER—RIFLE COMPANY

		Paragraphs
SECTION I.	The rifle squad	82–95
II.	The rifle section	96–107
III.	The rifle platoon	108–121
IV.	The rifle company	122–131

SECTION I

THE RIFLE SQUAD

82. Definition and purpose.—The squad is a group of soldiers organized primarily as a combat team. The term "squad," as hereinafter used, means the rifle squad unless otherwise stated.

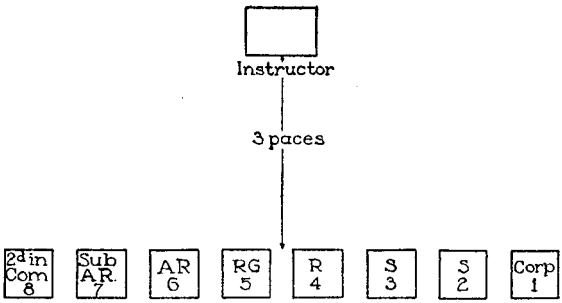
83. Strength and organization.—*a.* The squad consists of a corporal and seven privates or privates, first class. The corporal is the squad leader and when absent is replaced by the second in command. If the second in command is also absent the senior private, first class, or private acts as leader. In addition to the corporal there are in the squad: One rifleman, second in command; one automatic rifleman; one substitute automatic rifleman, armed with the rifle; two scouts, riflemen; one rifleman (grenadier); and one rifleman.

b. As far as practicable, the squad is kept intact. Since its normal formation is in single file or rank, a squad may have any number of men. If the number exceeds 12 it is advisable to form 2 or more squads.

84. To form the squad.—*a.* The command is: ***FALL IN.*** The squad forms in single rank as shown in Figure 11. As he falls in, each man except the one on the left extends his left arm laterally at shoulder height, palm of the hand down, fingers extended and joined. Each man except the one on the right, turns his head and eyes to the right and places himself so that his right shoulder touches lightly the tips of the fingers of the man on his right. As soon as proper intervals have been obtained each man drops his arm smartly to his side and turns his head to the front.

b. If it is desired to assemble at lesser intervals, the commands are: 1. ***At close interval,*** 2. ***FALL IN.*** The men fall in as in *a* above except that intervals are obtained by placing the left hand on the hip, fingers and thumb extended and joined, heel of the palm on the hip, fingers pointing downward, elbow in the plane of the body.

c. If the corporal is in command of the squad, it falls in at his command on the right scout.



Legend

S- Scout RG - Rifle Grenadier

R- Rifleman AR - Automatic Rifleman

Sub AR - Substitute AR

2d in Com. - Second in Command

FIGURE 11.—The rifle squad

85. To dismiss the squad.—The commands are: 1. ***Inspection,*** 2. ***ARMS,*** 3. ***Port,*** 4. ***ARMS,*** 5. ***DISMISSED.***

86. To count off.—The commands are: 1. ***Count,*** 2. ***OFF.*** At the command ***OFF*** all men, except the one on the right, turn their heads to the right, look down the line of eyes, and, beginning with the right man, count off successively. As each man calls off his number he turns his head and eyes to the front.

87. To align the squad.—*a.* If in line, the commands are: 1. ***Dress right (left),*** 2. ***DRESS,*** 3. ***Ready,*** 4. ***FRONT.*** At the command ***DRESS,*** each man, except the one on the left, extends

his left arm (or if at close interval, places his left hand upon his hip) and all align themselves to the right. The instructor places himself, facing to the front, on the flank of the squad toward which the dress is to be made, one pace from and in prolongation of the line. From this position he verifies the alignment of the men, ordering individual men to move forward or back as is necessary. Having checked the alignment he moves three paces to the front, halts, faces to the left, and commands: 1. ***Ready,*** 2. ***FRONT.*** At the command ***FRONT,*** arms are dropped smartly to the side and heads turned to the front.

b. If in column the command is: ***COVER.*** Men cover from front to rear with 40 inches distance between men.

88. Being in line at normal interval to obtain close interval.—The commands are: 1. ***Close,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH,*** all men except the right flank man face to the right in marching and form at close interval, as prescribed in paragraph 84.

89. Being in line at close interval to obtain normal interval.—The commands are: 1. ***Extend,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH,*** each man, except the one on the left, raises his left arm and aligns himself to the right. He drops his arm to his side as soon as the man on his left has the proper interval.

90. Being in line, to march to the flank.—The commands are: 1. ***Right (left),*** 2. ***FACE,*** 3. ***Forward,*** 4. ***MARCH.*** The movement is executed as explained in chapter 2, the men stepping off simultaneously.

91. Being in column, to change direction.—The commands are: 1. ***Column right (left), (half right), (half left),*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH,*** the leading man faces to the right in marching and steps off with the full step. The other men in the column execute the same movement successively and on the same ground as the leading man.

92. Being in line, to take interval and assemble.—*a.* To take interval, the commands are: 1. ***Take interval to the left,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** The right man stands fast, and extends his left arm at shoulder height until the man on his left obtains the proper interval, when he drops his arm. The other men, except the one on the left, extend both arms laterally at shoulder height, give way to the left and at the same time align themselves to the right. When each has two arms' length interval from the

man on his right he drops the arms to the sides and turns his head to the front. The man on the left extends his right arm only.

b. To assemble, the commands are: 1. ***Assemble to the right (left),*** 2. ***MARCH.*** The right man stands fast. All other men face to the right in marching and form at normal intervals as in paragraph 89.

93. Being in line to march short distances.—The commands are: 1. ***At trail,*** 2. ***Forward,*** 3. ***MARCH.*** All men execute ***trail arms*** and at the command ***MARCH*** move forward. This movement of the squad in line is only authorized when it is desired to move the squad for short distances.

94. Being in line at normal or close interval, to stack arms.—The commands are: 1. ***Stack,*** 2. ***ARMS.*** No. 4 and the left man in the squad make the stacks. No. 4 and the left man in the squad each grasps his rifle with the left hand at the upper band and places the butt between his feet, barrel to the front, muzzle inclined slightly to the right front, the thumb and forefinger raising the stacking swivel. Nos. 3 and 7 each passes his rifle, barrel up, to No. 4 and the left man in the squad, respectively, each of whom grasps the rifle passed to him with his right hand, between the bands, and places the butt about 2 feet in advance of that of his own rifle and about 6 inches to the right of his right shoe, at the same time allowing the hand to slip to the upper band. Raising the stacking swivel with the thumb and forefinger, he engages the stacking swivel with that of the rifle in his left hand. Nos. 2 and 5 each passes his rifle to Nos. 3 and 7, respectively, each of whom grasps the rifle passed to him with the right hand at the balance and carries it well forward, the barrel to the front. Guiding the stacking swivel with the left hand, he engages the lower hook of the swivel of this rifle with the free hook of the swivel of the front rifle of the stack. He then turns the barrel outward into the angle formed by the muzzle of the other two rifles and lowers the butt to the ground so that it will form a uniform stack with the other two rifles. The extra rifle and the automatic rifle are placed on the stack by Nos. 3 and 7, respectively. When each man has finished handling the pieces, he takes the position of the soldier.

If there are less than six rifles in the squad, only one stack is made, it being made by No. 4.

95. Being in line behind the stacks, to take arms.—The commands are: 1. ***Take,*** 2. ***ARMS.*** At the command ***ARMS,*** the extra rifle and the automatic rifle are passed to Nos. 1 and 6, respectively. No. 4 and the left man in the squad each grasps the rifle, whose butt is between his feet, with his left hand, and with his right hand he grasps the front rifle in the stack holding them between the bands. Nos. 3 and 7 each grasps the other rifle in the stack between the band with the right hand, disengages it by raising the butt from the ground and then turning the rifle to the right, detaches it from the stack and passes it to its owner. Nos. 4 and 8 each then disengages and detaches his rifle by turning it to the left, and passes his rifle to Nos. 2 and 7, respectively. As each man receives his piece he resumes the order and the position of the soldier.

SECTION II

THE RIFLE SECTION

96. Organization.—The rifle section consists of a section headquarters and three squads. Section headquarters consists of one sergeant (section leader) and one corporal (second in command). The integrity of the section should be maintained as far as practicable. For purposes of drill and ceremonies squads may be equalized, but the 3-squad organization should be maintained.

97. To form the section.—The command is: ***FALL IN.***

a. The first squad forms in line, as in squad drill, with normal arms-length interval, its center opposite and 3 paces from the section leader. The second and third squads form in that order in rear of the first squad and in the same manner, with 40 inches distance between ranks. Men in the second and third squads extend their arms to obtain their approximate intervals but cover the corresponding numbers in the first squad. The second in command places himself 3 paces in rear of the rear squad. He assists the section leader in control by cautioning and correcting whenever necessary.

b. If it is desired to form with close interval, the command is: 1. ***At close interval,*** 2. ***FALL IN.*** Executed by each squad as above, except that the interval between men is elbow length.

98. To dismiss the section.—Executed as for the squad.

99. Being in line to march short distances.—Executed as for the squad.

100. Being in line, to march to the flank.—Executed in the same manner and at the same commands as for the squad.

101. Being in column of threes, at normal interval between squads, to march (or form) at close interval.—*a.* The commands are: 1. ***Close,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH,*** the outside squads move to right and left until the interval between men, in ranks, is 4 inches. The distance remains unchanged, 40 inches.

b. If this movement is executed from the halt, the center squad stands fast. The other squads execute ***Right and left step*** (2 steps) and close to 4-inch intervals.

102. Being in column of three, at close interval between squads, to march (or form) at normal interval.—*a.* The commands are: 1. ***Extend,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH*** the flank squads move to the right and left until the interval between men in the ranks of threes is arm's length.

b. If this movement is executed at the halt, the center squad stands fast, the flank squads execute ***right and left step,*** until they have secured the proper interval when all halt.

103. Being in column of threes, to change direction.—The commands are: 1. ***Column right,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH,*** the right-flank man of the leading rank faces to the right in marching, takes up the half step until the other men of his rank are abreast of him, and then resumes the full step. The remaining men of the leading rank circle to the right, without changing interval, place themselves abreast of the pivot man, and conform to his step. The ranks in the rear of the leading rank turn on the same ground, and in the same manner, as the leading rank.

104. Being in column of threes, to form line to the front.—The commands are: 1. ***Column right,*** 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. ***Section,*** 4. ***HALT,*** 5. ***Left,*** 6. ***FACE.*** ***Column right*** is executed as described above. The command ***HALT*** is given after the change of direction is completed.

105. Being in line, to open and close ranks.—*a.* The commands are: 1. ***Open ranks,*** 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. ***Ready,*** 4. ***FRONT.*** At the command ***MARCH*** the front rank takes 4 steps forward, halts, and executes ***dress right;*** the second rank takes

2 steps forward, halts, and executes ***dress right;*** the rear rank executes ***dress right.*** The instructor places himself, facing to the front, on the flank of the section toward which the dress is to be made, 1 pace from and in prolongation of the front rank. From this position he dresses the front rank. The second and third ranks are dressed in the same manner. After verifying the alignment he moves 3 paces beyond the front rank, halts, faces to the left and commands: 1. ***Ready,*** 2. ***FRONT.***

b. To close ranks the commands are: 1. ***Close ranks,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH*** the second and third ranks close to 40 inches, each man covering his file leader.

106. To take interval and assemble.—*a.* To take interval, the commands are: 1. ***TAKE INTERVAL TO THE LEFT,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the first command the corporal of the front rank moves 12 paces to the front and halts; the corporal of the second rank moves forward 6 paces and halts. At the command ***MARCH,*** each squad takes interval as in squad drill aligning itself on its corporal.

b. To assemble, the commands are: 1. ***Assemble to the right,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH*** the men assemble as in squad drill, except that the corporals of the two rear squads close to 40 inches distance and the other men of these squads incline to the right in marching and assemble at normal intervals and distances.

107. Being in line, to pitch tents.—The commands are: 1. ***FORM FOR SHELTER TENTS,*** 2. ***Count,*** 3. ***OFF,*** 4. ***TAKE INTERVAL TO THE LEFT,*** 5. ***MARCH,*** 6. ***PITCH TENTS.***

a. At the command ***FORM FOR SHELTER TENTS,*** the second in command arranges an even number of men in each rank and equalizes ranks as far as practicable.

b. At the command ***MARCH*** each squad takes interval as prescribed in paragraph 106. Each odd-numbered man places his bayonet between his heels. The bayonets mark the positions of the front poles of the tents. Men not armed with the bayonet indicate the position of the tent poles by means of heel marks.

c. At the command ***PITCH TENTS*** Nos. 1 and 2, 3 and 4, etc., in each rank pitch tents together as explained in paragraph 588. The section leader and second in command pitch tents together on one flank of the section.

SECTION III

THE RIFLE PLATOON

108. Organization.—*a.* The rifle platoon at war strength comprises a platoon headquarters and two sections.

b. The platoon headquarters comprises one lieutenant (platoon leader), one platoon sergeant (second in command), and four privates (runners).

c. Runners are attached to squads during close-order formation not requiring their normal employment as agents of communication.

d. (1) The platoon sergeant is second in command of the platoon. He forms the platoon and receives the reports of section leaders at all formations, and assists the platoon leader.

(2) All noncommissioned officers not in ranks assist in control of the platoon by cautioning and correcting whenever necessary.

e. As far as practicable the platoon should always be organized with two sections. If the number of men in ranks falls below 18, it is advisable to organize the platoon in one section.

109. General rules.—*a.* In platoon drill, section leaders give such preparatory commands as are necessary to insure the proper execution of the movement indicated by the command of the platoon leader. Section leaders do not repeat such commands as ***Forward*** and ***Halt,*** as they are executed simultaneously by all men.

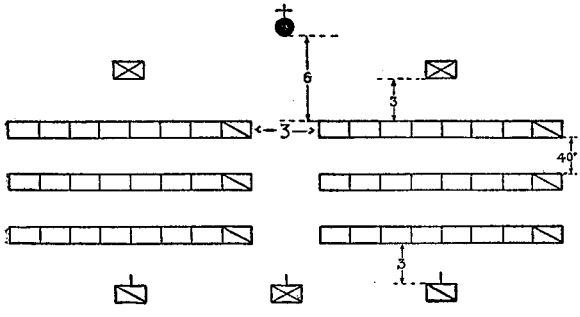
b. The guide is always right, except when otherwise directed. The leading man of the flank squad on the side of the guide is responsible for the direction and cadence of march.

110. To form the platoon.—*a.* The command is: ***FALL IN.*** Section leaders form their sections in normal 3-rank formation, with 3 paces interval between sections.

b. To form with close intervals.—The commands are: 1. ***At close intervals,*** 2. ***FALL IN.*** Sections are formed as above with elbow-length intervals between men.

c. In marching to the right (at the command ***RIGHT FACE***) leaders and seconds in command take the same relative positions in column as shown in Figure 12 for the platoon in line.

111. Previous instruction applicable.—The platoon marches to the right, executes changes of direction, closes and extends interval, stacks and takes arms as in section drill.



Legend

- Platoon Leader
- Platoon Sergeant
- Section Leaders
- Seconds-in-Command of Sections (Corporals)
- Squad Leaders (Corporals)
- Privates & Privates 1st Class, runners (not shown in diagram, but are attached to squads as desired by platoon leaders)
- Privates & Privates 1st Class

FIGURE 12.—The platoon in line with normal intervals

112. To dismiss the platoon.—Executed as for the squad.

113. To align the platoon.—The platoon leader directs the section leader: ***Dress right (left).*** Section leaders dress their sections simultaneously, as in section drill, the section on the side toward which the dress is made being the base. The platoon leader may verify the alignment if he desires.

114. To open ranks.—The platoon leader commands: 1. ***Open ranks,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH,*** sections open ranks simultaneously as in section drill. Section leaders verify the alignment of their sections and give the commands: 1. ***Ready,*** 2. ***FRONT;*** they then resume their proper positions 3 paces in front of their sections. The platoon leader may verify the alignment if he desires.

115. **To take interval and assemble.**—*a.* To take interval, the commands are: 1. ***TAKE INTERVAL TO THE LEFT,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH*** both sections simultaneously take interval to the left and form three continuous ranks with all men in each rank at double arm's-length interval.

b. To assemble, the commands are: 1. ***Assemble to the right,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH*** sections assemble, simultaneously. The left section, after assembling, is closed in to the right to its normal interval. During this movement pieces are carried at the trail.

116. **To pitch tents.**—The commands are: 1. ***FORM FOR SHELTER TENTS,*** 2. ***Count,*** 3. ***OFF,*** 4. ***TAKE INTERVAL TO THE LEFT,*** 5. ***MARCH,*** 6. ***PITCH TENTS.*** At the command ***FORM FOR SHELTER TENTS*** the second in command of each section arranges an even number of men in each rank and equalizes ranks within each section as far as practicable. Section leaders then give the commands: 1. ***Count,*** 2. ***OFF.*** ***TAKE INTERVAL TO THE LEFT*** is executed as in paragraph 106. ***PITCH TENTS*** is executed as explained for the section. The platoon sergeant and runners not used to equalize ranks pitch tents on the left of the platoon.

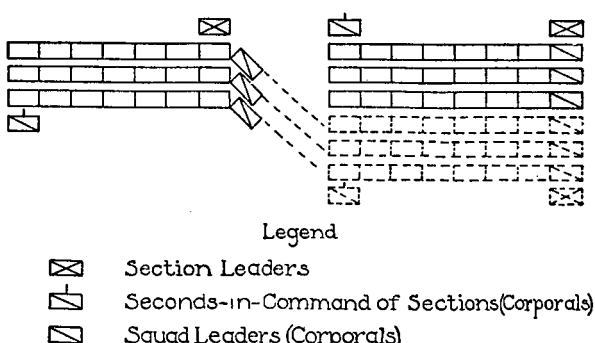


FIGURE 13.—To form platoon mass from column of threes

117. **Being in column of threes at close interval, to form platoon mass.**—*a.* The commands are: 1. ***Platoon mass right (left),*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH,*** the leading section halts; the rear section executes ***column half right*** then

column half left and is halted when the leading rank is on line with the front rank of the leading section. Section leaders place themselves abreast of and outside the flank corporals of their respective sections; seconds in command of sections place themselves abreast of and outside the last man of the flank squads of their respective sections. This forms the platoon in mass with elbow-length intervals between the men.

b. The platoon leader and platoon sergeant go wherever necessary to observe the drill and make corrections.

c. In passing in review and for other ceremonies, leaders and seconds in command take positions as shown in Figure 15.

118. Being in platoon mass, to form column of threes at close interval.—The commands are: 1. ***Right (left) by section,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH*** the left (right) section halts; the right section continues the march. At the proper moment the halted section executes ***column half right*** then ***column half left (right)*** so as to follow the leading section at 3 paces.

119. Being in column of threes, to form line of sections.—The commands are: 1. ***Sections column right (left),*** 2. ***MARCH.*** Executed simultaneously by both sections. The right section becomes the base section.

120. Being in line of sections, to form column of threes.—The commands are: 1. ***Sections column right (left),*** 2. ***MARCH.*** Executed simultaneously by sections.

121. Being in column of threes, to form column of twos.—Column of twos is formed from column of threes only for the purpose of reducing the front of a unit while marching on a narrow trail. It is not designed as a parade-ground movement. To form column of twos the commands are: 1. ***Column of twos,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the second command, if marching, the two right squads of the leading section and the right squad of the rear section continue the march; if at a halt, they take up the march. The other squads halt if marching or stand fast if at a halt. The left squad of the leading section moves forward with the right squad of the rear section, when that squad has arrived opposite the head of the left squad of the leading section. The two remaining squads follow the others in column at the proper time.

100821°—32——4

SECTION IV

THE RIFLE COMPANY

122. Organization.—*a.* The rifle company at war strength comprises three platoons and company headquarters. This organization will be maintained as far as practicable. Reduced strength companies may be organized as one or two platoons. If it is desired to form a full strength company for drill or ceremony, two or more reduced strength companies may be combined.

b. The company headquarters is formed by the senior noncommissioned officer or private present. For close-order drill and ceremonies, unless otherwise directed, the members of the company headquarters are attached to platoons with a view to equalizing the strength thereof. For inspections, the company headquarters may be formed and inspected separately as a fourth platoon.

123. General rules for close-order drill.—*a.* The platoon, rather than the company, is the basic close-order drill unit. Only such formations are prescribed for the company as are necessary for marches and ceremonies.

b. Platoon leaders repeat such preparatory commands as are to be immediately executed by their platoons, such as ***Forward,*** and the men execute the movement at the command of execution, such as ***MARCH*** and ***HALT,*** if applying to their platoons, when given by the company commander. In movements executed in route step and at ease, the platoon leaders repeat the command of execution if necessary. Platoon leaders do not repeat the company commander's commands in having the company fall out, stack arms, take arms, or in executing the manual of arms, nor those commands which are not essential to the execution of a movement by their platoons. In giving commands or cautions, platoon leaders may prefix the numbers of the platoons, as: ***First platoon, halt;*** or ***Second platoon, forward.***

c. Whenever commands are given involving movements of platoons in which one platoon stands fast or continues the march, the platoon leader commands: ***STAND FAST,*** or cautions: ***CONTINUE THE MARCH,*** as the case may be.

d. The guidon is carried as prescribed in chapter 3, part two. In formation, the position of the guidon is as indicated in Figures 14 and 15.

124. To form the company.—*a.* The first sergeant takes post 9 paces in front of the point where the center of the company is to be, faces in the proper direction, and commands: ***FALL IN.*** The company forms in three ranks, with normal intervals between men, and intervals between sections and platoons as indicated in Figure 14.

b. Each platoon sergeant takes post 6 paces in front of the point where the center of his platoon will be. The platoons form in their proper places, under supervision of the platoon sergeants and the section leaders.

c. The section leaders then command: ***REPORT.*** Remaining in position at the order, the squad leaders, in succession, form from front to rear in each section, salute, and report: "All present," or "Private(s) ——— absent." Section leaders then command: 1. ***Inspection,*** 2. ***ARMS,*** 3. ***Order,*** 4. ***ARMS,*** face about, and at the command ***REPORT,*** given by the platoon sergeant, the section leaders successively, beginning with the first section, salute, and report: "All present or accounted for," or "——— men absent." Platoon sergeants then report to the first sergeant at the latter's command ***REPORT.***

d. All platoons and the headquarters detachment having reported, the first sergeant commands: ***POSTS.*** The platoon sergeants face about, place themselves on line with seconds in command, and again face about. The first sergeant then faces about, salutes, and reports: "Sir, all present or accounted for," or "Sir, ——— men absent," and without command faces about, moves forward, places himself in line with the seconds in command of sections, and again faces about.

e. If the platoons can not be formed by squads, the platoon sergeants command: 1. ***Inspection,*** 2. ***ARMS,*** 3. ***Right shoulder,*** 4. ***ARMS,*** and call the roll. Each man, as his name is called, answers "Here" and executes ***order arms*** if armed with the rifle. The platoon sergeant then effects the division into squads and sections and reports the platoon as described above.

f. The company commander places himself 12 paces in front of the center of and facing the company in time to receive the report of the first sergeant.

g. The platoon leaders take the posts vacated by the platoon sergeants as soon as the first sergeant has reported.

h. The noncommissioned officer or private in charge of the company headquarters detachment forms the detachment on

the right of the company and reports as prescribed for the platoon sergeants.

i. The company, not under arms, is formed in like manner, omitting reference to arms.

j. In forming the company, all who are required to salute and make a report maintain the position of salute until it is returned.

125. **To form with close interval between men.**—The commands are: ***AT CLOSE INTERVAL, FALL IN.*** The company forms as in Figure 14, with normal intervals between sections and platoons but with elbow-length intervals between men in ranks. This formation is permitted only for roll calls or ceremonies where space is limited.

126. **To dismiss the company.**—*a.* The company being in line at a halt, the company commander directs the first sergeant: ***DISMISS THE COMPANY.*** The officers fall out; the first sergeant moves to a point 9 paces in front of the center of the company, salutes, faces toward the company, and commands: 1. ***Inspection,*** 2. ***ARMS,*** 3. ***Port,*** 4. ***ARMS,*** 5. ***DISMISSED.***

b. Dismissal may also take place by direction to the platoon leaders, by the company commander commanding: ***DISMISS YOUR PLATOONS.*** Each platoon is then dismissed as described for the company, the platoon sergeant, from his position 6 paces in front of the platoon, performing the duties prescribed for the first sergeant. The headquarters detachment is dismissed by its leader.

127. **To align the company.**—The company being in line at a halt, to align the company the command is: 1. ***Dress center (right or left).*** The platoon leader of the base platoon dresses his platoon immediately. When ***Dress center*** is given the leader of the center platoon dresses his platoon to the right. Each platoon leader dresses his platoon toward the center (right or left) of the company as soon as the base platoon or the platoon next toward the base platoon has completed its dress.

128. **Previous instruction applicable.**—The company marches, executes changes of direction, forms column of platoon masses and re-forms in column of threes, forms column of twos and re-forms column of threes, closes and extends intervals between squads in column of threes, opens and closes ranks, stacks and takes arms as in section and platoon drill.

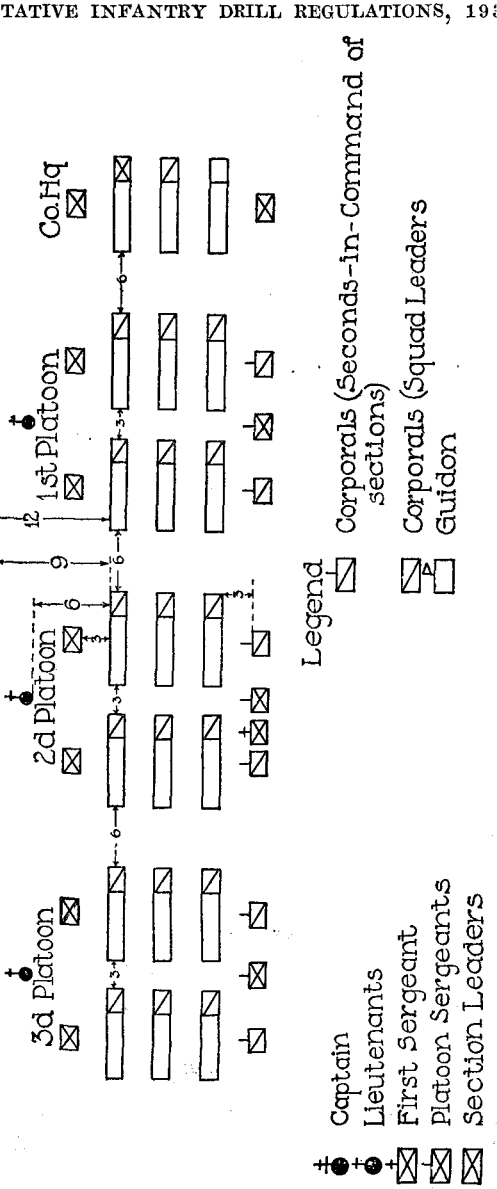


FIGURE 14.—Assembly formation of the rifle company

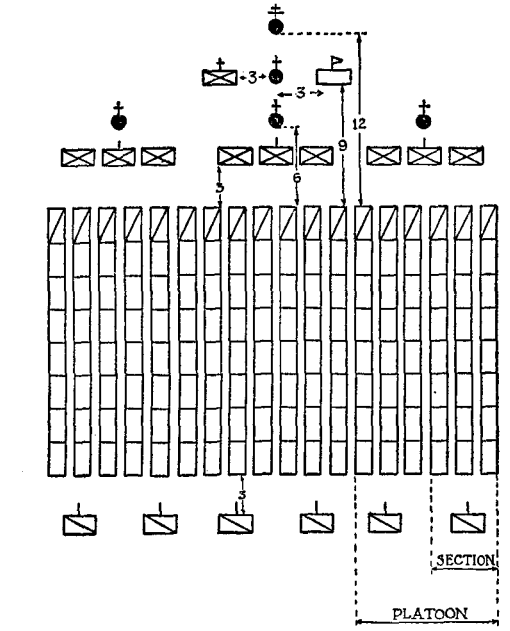


FIGURE 15.—The company in mass formation

129. Being in column of threes at close interval, to form company mass.—*a.* The commands are: 1. ***Platoon mass left (right)***, 2. ***MARCH***, 3. ***Company mass left (right)***, 4. ***MARCH.*** At the second command platoons simultaneously form platoon mass as in paragraph 117. Section leaders and seconds in command of sections place themselves 3 paces in front and rear,

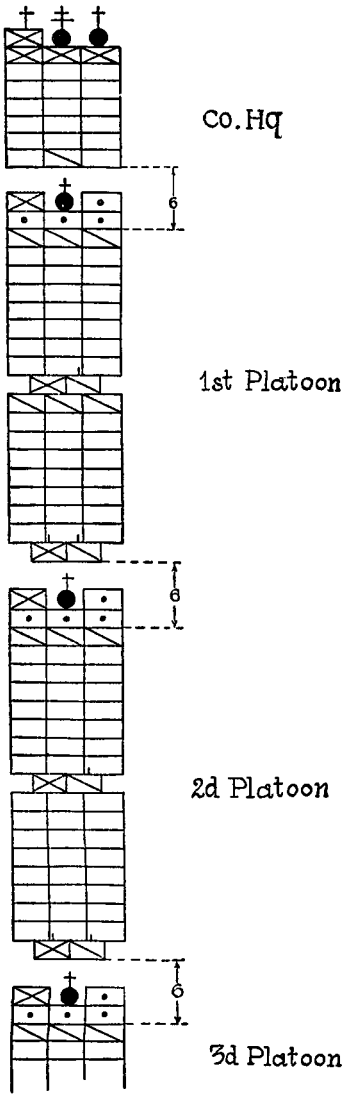


FIGURE 16.—The company in route-march formation

respectively, of their sections. At the fourth command, platoon leaders move their platoons by the shortest route to a position abreast of the leading platoon. This forms the company in mass with elbow-length intervals between all men in ranks.

b. In marching to the right (at the command ***RIGHT FACE***) leaders and seconds in command take the same relative positions as shown in Figure 14 for the company in line.

130. Being in company mass, to form column of platoon masses or column of threes.—The commands are: 1. ***Right (left) by platoon (section),*** 2. ***MARCH.*** The command: ***Right by platoon*** is executed in a manner similar to that prescribed in paragraph 118 for ***Right by section.***

131. Route-march formation.—(See fig. 16.) To assume this formation the command is: ***ROUTE COLUMN.***

CHAPTER 6

EXTENDED ORDER

		Paragraphs
SECTION I.	General	132–133
II.	The individual skirmisher	134–144
III.	The rifle squad	145–153
IV.	The rifle section	154–166
V.	The rifle platoon	167–176

SECTION I

GENERAL

132. Purpose.—The purposes of extended-order exercises are:

a. To teach the mechanism of deployment.

b. To teach formations for use under fire.

c. To teach methods of advancing in combat.

d. To teach the use of ground and cover.

133. General rules.—The following general rules apply to all extended-order exercises:

a. Extended-order exercises are executed at ease.

b. They are not intended as disciplinary drills or drills of precision.

c. They should be held upon ground affording concealment and cover. When such terrain is available or can be found within reasonable proximity to the garrison, only such preliminary training is permitted on flat or bare drill grounds as is necessary to teach the mechanism of deployment and to illustrate the different formations and movements.

d. They should always be held under definite tactical situations, real or assumed, such as enemy fire, dispositions, movements, observation, or similar condition.

e. Men should be prohibited from taking any formation which resembles a straight line, except when halted behind linear cover.

f. In general, only average distances and intervals between units are prescribed, instead of maximum and minimum limits.

The terrain, enemy fire, and the necessities of control and room for maneuver are the governing factors which determine distances and intervals. However, the minimum distance or interval between individual men in extended-order formation is 5 paces.

g. Responsibility should be placed upon the noncommissioned officer and opportunity afforded him for developing initiative and leadership.

h. The platoon is the largest unit which executes extended-order exercises.

i. The commander should prescribe the formation for his unit as a whole and may initially prescribe the formation of subordinate units. Thereafter during the advance the subordinate commanders may vary the formation of their units in order to make best use of ground and cover. For example, the company commander might prescribe column of platoons; each platoon commander would prescribe the formations for his platoon; line, or column of sections and so on down to the squad leaders.

j. Signals are freely used during instruction, in order that officers and men may readily learn to recognize and apply them.

k. In extended order, during real or simulated firings, squad leaders and, if necessary, individual men transmit orders by word of mouth along the firing line. Transmission of orders by this means requires special training.

l. The target is carefully pointed out. See chapter 6, part one, Basic Field Manual, Volume III. This is habitually done after announcing the sight setting. Both are indicated before giving the command for firing. The designation of the target may be omitted when the target appears suddenly and is unmistakable.

m. The command for range serves as a preparatory command for firing; it insures the simultaneous opening of fire and the full effect of surprise.

n. The target having been designated, such designation need not be repeated until a change is necessary.

o. Troops are trained to continue their fire upon the target until a change is ordered.

p. If the men are not already in the position of load, that position is taken at the announcement of the range. Skirmishers not in a firing position, either at a halt or in movement, take such position at the command announcing the range.

The prone position is the usual position of the skirmisher when deployed and when not advancing. The sitting or kneeling position may be used when necessary to obtain a better field of fire.

q. Skirmishers may load while moving, the pieces being held as nearly as practicable in the position of load. (See Sec. III, ch. 3.)

r. Platoon and section leaders deploy, assemble, and maneuver their units as far as practicable by arm signals. Whistle signals are sparingly used. In general, their use is limited to movements during the fire fight when, on account of the noise of battle, it is impossible to attract the attention of the skirmishers by other means. The habitual use of the whistle as a preliminary to a command is prohibited. For authorized signals see chapter 16.

s. A deployed unit advances, halts, moves to the flank or to the rear, passes from quick to double time and the reverse by the same commands and in a similar manner as in close order. Changes in the direction of march are usually effected by the assignment of a new march direction to the base squad; skirmishers place themselves on the new front by gradual obliques and by opening out from or closing in on the base. Movements may be interrupted by the commands: ***HALT, DOWN,*** or ***RANGE.*** On halting, a deployed line faces to the front (direction of the enemy) in all cases. If halted by the command: ***DOWN,*** skirmishers take cover; if halted by the command: ***RANGE*** or ***BATTLE SIGHT,*** they take cover and place themselves in readiness for instant firing.

t. All deployments and assemblies are made at a run unless otherwise ordered. When the men are moving, pieces are carried at port or at trail arms.

SECTION II

THE INDIVIDUAL SKIRMISHER

134. General.—Before being given extended-order squad drill, the soldier is taught how to set the sight of his rifle, *to fire, to lie down, to* crawl, and to make the best use of ground and cover.

135. To set the sight.—Being in any firing formation, the commands are: ***RANGE, SIX HUNDRED*** or ***BATTLE SIGHT.*** The sight is set as ordered.

136. To commence firing.—*a.* Being in any firing formation, the command is: ***COMMENCE FIRING.*** Each man, independently of the others, comes to the ready, aims carefully and deliberately at the aiming point or target, fires, reloads, and continues firing until ordered to cease firing.

b. To increase (decrease) the rate of fire in progress, the instructor commands or signals: ***FASTER (SLOWER).*** (See ch. 16 for signals.)

137. Instructions for use of the bayonet.—*a.* The bayonet is fixed at any time when so ordered.

b. If marching, kneeling, or lying down, the bayonet is fixed and unfixed in the most expeditious and convenient manner and the rifle returned to the original position. ***FIX BAYONETS*** and ***UNFIX BAYONETS*** are executed with promptness and regularity but not in cadence.

138. Being at a halt, quick time, double time, or running; to lie down.—The command is: ***DOWN.*** (See fig. 17.)

a. Advance the left foot, turning it across the front of the body.

b. Drop forward on the outside of the left knee and at the same time extend the rifle, grasped in both hands and held vertically, so that the butt of the rifle strikes the ground at full arm's-length directly in front of the left knee.

c. Pivoting on the left knee and the butt of the rifle, roll forward into the firing position, with the rifle at the shoulder, or into the prone position, with the rifle on the ground to the front.

d. In lying down, those required to fire or simulate firing drop to the firing position, others to the prone position with the body flat on the belly, the left side of the face on the ground, legs extended and apart with heels down, arms to the front and flat on the ground. The piece, if carried, is held to the front grasped in the right hand.

139. If lying down, to move forward at a run.—The commands are: 1. ***CEASE FIRING,*** 2. ***PREPARE TO RUSH,*** 3. ***UP*** or ***FOLLOW ME*** (or other command requiring a move forward at a run). (See fig. 18.)

a. If in the firing position, first take up the prone position and then draw the arms in slowly until the hands are opposite the chin, elbows away from the body and down.

b. Raise the body by straightening the arms.

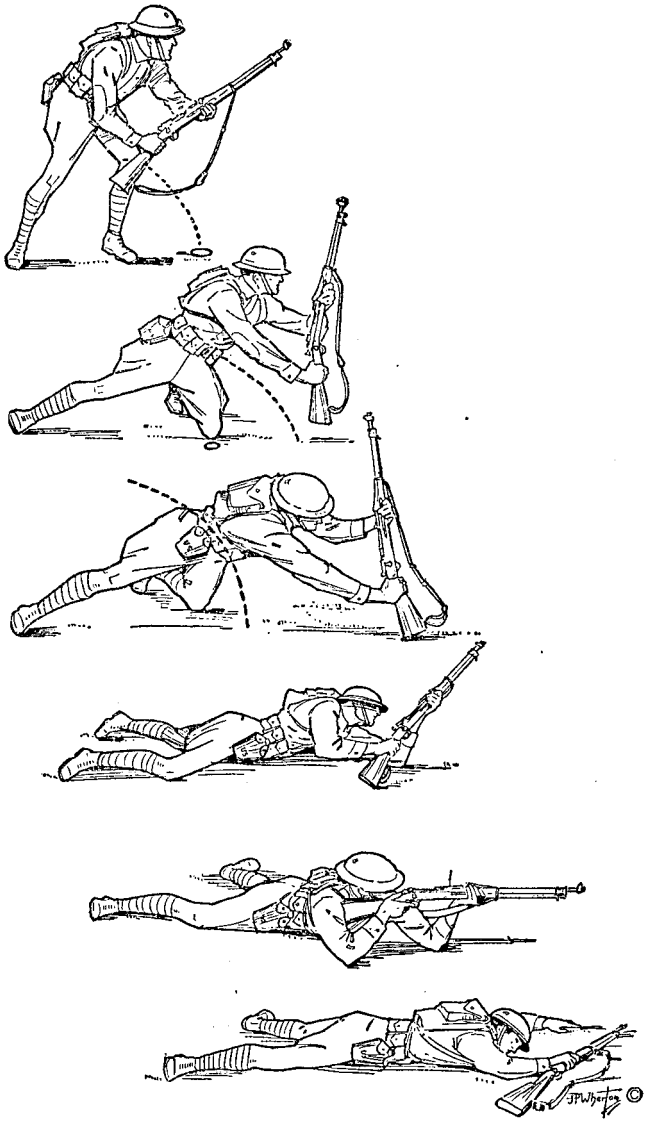


FIGURE 17.—To lie down

c. Throw the weight of the body to the left arm and leg, and bringing the right leg forward, jump off to the right front. When running, bend as low as possible, keeping the left shoulder forward. Grasp the rifle in both hands, left hand at the balance, right hand at the small of the stock.

d. To move forward other than at a run from the position of lying down, the movement is similarly executed at the appropriate command: 1. ***Forward,*** 2. ***MARCH.***

140. Crawling.—To crawl, the soldier places his forearms flat on the ground in front of his head and draws himself forward, using his forearms alternately; at the same time assisting the movement by drawing up and pushing with his legs. The rifle is carried in the most convenient manner in either hand.

141. Use of the rifle.—The instruction of the recruit in the use of the rifle begins at any early period in his training. It is impressed upon him that the rifle and bayonet and automatic rifle are his principal weapons and that the object of all movement is to place him at such point that he can make effective use of them, either by firing or by closing with the enemy in hand-to-hand combat.

142. The use of cover.—*a.* The skirmisher should be given careful instruction in the individual use of cover. It is impressed upon him that, in taking advantage of natural cover, he must be able to fire easily and effectively upon the enemy. If advancing on an enemy, his chief object should be to get as far forward as possible without firing. To do this he must make proper use of cover, advancing rapidly when concealed from the enemy, and progressing cautiously when likely to be observed. When it becomes necessary to fire he should take proper position so as to make his fire effective. To teach him to fire easily and effectively, at the same time concealing himself from the view of the enemy, he is practiced in simulated firing in the prone, sitting, and kneeling positions, from behind hillocks, trees, heaps of earth or rocks, and from depressions, gullies, ditches, doorways, or windows. He is taught to fire around the right side of his concealment whenever possible, or, when this is not possible, to rise enough to fire over the top of his concealment. He is taught to improve natural cover and adapt it as a firing position by the use of the intrenching tool.

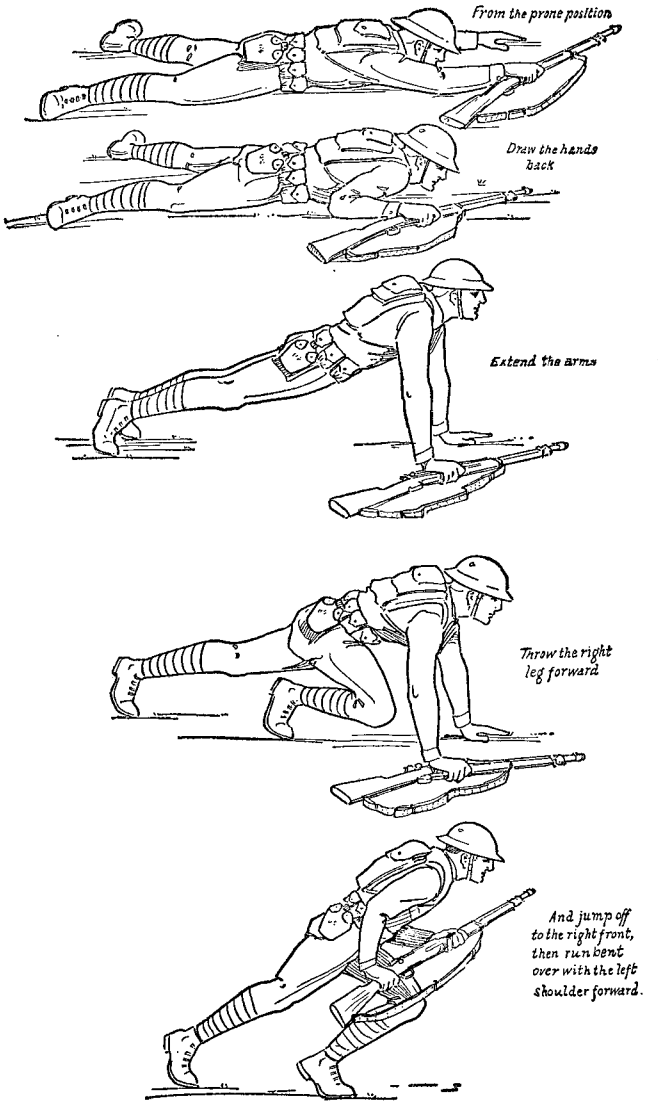

From the prone position
Draw the hands back
Extend the arms
Throw the right leg forward
And jump off to the right front, then run bent over with the left shoulder forward.

FIGURE 18.—If lying down, to move forward at a run

b. When these details are understood, he is required to select cover with reference to an assumed enemy and to place himself behind it in proper position for firing. Rapid loading, rapid and accurate sight setting, and quick and skillful occupation of the firing position are practiced. The skirmisher is instructed in the value of the different forms of cover as protection from both terrestrial and aerial view and from high-angle infantry and artillery fire.

c. The evil of remaining too long in one place, however good the concealment, is explained. The skirmisher is taught to advance from cover to cover, selecting cover before leaving his concealment. It is impressed upon him that a man running rapidly toward an enemy furnishes a poor target. He is trained in springing from a prone position behind concealment, running at top speed to cover, and throwing himself behind it. He is also practiced in advancing from cover to cover by crawling. He is instructed in moving on designated direction points, making use of cover to screen his movements without losing the direction of advance.

d. He is taught that when fired on while acting independently he should drop to the ground, seek cover, and then endeavor to locate the enemy.

e. The skirmisher is taught that, when acting as a member of a fire unit, should he find himself on ground unsuitable for firing because of lack of visibility or poor cover, he at once moves to the nearest favorable locality, avoiding, however, such extensive changes as would blanket the fire of others.

f. The instruction of the skirmisher in the use of cover is continued in the combat exercises of the platoon, but he must then be taught that the proper advance of the platoon and the effectiveness of its fire are of greater importance than the matter of cover for individuals.

143. Observation.—*a.* The ability to use his eyes accurately is of great importance to the soldier. The recruit is trained in observing his surroundings from positions and when on the march. He is practiced in pointing out and naming military features of the ground; in distinguishing between living beings; in counting distant groups of objects or beings; in recognizing colors and forms; and in varying visibility of targets as affected by background and light.

b. In the training of men in the mechanism of the firing formation, they are practiced in repeating to one another target

designations and in quickly locating and pointing out a designated target. They should be taught to distinguish, from a prone position, distant objects, particularly troops. Similarly they should be trained in estimating distances.

144. Night movements.—Movements at night or in heavy fog require special practice.

Order, silence, and skill in maintaining direction are the principal requisites. Practice is had in accustoming the eye and ear to the different impressions which objects and sounds make under night conditions. Estimation of distance by eye and of direction and distance of sounds is practiced. Exercises are conducted in orientation by means of objects whose location has been observed during the day, by the stars, and by the use of the compass. The soldier is instructed as to the conduct to be observed in case the enemy sets up flares in his vicinity. He is taught to secure his arms and equipment so that they make no noise.

SECTION III

THE RIFLE SQUAD

145. Formations.—The formations of the squad are—

a. Squad column.

b. Deployed formation.

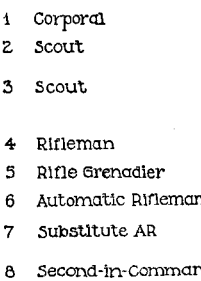


FIGURE 19.—Squad column

146. To form squad column.—Being in any formation, the squad leader commands or signals: ***SQUAD COLUMN.*** Men follow in order behind the squad leader at irregular distances not less than 5 paces. The leader moves in the desired direc-

tion and at the desired rate, the men conforming to his movements. The second in command supervises the march.

147. To deploy.—Being in any formation, at the command or signal: ***AS SKIRMISHERS,*** given by the squad, section, or platoon leader, the squad deploys in an irregular wedge as indicated in Figure 20. This formation may be used for firing or to advance the squad when entering combat or when passing through enemy fire. No attempt is made to secure a regular formation, the positions taken by the men being governed by the ground and cover. Straight lines are avoided, but the squad may be in an irregular line if halted behind linear cover, such as a ditch, embankment, or hedge. When firing, the squad may retain the irregular wedge formation or form an irregular line. In the wedge, the automatic rifleman should be near the apex so that he may fire in any direction; other men normally fire to their front or across the front of the next adjacent squad in the section.

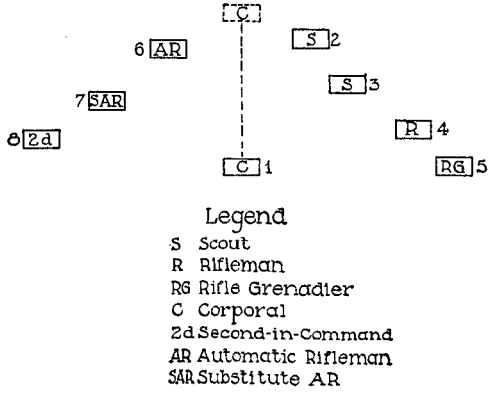


FIGURE 20.—The squad deployed

The interval between skirmishers depends upon the ground and the enemy fire; it is not less than 5 paces.

148. Position of the squad leader.—The leader takes position from which he can best control his squad. When the squad is in movement, but not engaged in the fire fight, the leader is at the head of the squad. When the squad is firing, the leader will usually be in rear at the center of the squad. (Fig. 20.)

149. To march the squad without unnecessary commands.—The squad being in any formation, the corporal commands: ***FOLLOW ME,*** and places himself in front of his squad. No. 2 follows in trace of the corporal. The other men move forward, maintaining the same relative positions in the formation in which they are.

150. To assemble the squad.—Being in any formation, the commands are: 1. ***ASSEMBLE,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** Men move toward the corporal and assemble in single file.

151. Scouts.—All members of the squad are trained as scouts. In each squad, however, two especially qualified men are designated as scouts and numbered two and three in the squad. Scouts habitually work in pairs.

152. To advance by infiltration.—Infiltration, as applied to small infantry units, is the act of passing individuals or small groups through gaps in the enemy's fire or position. When the squad comes under effective enemy small-arms fire the advance is continued by sending forward individuals or groups of two or three men at a time. The leading man or men move forward, making the best use of available cover, until they arrive at another good firing position. If no cover is available they move at a run. The squad leader signals: ***FORWARD,*** indicating the man or men who are to start the movement; the other men of the squad following on their own initiative as cover and the enemy's fire permit. The automatic rifleman should be one of the first to move forward. When the bulk of the squad has moved, the squad leader will usually go forward, leaving the second in command to supervise the movement of the remainder of the squad, or the second in command may go forward early and the squad leader remain back. The squad thus progresses by irregular bounds, with never more than two or three men moving at a time. The length of these bounds is determined by the cover available, the effectiveness of enemy fire, and the physical condition of the men. When the squad enters the fire fight, the men not moving fire on the enemy, being careful not to endanger those advancing and those already in the forward position.

153. To advance the squad as a unit.—Exceptional occasions may arise when it is practicable and desirable to move the entire squad simultaneously. In such cases the leader commands: 1. ***Prepare to rush,*** 2. ***FOLLOW ME.*** All men spring forward following the example of the leader. If necessary for safety, the leader may first command: ***Cease firing.***

SECTION IV

THE RIFLE SECTION

154. Direction of deployment.—The section is so instructed that it can deploy in any direction in silence and without confusion. The direction is indicated by the leader pointing or moving in the desired direction.

155. Direction of advance.—The direction of advance may be indicated by the leader pointing or moving in that direction; by designating prominent terrain features (e. g., building, lone tree); by magnetic azimuth; by indicating to the leader of the base unit the route to be followed, or any combination of the above. Where an advance is to take place on assigned direction lines for long-continued periods, both a distant direction point and a magnetic azimuth should be designated.

156. The base squad.—*a.* The center squad is the base squad, with the following exceptions:

(1) When in section column the leading squad is the base.

(2) When in triangular formation with the center squad back, the right flank squad is the base.

b. The other squads of the section maintain direction and relative position by regulating on the base squad.

157. Formation.—*a.* The section may use any of the following formations:

(1) Section column (fig. 21).

(2) Line of squads (fig. 22).

(3) Triangular formation (fig. 23).

b. Within the above formations, squads may be in squad column or deployed formation. The formation of the squads may be prescribed by the section leader or left to the initiative of squad leaders.

158. Frontage.—The section deploys with sufficient intervals between squads to permit minor maneuvers of squads or small groups of men and to prevent masking of fire. The average frontage of the section is 150 yards.

159. Posts of section leader and second in command.—The section leader and second in command are not restricted to fixed posts. When moving forward the section leader normally precedes his unit, the second in command follows in rear and prevents straggling. During forward or flank movements, section leaders are on the side of the section toward the enemy.

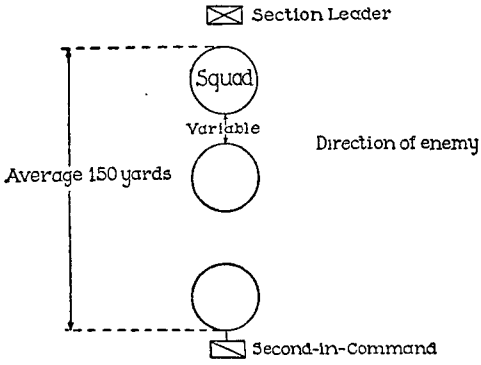


FIGURE 21.—Section column

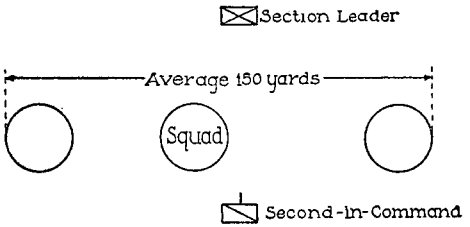


FIGURE 22.—Line of squads

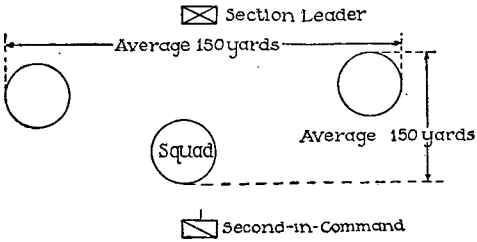


FIGURE 23.—Triangular formation (center squad back)

During movements to the rear, they are on the side away from the enemy. When the sections are halted in a firing position, they are in rear of their sections. When otherwise halted, they are in front of their sections.

160. To form section column.—Being in any formation, the leader commands or signals: ***SECTION COLUMN.*** The center squad moves out in squad column, followed by the right and left squads in that order.

161. To form line of squads.—Being in any formation, the leader commands or signals: ***LINE OF SQUADS.*** The base squad moves to the front in squad column; the other squads, in squad column, move approximately 50 paces to their right and left, respectively. Leaders of flank squads guide approximately on the base squad, but make no effort to maintain exact alignment.

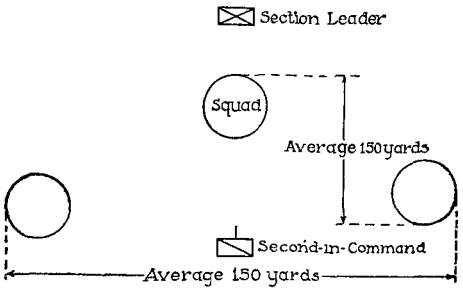


FIGURE 24.—Triangular formation (center squad up)

162. To assume triangular formation.—Being in any formation, the leader commands or signals: ***TRIANGULAR FORMATION.*** Squad leaders move their squads in squad column by the shortest route to positions as shown in Figure 24. Squads retain the same relative position to the center squad. If at a halt, the base squad moves forward promptly and continues the march until halted by the section leader. When the command or signal: ***TRIANGULAR FORMATION,*** is given and the leader desires the center squad back he will notify the leader of the center squad accordingly.

163. To deploy as skirmishers.—*a.* The section being in any formation, the section or platoon leader may deploy the squads as skirmishers by commanding or signaling: ***AS SKIRMISH-***

ERS. Squads deploy, retaining the same relative position they had when the command or signal: ***AS SKIRMISHERS,*** was given.

b. If it is desired to change the formation of the section and at the same time deploy the squad as skirmishers, the leader first indicates the formation and then commands or signals, ***AS SKIRMISHERS.***

164. To assemble the section.—To assemble the section, the leader commands or signals: ***ASSEMBLE,*** and points to the place where the assembly is to be made. The section assembles in column of threes.

165. To advance the section during the fire fight.—*a.* The leader, assisted by the second in command, controls the advance of the section. When it becomes necessary to move squads successively, the section leader signals ***FORWARD*** to the squad leaders in turn, usually leaving the method of advance to the discretion of the squad leaders. It may become necessary for the section leader to go to the squad leaders and give them direct oral orders for the movement.

b. Occasions may arise, especially in the assault, when an entire section may be moved as a unit. In such cases, the leader commands: ***FOLLOW ME*** and springs forward, leading the entire section to the next position to be occupied or to hand-to-hand combat with the enemy. If necessary for safety, he may first command: ***CEASE FIRING.***

166. Antiaircraft formation.—*a.* Being in column of threes, to deploy to meet an attack from the air. At a prearranged signal or at the command: ***Airplanes to front (rear, right, left),*** the right squad moves off the road to the right at top speed, the leading d rear men of each squad go about 10 paces and the center man about 50 paces from the road and halt. Other men of the squad go to such distances, so that when halted the squad forms a rough semicircle (fig. 25). The squad on the left moves to the left of the road in like manner. The men of the center squad jump into the ditches on either side of the road, odd-numbered men to the right and even-numbered men to the left.

b. In deployments against air attack, men upon halting assume the antiaircraft firing position facing the approaching airplanes. Section leaders take positions near the center of their units. Seconds in command move to the opposite side of the road from their leaders.

c. Being deployed to meet an air attack, if it is desired to continue the march without assembling on the road, squad columns are formed and the march continued off the road.

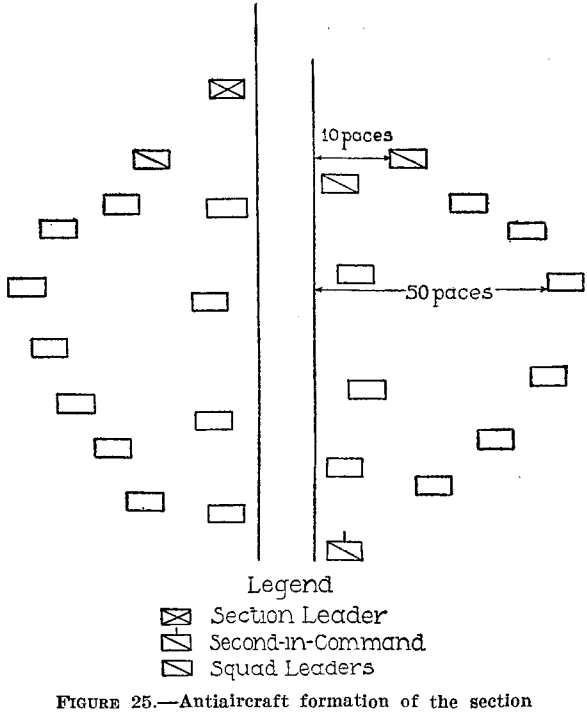


FIGURE 25.—Antiaircraft formation of the section

SECTION V

THE RIFLE PLATOON

167. General.—The provisions for direction of deployment and direction of advance as prescribed for the section apply also to the platoon.

168. Formations.—*a.* The formations of the platoon are—

(1) Column of sections (fig. 26).

(2) Line of sections (fig. 27).

(3) Sections echeloned right (left) (fig. 28).

b. Within each section, the leader prescribes the formation unless it has already been announced by the platoon leader.

169. Posts of leaders and runners.—Leaders and runners are not restricted to fixed posts. In general, the following will govern:

a. The platoon leader, when the platoon is in movement, is on the side of the platoon toward the enemy. When the platoon is halted in a firing position, he directs the platoon from a position in rear of its leading section, or if both sections are in one line, his position will be in rear thereof; when otherwise halted, he remains in front of his platoon. The platoon sergeant is in rear of the center of the leading section; if both sections are in line he is near the center of the platoon.

b. Runners join the platoon leader at the command for deployment. When the platoon deploys as an element in a combat formation of the company, one runner joins the company commander.

170. Distances and intervals.—*a.* The distances and intervals between sections are variable. When the platoon is in column of sections, the rear section must be far enough in rear to avoid heavy casualties from fire directed at the leading section. This distance will depend chiefly upon the ground, and the accuracy of the enemy's fire. If the terrain is rough and broken, the second section may occasionally find a covered position as close as 50 yards behind the leading section. Normally, however, this distance, on average ground, will vary from 100 to 200 yards. The rear section must not be allowed to fall back, or remain so far to the rear, that the platoon leader can not employ it without undue loss of time.

b. Upon entry into combat the platoon leader prescribes the distance between sections. When the fire fight begins, the rear section normally halts under cover; its movements thereafter usually will be regulated by the platoon sergeant under instructions from the platoon leader.

171. Use of scouts.—Upon entry into combat, scouts are sent out from the leading section on orders from the platoon or section leader who determines the number of scout pairs sent out, whether one, two, or three. No more than are necessary to cover the front of the platoon will be used. The platoon follows the scouts at such distance that it will not be subjected to surprise small-arms fire.

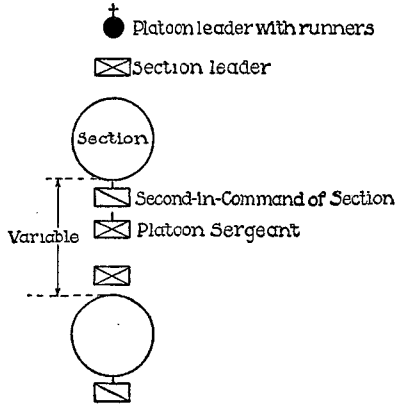


FIGURE 26.—Column of sections

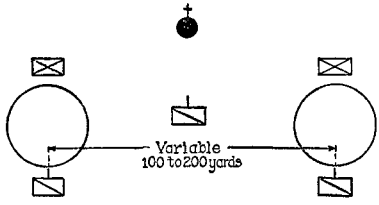


FIGURE 27.—Line of sections

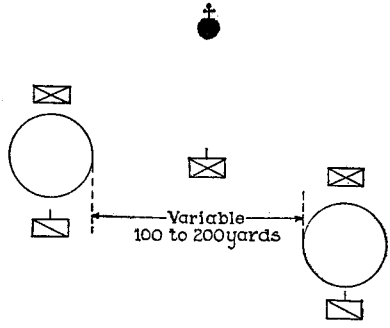


FIGURE 28.—Sections echeloned right

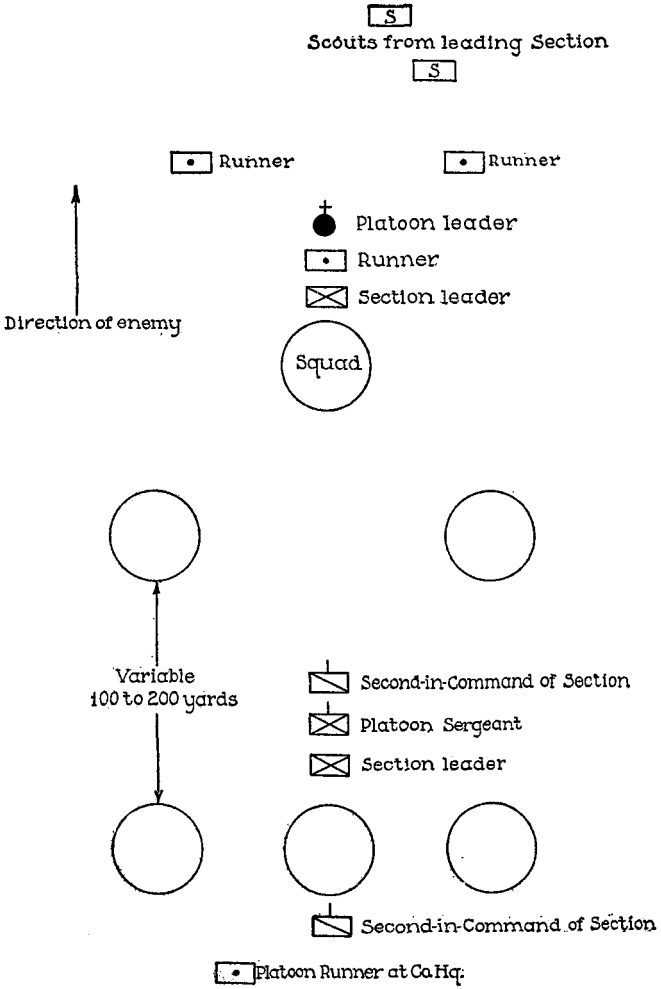


FIGURE 29.—The platoon deployed and advancing, the leading section in triangular formation, rear section in line of squads

172. **Being in column of threes, to deploy in column of sections.**—*a.* The platoon leader commands or signals the initial formation which he wishes the sections to take: ***Line of squads, section columns, as skirmishers,*** or ***triangular formation.*** Each section deploys as prescribed for the section. The leading section moves to the front at a run so as to gain distance from the rear section. After the initial deployment, the section leaders may vary their own formations to suit the ground and cover.

b. If the platoon leader desires a different formation for each section, he issues orders accordingly.

173. **Being in column of threes, to form line of sections or sections echeloned.**—The platoon leader first deploys the platoon in column of sections. He then commands or signals: ***LINE OR ECHELON RIGHT (LEFT).*** When forming line, the leader indicates, by pointing, the side of the leading section on which he wishes the rear section to move. The leader of the rear section conducts his section to its place as indicated in Figures 27 and 28.

174. **To assemble the platoon.**—The leader commands or signals: ***ASSEMBLE*** and points to the place where the assembly is to be made. The platoon assembles in column of threes.

175. **To re-form the platoon at a designated place.**—*a.* When necessary to cross areas difficult of passage, the platoon leader may command, 1. ***On (such line, e. g., crest, hedge, road, etc.),*** 2. ***RE-FORM.***

b. Each squad leader sends men forward, singly or in pairs, to the line or locality designated by the section or platoon leader.

c. The platoon leader must recover control of his platoon at the designated position before attempting a further advance.

176. **To advance the platoon in attack.**—See TR 420–115.

CHAPTER 7

CLOSE-ORDER DRILL—THE MACHINE-GUN COMPANY

		Paragraphs
SECTION I.	General, without transportation	177
II.	The machine-gun squad, with transportation	178–190
III.	The machine-gun section, with transportation	191–202
IV.	The machine-gun platoon, with transportation	203–208
V.	The machine-gun company, with transportation	209–215

SECTION I

GENERAL, WITHOUT TRANSPORTATION

177. General.—*a.* Individual instruction in basic subjects is carried out as prescribed for the rifle units.

b. Machine-gun units execute close-order drill, without transportation, as prescribed for rifle units, with the following exceptions:

(1) The men armed with the rifle do not execute movements of the manual of arms except ***INSPECTION ARMS.*** At formations of the company and for drill and ceremonies, the rifle is carried slung over the right shoulder, butt down, barrel to the rear. Rifles are unslung only at the commands ***REST, FALL OUT,*** for inspections of arms or when otherwise directed.

(2) Each member of the squad, as in close-order drill, with transportation, is given a permanent number, which he holds throughout all drill of the company. The corporals are not numbered.

(3) The section forms in two ranks, with the odd-numbered squad forming the rear rank.

(4) The section marches in column of twos instead of threes.

(5) In formations of the platoon, the agent corporal and transport corporal occupy the posts and perform the duties of

the second in command of the first and second sections, respectively.

(6) The platoon marches in column of fours.

(7) In pitching shelter tents the corporal and No. 1, Nos. 2 and 3, 4 and 5, etc., pitch tents together instead of Nos. 1 and 2, 3 and 4, etc., as prescribed in paragraph 107.

SECTION II

THE MACHINE-GUN SQUAD, WITH TRANSPORTATION

178. Objects.—The objects of close-order drill with transportation are:

a. To instruct the men to drill, maneuver, and march with the carts.

b. To instruct the men in the proper method of handling the animals.

179. Organization.—The squad at war strength consists of a corporal, 10 privates and (or) privates, first class. The corporal is the squad leader and, when absent, is replaced by the second in command. Each member of the squad, except the corporal, is given a permanent number which he holds through gun, battery, and extended-order drills. However, every man in the squad is thoroughly trained in the duties of every other man in order that the service of the gun will not be affected by casualties. No. 1 is the gunner and the second in command; No. 2 is the assistant gunner and loader; Nos. 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, and 8 are ammunition carriers. Nos. 7 and 8 are also assistant mule leaders; Nos. 9 and 10 are mule leaders. When any man is absent or is a casualty, all higher numbered men move up one number.

180. Transportation.—*a.* The transportation of the squad consists of a gun cart and an ammunition cart, each drawn by a mule.

b. The animals and carts being an integral part of the machine-gun squad, all men of the squad are trained in harnessing, hitching, loading the carts, and leading the mule. Mule leaders are selected from those men who demonstrate special ability in the care and handling of animals. Mule leaders should be held responsible for the care and handling of the transportation under their charge.

181. Duties of the mule leader.—The chief duties of the mule leader are:

a. Leading the mule during drill, on the march, and during combat.

b. Training and care of the mule.

c. Care and adjustment of the harness.

d. Harnessing and unharnessing.

e. Hitching and unhitching.

f. Care of the cart.

182. To lead the mule.—When hitched, the mule is led by means of the reins or halter tie rope. The mule leader takes position on the near side of the mule, holding the reins near the bit with his right hand, and holding the loose ends of the reins in his left hand. At drill and ceremonies, the mule is lead with the reins; on the march, the halter tie rope may be used. The mule is led with a loose rein and urged on from the rear, if necessary, by a member of the squad. The mule leader should not face or threaten the mule when leading him.

183. To gather the mule.—The mule leader raises his right hand until it touches the mule's lower jaw and at the same time exerts a slight pressure with the reins in the direction in which the movement is to be made. The object of gathering the mule is to attract his attention and prepare him for the movement. At all preparatory commands involving a movement of the cart, the mule is gathered in time to cause the movement to begin at the command of execution.

184. To change direction.—In all changes of direction the mule is led outward and away from the pivot in order to increase the radius of turning. In a turn to the right, the mule, while actually led in the turn, may be better controlled if the mule leader places his right shoulder against the mule and guides him in the turn.

185. To load the carts.—At the command ***LOAD CARTS*** the squad under the supervision of its leader secures the squad equipment. Nos. 1, 2, 3, 7, and Nos. 4, 5, 6, 8, load the gun and ammunition carts, respectively, as follows:

a. Gun cart.—(1) One tripod, strapped to the tripod supports on the right side of the ammunition rack by means of the tripod holding straps.

(2) One machine gun in its cover, placed in gun chest, muzzle to the rear, top of gun up.

(3) One cleaning rod, in gun chest.

(4) One flash hider, in gun chest.

(5) One steam-condensing device, in gun chest.

(6) One pair of asbestos mittens, in gun chest.

(7) One spare barrel in its cover, in gun chest.

(8) Two water chests, in ammunition rack, one in front and one in rear, secured by ammunition chest holding down straps.

(9) Five ammunition chests, in ammunition rack, latches up, beveled faces alternating, secured by ammunition chest holding down straps.

(10) One horse cover, when ordered to be carried, folded to the dimensions of carrier slats and secured to same by means of the carrier straps.

(11) One feed bag, strapped on carrier slats.

(12) One grain bag, strapped on carrier slats.

(13) One collapsible water bucket, strapped on carrier slats.

(14) Three carrying slings, strapped on carrier slats.

(15) One cart paulin, folded to the dimensions of carrier slats and secured to same by means of the carrier straps, when not used to cover the carts and equipment.

(16) One set of spare mule shoes and nails, in metal tool box.

(17) One grooming kit, in metal tool box.

(18) One short-handle shovel, inserted over axle, face of shovel up and held in position by the shovel-holding strap.

(19) One pick mattock handle inserted on pick-handle holder and mattock blade secured by pick-holding billet and strap.

(20) One broad hatchet, blade placed in hatchet-blade holder on the rear of the ammunition rack and handle secured by hatchet-holding strap.

(21) One emergency rope, passed through the hand grips on the front cross sill and attached around the front cross sill so that the free ends of the rope, used for pulling or breaking the cart, will be of equal length on both sides of the cart. The free ends of the rope are coiled around the ends of the front cross sill over the hand grip. A loop is made at the ends of the rope; this loop passed under the next to the last coil and secured by passing the free end of the rope through the loop.

b. Ammunition cart.—(1) Twelve ammunition chests in ammunition rack, latches up, bevel faces alternating, secured by ammunition chest holding down strap.

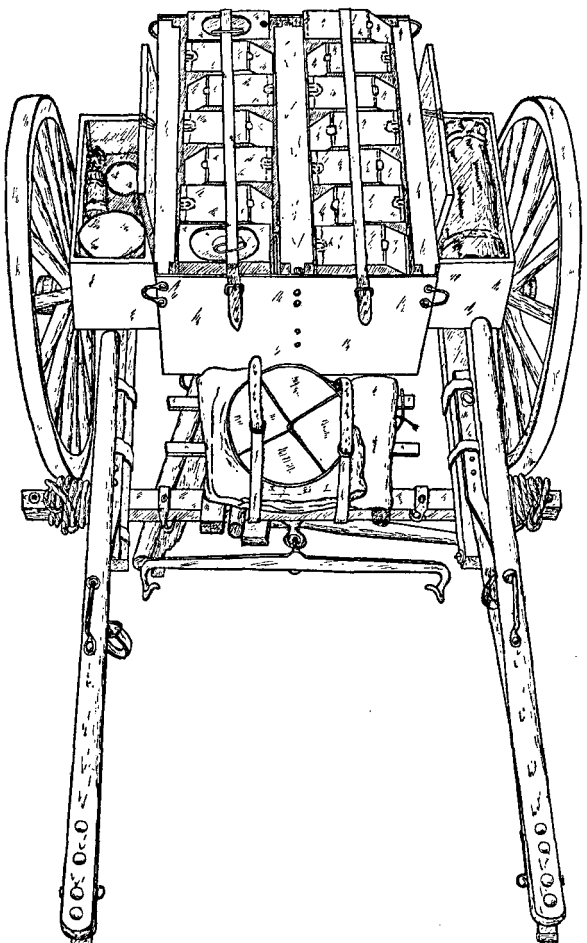


FIGURE 30.—The ammunition cart, loaded

(2) Two water chests, in right front and rear of ammunition rack, and secured by ammunition chest holding down straps.

(3) One tool kit, in left-hand tool chest.

(4) One set cleaning and preserving materials, in right-hand tool chest.

(5) One grooming kit, in right-hand tool chest.

(6) One set spare parts and emergency repair material, in left-hand tool chest.

(7) One horse cover, when ordered to be carried, folded to dimensions of carrier slats and secured to same by means of the carrier straps.

(8) One cart paulin, folded to dimensions of carrier slats and secured to same by means of the carrier straps, when not used to cover the cart and equipment.

(9) One set of spare mule shoes and nails, in right-hand tool chest.

(10) One collapsible water bucket, strapped on carrier slats.

(11) One feed bag, strapped on carrier slats.

(12) One grain bag, strapped on carrier slats.

(13) One emergency rope secured as described for the gun cart.

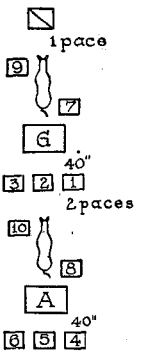
(14) Four carrying slings strapped on the carrier slats.

c. This equipment may be modified to meet the practicable requirements of service. The base and aiming stakes and T bases may be carried on the carts as required by the tactical situation. Platoon equipment, such as the belt-filling machine, or section equipment, may be placed on the carrier slats of one of the carts of the platoon or section. The spare-parts box is carried on the gun cart of odd-numbered squads. The equipment, however, is always placed so that the load is very evenly balanced. Care will be taken that the weight of extra articles of equipment is not all forward of the axle and that all articles are properly secured to the cart.

186. To form the squad.—The squad leader places himself 1 pace in front of where the head of the mule of the gun cart is to be and commands: ***AROUND CARTS, FALL IN.***

a. At the command ***AROUND CARTS,*** the other members of the squad post themselves as follows: Nos. 1, 2, and 3 in that order from right to left post themselves at 4-inch intervals in rear of the gun cart or the Matthews mount, if used, and 40 inches therefrom. Similarly, Nos. 4, 5, and 6 post themselves in rear of the ammunition cart. Nos. 7 and 8 one pace to the right of the hip of the gun and ammunition cart mules, respectively.

b. At the command ***FALL IN,*** the gun-cart mule leader leads his mule to a position 1 pace from and facing the corporal. The ammunition-cart mule leader leads his mule 3 paces in rear of and covers off the gun cart and mule. The men assemble at attention. Each man who has to furnish interval to the man on his left raises his elbow as in ***Dress right.*** The arms are dropped as soon as the man on the left has the proper interval.



AROUND CARTS

Corporal
Private
G Gun Cart
A Ammunition cart
Mule

FIGURE 31.—Formation of the machine-gun squad with transportation

c. When the squad has assembled the squad leader commands: 1. ***Count,*** 2. ***OFF.*** The command is executed as in paragraph 86, except that the mule leader and assistants do not execute ***eyes right.*** They count off in numerical order immediately following No. 6.

d. In subsequent movement of the squad, all men, except the corporal, retain their positions around carts.

187. Previous instruction applicable.—The squad executes the ***halt, rests, steps*** (except the side step), and ***forward march*** as prescribed in chapter 2, except that the mule leaders do not execute ***parade rest*** but remain at attention. In executing the halt, sufficient interval is allowed between the preparatory command and the command of execution to permit the prompt halting of the mule.

188. To align the squad.—To align the squad the commands are as prescribed in paragraph 87. The mule leaders move their carts as prescribed in paragraph 186. Nos. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, and 6 execute the command as previously prescribed. Nos. 7 and 8 place themselves in their proper positions and remain at attention.

189. To change direction.—To change direction the commands are: 1. ***Column right (left),*** 2. ***MARCH.***

a. At the command ***MARCH,*** the mules are lead as explained in paragraph 184. The ammunition cart turns on the same ground and in the same manner as the gun cart.

b. ***Column half right (left)*** is executed in a similar manner.

190. To march to the flank.—To march to the flank the commands are: 1. ***Carts right (left),*** 2. ***MARCH.***

At the command ***MARCH,*** each cart changes direction to the right.

SECTION III

THE MACHINE-GUN SECTION, WITH TRANSPORTATION

191. General.—The section consists of a sergeant (section leader) and two squads. The section is the fire unit in battle, which means that, generally, it is held together and its fire placed on common targets. It is trained and drilled as a unit to develop cohesion and teamwork. The movements prescribed herein provide simple evolutions sufficient to maneuver the section at drill, for ceremonies, and in battle; in addition, they develop the capacity for leadership of the section leader and train the two squads to operate together as a team. The principal formations during movements in close-order drill are similar to those employed during combat except that the intervals and distances are reduced to close-order requirements.

192. Formations.—The formations of the section are mass, line of squads, and column of squads. (See fig. 32.)

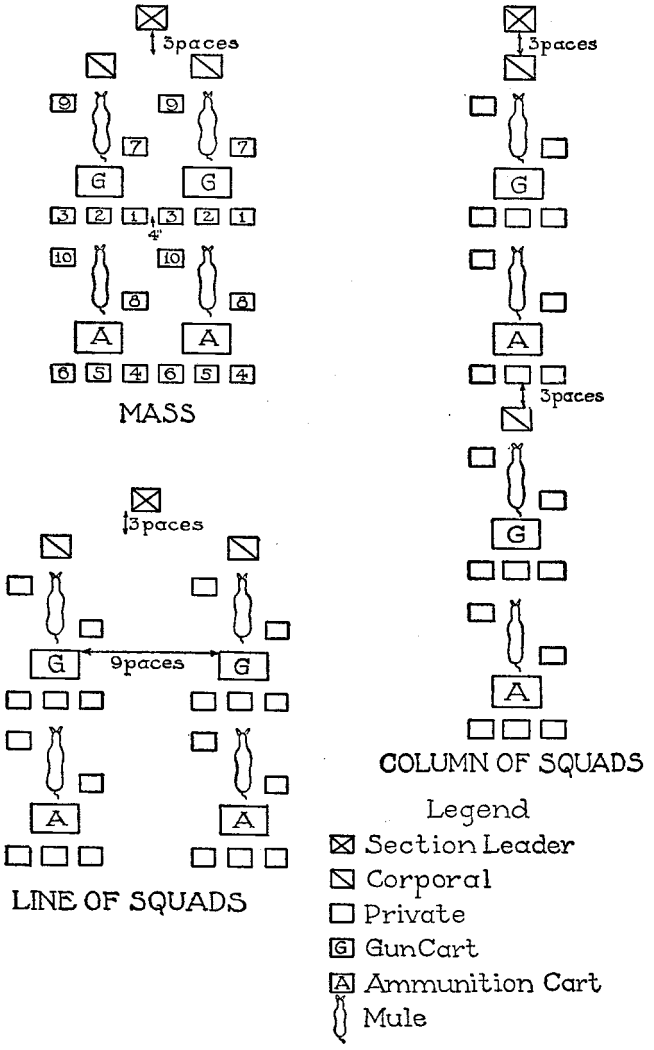


FIGURE 32.—Formations of the machine-gun section with transportation

193. To form the section.—To form the section the section leader places himself 3 paces in front of and facing the point where the center of the section is to be and commands: ***AROUND CARTS, FALL IN.***

a. At the command ***FALL IN,*** the section forms mass as shown in Figure 32.

b. When the section has formed as prescribed above, the section leader commands: 1. ***Count,*** 2. ***OFF.***

The command is executed simultaneously by squads as prescribed in paragraph 186.

194. To align the section.—To align the section the section leader commands: 1. ***Dress right (left),*** 2. ***DRESS,*** 3. ***Ready,*** 4. ***FRONT.***

a. The squads execute ***dress right.***

b. The section leader verifies the alignment in a manner similar to that explained in paragraph 105.

195. Previous instruction applicable.—The section executes the rests, steps (except the side steps), and marchings as explained in chapter 2. Being in column of squads, it changes direction as explained for the squad. Being in any formation it marches to a flank as explained for the squad.

196. To open and close ranks.—The section being in section mass or line of squads, to open and close ranks the commands are: 1. ***Open ranks,*** 2. ***MARCH.***

a. At the command ***MARCH,*** the corporals and the gun carts, Nos. 1, 2, and 3, and the ammunition carts move forward, 6, 4, and 2 paces, respectively. Nos. 7 and 8 retain their relative positions opposite the hips of the mules. All men except the corporal and Nos. 7, 8, 9, and 10 extend to normal interval on the center man of each rank of each squad while opening ranks, if the section is in line of squads.

b. Being at open ranks, to close ranks the commands are: 1. ***Close ranks,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH,*** the elements in rear of the gun carts close to their proper distances.

197. Being in section mass or line of squads, to form column of squads.—The commands are: 1. ***Right (left) by squads,*** 2. ***MARCH.***

At the command ***MARCH,*** the right squad moves forward. The other squad follows the right squad at the prescribed distance by the shortest practicable route.

198. Being in any formation, to change direction.—The commands are: 1. ***Column right (left),*** 2. ***MARCH.***

a. If in column of squads, the leading squad executes ***column right;*** the rear squad follows the leading squad in column.

b. If in section mass or line of squads, the right squad executes ***column right*** and decreases its pace; the other squad increases its pace, turns to the right and, without changing the interval, places itself abreast of the right squad; when abreast of each other the squads resume the normal step. To hasten the execution of this movement the command ***double time*** is given before the command of execution. In this case, the right squad marches in quick time; the left squad marches in double time until abreast of the right squad when it takes up the quick time.

199. Being in column of squads, to form line of squads to the flank.—The commands are: 1. ***Squads column right (left),*** 2. ***MARCH.*** The section marches in line for short distances only.

200. Being in column of squads, to form section mass or line of squads to the front.—The commands are: 1. ***Section mass (line of squads) to the right (left) front,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH,*** the leading squad halts; the rear squad moves by the shortest practicable route and forms mass to the right of the leading squad.

201. Being in column of squads, to form line of squads to the front.—The commands are: 1. ***Line of squads to the right (left) front,*** 2. ***MARCH.***

At the command ***MARCH,*** the leading squad halts; the rear squad executes ***column right*** and when opposite its place in line executes ***column left,*** moves forward and halts abreast of the leading squad.

202. Being in line of squads, to form section mass.—The commands are: 1. ***Close on right (left) squad,*** 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. ***Section,*** 4. ***HALT.***

At the command ***MARCH,*** the right squad marches forward or continues the march; the left squad marches by the shortest practicable route to its place in mass. When the section has advanced the desired distance it is halted. The left squad halts when abreast of the right squad.

SECTION IV

THE MACHINE-GUN PLATOON, WITH TRANSPORTATION

203. General.—*a.* The machine-gun platoon consists of a platoon headquarters and two sections. The platoon headquarters

consists of one lieutenant, mounted (platoon leader), one platoon sergeant (second in command), two corporals (agent and transport), and four privates (three runners and one mounted orderly).

b. In each platoon, men are assigned to squads without reference to height so that each squad will have its proper proportion of large men. Men are assigned to duties which they are best suited to perform. The integrity of squads is maintained. When the strength of the platoon is so reduced that there are less than three men in each squad, its members are temporarily consolidated into a section for drill.

204. Individual duties and posts.—*a. The platoon sergeant.*—The platoon sergeant is second in command of the platoon and receives the report from the section leaders at all formations when a report is required. He is responsible that the platoon equipment carried on the carts is complete and properly loaded. Unless otherwise directed by the platoon leader, the post of the platoon sergeant in the formations of the platoon is 40 inches in rear of the rear elements of the platoon. His post, together with those of the agent corporal and transport corporal, is centrally located in rear of the platoon. From his post he supervises the drill and assists the platoon leader in control. (Fig. 33.) At the platoon leader's command ***Dress right,*** the platoon sergeant dresses the platoon, when it is in mass formation.

b. The section leader.—The section leaders command their sections and receive the report of the squad leaders at all formations when a report is required.

c. The agent corporal.—The agent corporal is posted at 4-inch interval on the left of the platoon sergeant.

d. The transport corporal.—The transport corporal commands the transportation of the platoon when it is detached from the platoon. He is posted at 4-inch interval on the left of the agent corporal.

e. Runners are attached to squads during close-order formations not requiring their normal employment as agents of communication.

205. Formations.—The formations of the platoon are: Mass, line of squads, column of squads. (Fig. 33.)

206. Previous instruction applicable.—The platoon executes the halts, rests, steps (except the side steps), and marchings, as explained in chapter 2; being in mass or line of squads,

it opens and closes ranks, forms column of squads and the reverse; being in line of squads, it forms mass, and being in

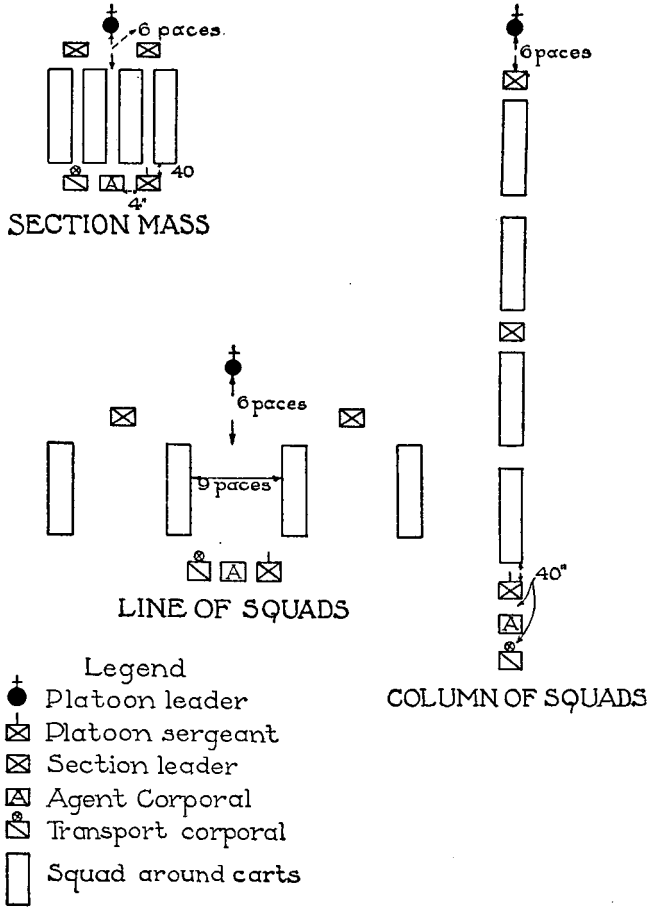


FIGURE 33.—Formations of the machine-gun platoon with transportation

any formation it changes direction, in a similar manner and by the same commands as explained for the section, substituting the proper unit designations.

207. To form the platoon.—To form the platoon the platoon sergeant takes post 6 paces in front of and facing the position the center of the platoon is to occupy and commands: ***AROUND CARTS, FALL IN.***

The section leaders form their sections as explained in paragraph 193, so that the center of the interval between sections will be opposite the platoon sergeant.

208. To align the platoon.—To align the platoon the platoon leader directs the section leaders ***Dress right (left).*** The section leaders align their sections successively from the right (left). When the platoon is in mass formation the platoon sergeant aligns the platoon.

SECTION V

THE MACHINE-GUN COMPANY, WITH TRANSPORTATION

209. General.—*a.* The machine-gun company consists of a company headquarters and three platoons. Each platoon consists of two sections. The platoon is the basic drill unit. If necessary, in order to secure the squad personnel, the number of platoons in the company may be reduced. Squads, sections, and platoons are numbered consecutively within the company from right to left and from head to rear. These designations do not change. The company commander may direct the platoon leaders to form their platoons in any prescribed formation. Platoon leaders carry out these directions by giving the appropriate commands to their platoons.

b. The guidon is carried according to the principles authorized and prescribed in chapter 3, part two. In formation, the position of the guidon conforms to the indicated position in Figure 34.

c. For practice marches in which no tactical situation is involved, the personnel of the company may be combined into a unit and marched in front of the combined company carts. This same expedient may be employed within platoons.

210. Formations.—*a.* The formations of the company are: Line of masses, line of squads, column of masses, and column of squads.

b. The company forms in line of masses or column of masses. (Fig. 34.) The company headquarters, whenever present, is formed on the right of the company, as a platoon, by the senior noncommissioned officer present. For drill or ceremonies, unless otherwise directed, the personnel of company headquarters

is distributed among the platoons without interfering with the permanent squad organization.

c. The company drills as a unit only for the purpose of obtaining proficiency in ceremonial formations.

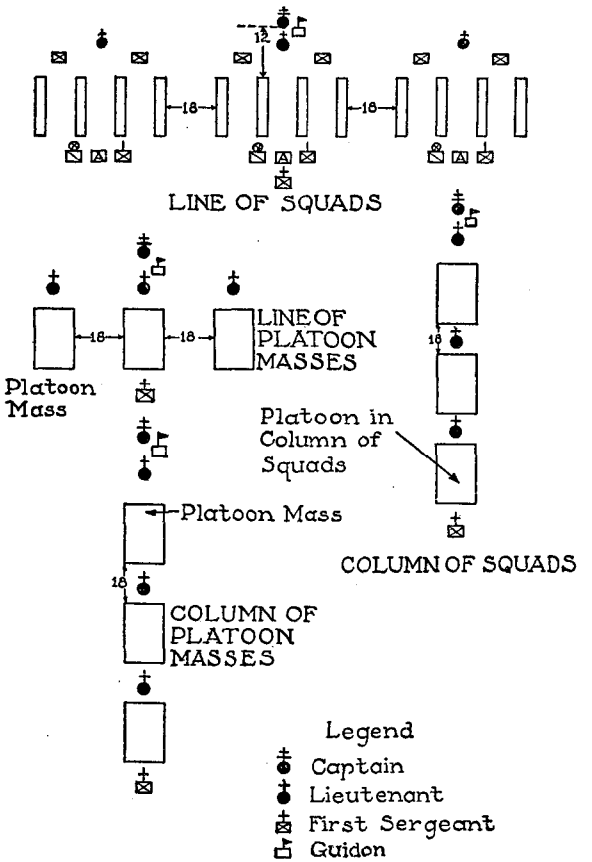


FIGURE 34.—Formations of the machine-gun company with transportation. (All distances and intervals are in paces)

211. To form the company.—The company forms as in paragraph 124, except that the platoons form in mass, with 18 paces interval between platoons. (Fig. 34.)

212. **To dismiss the company.**—*a.* The company commander directs the first sergeant: ***DISMISS THE COMPANY.*** The officers fall out; the first sergeant moves to a point 9 paces in front of the center of the company or the leading platoon, salutes, faces toward the company, and commands: 1. ***Inspection,*** 2. ***PISTOLS,*** 3. ***Return,*** 4. ***PISTOLS,*** 5. ***DISMISSED.*** Transportation and equipment are disposed of as directed.

b. Dismissal may take place by direction to the platoon leaders, by the company commander commanding: ***DISMISS YOUR PLATOONS.*** Each platoon is then dismissed as described for the company, the platoon sergeant performing the duties prescribed for the first sergeant. The company headquarters is dismissed by its leader.

213. **Previous instruction applicable.**—Being in line of masses or line of squads, the company forms column of squads and the reverse, being in line of squads it forms line of masses, it opens and closes ranks and changes direction, similarly, as prescribed in Section IV.

214. **Being in line of masses, to form column of masses.**—The commands are: 1. ***Platoons column right (left),*** 2. ***MARCH,*** or, 1. ***Right by platoons,*** 2. ***MARCH.***

215. **Being in column of masses, to form column of squads.**—The commands are: 1. ***Column of squads, leading platoon right (left) by squads,*** 2. ***MARCH.***

CHAPTER 8

GUN DRILL—THE MACHINE-GUN COMPANY

	Paragraphs
SECTION I. Elementary machine-gun drill	216–232
II. Advanced machine-gun drill	233–251
III. Tests in elementary and advanced gun drill and immediate action	252–259
IV. Machine-gun battery drill	260–275

SECTION I

ELEMENTARY MACHINE-GUN DRILL

216. Object and scope.—The primary purpose of elementary gun drill is to teach the duties of Nos. 1, 2, and 3 in mounting and dismounting, loading and unloading the gun. The most important consideration is the development of accuracy. When accuracy has been obtained, emphasis is then placed on the development of speed.

217. Organization of the squad.—*a.* The gun squad, less transportation, consists of 1 corporal and 10 privates with the squad gun equipment. The corporal commands the squad, No. 1 is the gunner, No. 2 the loader and assistant gunner, and Nos. 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, and 8 are ammunition and water carriers. Nos. 9 and 10 (mule leaders) act as ammunition carriers and replacements during gun drill.

b. Each man is given a permanent number in the gun squad. When any man is absent, or becomes a casualty, all higher numbered men take the place of the next lower numbered man.

218. General rules.—*a. Equipment required.*—The following articles of equipment are required for elementary gun drill: Tripod and gunner's pouch, gun with cover or portable gun rest, ammunition chest, ammunition belt containing a few dummy cartridges, water chest and any convenient target such as the manipulation target or a stake with an aiming point on it.

b. Grounding equipment.—At the original assembly with equipment and at all halts, loads are grounded without command. Each man, except No. 3, places his load on the ground on his right. No. 3 places the ammunition chest on his right and the water chest on his left.

c. Taking equipment.—At all preparatory commands for movement, loads are taken.

d. Movements.—(1) When formed for elementary gun drill, the squad executes the halt, steps (except side steps), and marchings, rests and resumes attention, and, when in close-order formation, resumes the direct march, obtains and preserves the alignment, and changes direction, as prescribed in close-order drill.

(2) In elementary gun drill, movements will be limited to those necessary to put the squad in the proper place for the execution of gun drill.

219. To form the gun squad.—The corporal places himself 3 paces in front of where the squad is to form and commands: ***FALL IN.*** The squad forms in column. The corporal then commands: ***COUNT OFF.*** At this command, the men count off from head to rear 1, 2, 3, 4, etc.

220. To secure equipment.—Normally, equipment for gun drill is secured before the squad is formed. At any time after the squad has been formed, the squad being in any formation, to secure equipment, the command is: ***SECURE EQUIPMENT FOR ELEMENTARY DRILL.*** At this command, the men fall out and each secures equipment as follows:

No. 1. Tripod and gunner's pouch.

No. 2. Gun with gun cover or portable gun rest.

No. 3. Ammunition chest, ammunition belt with dummy cartridges and water chest.

No. 4. Target.

After the equipment is secured, the squad assembles without command in the original formation.

221. To lay out equipment.—*a.* The squad being in any formation the command is: ***LAY OUT EQUIPMENT FOR ELEMENTARY DRILL.*** At this command, the equipment is laid out as follows (see fig. 35):

(1) Tripod, with trail to the rear, at the position designated by the instructor.

(2) Gun, with muzzle to the front, resting on gun cover or portable rest, 3 paces to the left of and on line with the tripod.

(3) Ammunition chest, 3 paces in rear of the center of the interval between the gun and tripod, the water chest on the left of and on line with the ammunition chest. Lid of the water box and latch of the ammunition chest to the front.

(4) Target, at any convenient distance in front of the tripod as designated by the instructor.

b. As soon as the equipment is laid out, the squad re-forms on No. 1 who takes position 8 paces in rear of the tripod.

c. After the squad re-forms, the instructor cautions the squad that No. 1 is to repeat all commands, and No. 2 to transmit all signals.

222. **To post the gun squad.**—*a.* The squad being formed after laying out equipment for elementary gun drill, the command is: ***POSTS.*** At this command, Nos. 1, 2, and 3 move at a run and take prone positions, facing their equipment, as follows:

No. 1 on the left of the tripod.

No. 2 on the left of the gun.

No. 3 on the left of the ammunition and water chests.

Nos. 4 to 10 stand fast unless otherwise directed.

They may be called up to a convenient position near the gun to observe the drill. (See fig. 35.)

b. The gun being mounted and the members having left the gun, at the command ***POSTS,*** all members take their proper positions as prescribed in paragraph 228.

223. **To stand clear of the gun or the gun equipment.**—The equipment being laid out or the gun being mounted, the command is: ***STAND CLEAR.*** At this command, all numbers at the gun equipment spring to their feet and step back 3 paces without disturbing the equipment and remain at attention.

224. **To change numbers and duties in the squad.**—*a.* The squad being in any formation, the command is: ***FALL OUT ONE*** (***TWO, THREE*** or any number in the squad). At this command, No. 1 takes the position of the last number of the squad. No. 2 calls out: ***ONE,*** and moves to the position of No. 1. No. 3 calls out: ***TWO,*** and moves to the position of No. 2, and so on throughout the squad, each man moving up one number. When a number other than No. 1 is directed to fall out, he takes the position of the last number of the squad.

The numbers following the designated number call out their new numbers, and move to their new positions. The men preceding the designated number do not change their positions.

b. This rotation in elementary gun drill is made in order to train all members of the squad in the duties of Nos. 1, 2, and 3, and to simulate casualties. During the earlier stages of elementary gun drill this command is given only after a movement or command has been completely executed. After each member of the squad is familiar with the duties of Nos. 1, 2, and 3 the command may be given before the completion of a movement. In such cases, each man at once stops the execution of his duties and takes up the duties of his new number.

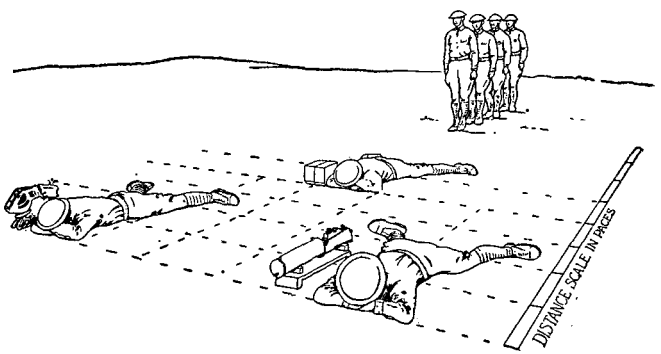


FIGURE 35.—The squad posted for elementary gun drill

225. To examine the gun equipment.—The equipment being laid out, the command is: ***EXAMINE EQUIPMENT.*** At this command, each man examines the gun equipment as described below.

a. No. 1 examines the tripod and sees that the—

(1) Trail is so adjusted that when the tripod is mounted, it will be at the proper height for him. He then closely folds and clamps the legs.

(2) Strap is securely buckled around the trail.

(3) Cradle is aligned over the trail.

(4) Traversing clamp is tight.

(5) Traversing dial is clamped.

(6) Trunnion and elevating pins are inserted properly and turned down.

(7) Elevating arc is clamped near its center.

(8) Elevating screw threads are exposed about 1 inch.

(9) Oil can is filled.

(10) Contents of the gunner's pouch are complete and the pouch is securely fastened on the left side of the cradle back of the ammunition chest supports.

b. No. 2 examines the gun as follows:

(1) Pulls back the latch and raises the rear-sight leaf and cover.

(2) Pulls back on the bolt handle and engages the extractor cam plunger behind the extractor feed cam.

(3) Sees that the—

(*a*) Muzzle is pointed to the front.

(*b*) Muzzle gland is screwed in tight.

(*c*) Barrel is clear.

(*d*) Steam-plug cork is inserted in the steam-plug cork hole.

(*e*) Water plugs are screwed in tightly.

(4) Allows the bolt to go forward, lowers and latches the cover.

(5) Pulls the trigger.

(6) Sees that the lower edges of the sight-adjustment plate are set at 700 and the wind gage is set at zero, and lowers the sight leaf.

c. No. 3 examines the belts and chests and sees that the—

(1) Cartridges are correctly placed and aligned.

(2) Belts are clean and dry.

(3) Belts are correctly packed in the chest.

(4) Chest lid is closed and fastened and the latch is toward the front.

(5) Water chest lid is screwed in and toward the front and the outlet cap is tight.

d. Upon completion of the examination of the equipment, No. 3 reports "Ammunition correct" (or the deficiencies noted); No. 2 reports "Gun and ammunition correct" (or the deficiencies noted); and No. 1 reports "All correct" (or the deficiencies noted). A thorough examination of the gun equipment is made at the beginning and at the end of the drill. A careful inspection will be made to insure that the ammunition belts contain no live rounds. Upon change of numbers within the squad, such examination of equipment is made as will

insure that the equipment is in proper condition for the execution of the drill, but no reports are made.

226. **To mount the tripod.**—*a.* The position at which the tripod is to be mounted having been designated, the command is: ***MOUNT TRIPOD.*** At this command, No. 1 grasps the right side of the cradle with his right hand, springs to his feet, runs forward, carrying the tripod with him (steadying it with the left hand if necessary), and places it on the ground at the designated position. He then straddles the trail, and, with the right hand forward and the left hand to the rear, he unclamps the legs with a sweeping movement. (See fig. 36.)

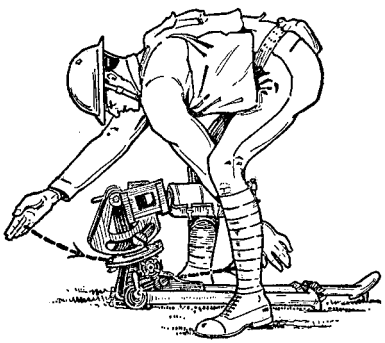


FIGURE 36.—Mounting the tripod

b. He grasps the right side of the cradle with his right hand, and, with his left hand at the front spacer, raises the tripod and swings the legs to the front. With the left hand grasping the front spacer, he steadies the tripod by placing the left forearm on the left thigh, glances up to see that the trail is aligned with the target, sees that the traversing dial is level, and clamps both legs with his right hand. He then sits down behind the trail, at the same time withdrawing the elevating and trunnion pins, and continues to hold them.

227. **To dismount the tripod.**—At the command ***DISMOUNT TRIPOD,*** No. 1 replaces the elevating and trunnion pins and turns them down. He grasps the right side of the cradle of the tripod with his right hand, springs up and, steadying it with his left hand, if necessary, turns to the left, and carries the tripod back at a run to a point 1 pace in rear of the original

position or to some other designated point. He places it on the ground, trail to the rear, straddles the trail, and unclamps both legs simultaneously, allowing the tripod to collapse. He then grasps the tripod with his left hand at the front spacer and his right hand at the right side of the cradle and stepping forward 1 pace folds the legs back along the trail with a short upward, forward movement. He raises the front end of the tripod off the ground with his left hand at the spacer, clamps both legs with his right hand, lowers the tripod to the ground, and takes the prone position to the left of the tripod.

228. To mount the gun.—*a.* At the command ***MOUNT GUN,*** the tripod is mounted. As soon as the tripod is nearly in position, No. 2 grasps the grip of the gun with his right hand, passes his left hand over and under the water jacket, raises the gun

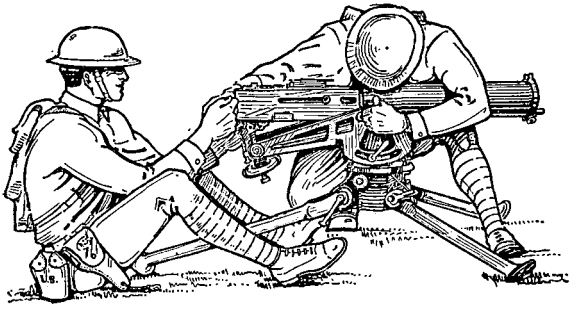


FIGURE 37.—Mounting the gun

under his left arm, moves forward at a run, and takes position on the left of the tripod and facing it. He reaches the position at the moment No. 1 removes the elevating and trunnion pins. No. 2 places his left foot between the front legs of the tripod and kneels on his right knee while supporting the weight of the gun on his left knee. Retaining his grasp of the grip with his right hand, he places the gun in position, inserts the trunnion pin with his left hand, and turns it down to the front.

b. He then lies down on the left of and facing the gun, feet to the rear, head below and in rear of the feed way. No. 1 aligns the hole in the elevating screw with the hole in the elevating bracket and, as soon as No. 2 starts the trunnion pin into the trunnion block, inserts the elevating pin and turns it down.

No. 1 then assumes the normal firing position. He sits in rear of the trail shoe, straddling the trail, with feet under the tripod. The knees are drawn up and turned out and the elbows are supported on the inner surfaces of the thighs. The thumb of either hand is placed in rear of the stock and the forefinger on the trigger, the remaining fingers not touching the gun. The other hand is held near the side plate ready to tap. The head is held erect and the eyes are directed toward the target.

c. No. 3 takes forward one ammunition and one water chest. He places the ammunition chest with the latch to the right, so that it is in the loading position and in line with the feed way. He places the water chest with the lid up in front of and leaning against the left leg of the tripod. He arrives with the ammunition and water chests at the moment No. 2 starts to lie down. He then returns to his original position.

d. No. 1 calls out: ***UP*** and No. 2 signals: ***READY*** when the gun is mounted and the equipment is in the proper place.

229. To dismount the gun.—*a.* (1) At the command ***DISMOUNT GUN,*** No. 1 removes the elevating and trunnion pins, and at the same time No. 2 places the ammunition and water chests to the left so as to be clear of his own position. He then springs to his feet, lifts the gun from the tripod (holding it as described in par. 228), turns to the left and runs to the original position. He places the gun on the gun cover or portable gun rest, muzzle to the front, and sees that the—

(*a*) Gun is unloaded.

(*b*) Trigger is pulled.

(*c*) Lower edges of the sight adjustment place are set at 700.

(*d*) Wind gage is set at zero.

(*e*) Sight leaf is down.

(2) He then resumes the prone position to the left of the gun.

b. As soon as No. 2 has removed the gun, No. I dismounts the tripod as described in paragraph 227.

c. No. 3 runs forward, arriving at the gun as No. 2 places the ammunition and water chests clear of his position, and brings them back to his original position. He then takes the prescribed prone position.

230. To load and to half load the gun.—*a. To load the gun.*—(1) At the command ***LOAD,*** No. 1 advances his right hand to a point opposite the belt exit and holds it in a position ready to grasp the brass tag of the belt.

(2) No. 2 opens the ammunition chest, grasps a fold of the belt between the thumb and forefinger of the right hand at the point where the brass tag joins the fabric, and pushes the tag through the feed opening as far as possible. No. 2 is responsible that the belt is straight and will feed properly, and that the cover is latched.

(3) No. 1 grasps the tag as it is pushed from the belt exit and gives it a quick jerk to the right. He next quickly pulls the bolt handle to its rearmost position and releases it. He again pulls the bolt handle to its rearmost position and releases it. The gun is then fully loaded. No. 1 resumes his proper position at the gun.

b. To half load the gun.—At the command ***HALF LOAD,*** the operation is the same as described in *a* above except that the bolt handle is pulled to its rearmost position and released only once.

231. To unload the gun.—*a.* At the command ***UNLOAD,*** No. 1 pulls back the latch with his left hand, raises the sight leaf with his right hand, and then raises the cover with the same hand. No. 2 lifts the belt up and removes it from the feed way, packs it carefully in the ammunition chest and closes the chest. No. 1 lowers the extractor with the left hand and the cover with the right, pulls the bolt handle once to its rearmost position, and releases it, at the same time lowering the sight leaf with his left hand. After the bolt handle is released he resumes the proper position and pulls the trigger.

b. In units equipped exclusively with machine guns constructed so the sight leaf will not strike the water jacket when the cover is raised, raising the sight leaf before the cover is raised is not required. In any case the cover will not be raised by the sight leaf.

232. To clear the gun.—At the command ***CLEAR GUN,*** No. 1 pulls back the latch and raises the sight leaf and cover. No. 2 lifts the belt and removes it from the feed way. No. 1 then pulls the bolt handle to its rearmost position and engages the extractor cam plunger behind the extractor feed cam and sees that the cartridge is ejected.

SECTION II

ADVANCED MACHINE-GUN DRILL

233. Equipment required.—*a.* In the earlier stages of training in advanced gun drill, only the gun equipment necessary

for the particular drill is required. When all members of the squad are familiar with the duties of Nos. 1, 2, and 3, all the equipment of the squad is used and each number made familiar with it.

b. (1) During advanced gun drill, whenever any or all of the squad equipment is used, responsibility and procedure are as follows:

(*a*) *Corporal.*—He carries the clinometer on his belt, and, in addition, carries the spare barrel and cleaning rod.

(*b*) *No. 1.*—He carries the tripod with the gunner's pouch attached.

(*c*) *No. 2.*—He assists at the gun as directed by No. 1 and, when water is used, keeps the water jacket filled. He carries the gun, with flash hider and steam-condensing device attached, and the asbestos mittens.

(*d*) *No. 3.*—He is responsible for the supply of ammunition, water, oil, and spare parts to the gun position and the return of all empty belts and chests to the point where the carriers bring the supplies. He carries one chest of ammunition and one water chest with a carrying sling.

(*e*) *Nos. 4 to 10, inclusive.*—They are responsible for the supply of ammunition, water, oil, and spare parts to No. 3, and for the return of all empty belts and chests to the munitions distributing point.

(2) Each number carries two chests of ammunition or an equivalent load by means of a carrying sling. No. 4 of odd-numbered squads carries the section spare-parts chest in place of one chest of ammunition.

c. Whenever any part or all of the equipment is used, it is laid out for drill and posts are taken by squad numbers as shown in Figure 39. The manipulation or other target, if used, is placed at a range of 1,000 inches from the gun position.

234. **To carry gun equipment by hand.**—At the command ***BY HAND,*** No. 1 clamps the legs of the tripod with the front legs making an angle of about 90° with the trail. The tripod is carried with the front legs over the shoulders and the trail lying flat against the back. When the gun cover is part of the equipment ordered for drill, No. 2 places the gun in its cover. He places the asbestos mittens on either shoulder, and then places the gun on the mittens with the left side plate down and holds the gun at the grip with his hand. The remainder of the squad place the carrying slings over their shoulders and

adjust the ammunition and water chests, and the spare-parts chest if carried, to the straps. Other equipment, such as base and aiming stakes, is secured and carried in the most convenient manner. The squad is then marched in the desired direction.

235. **To mount the gun in low position.**—*a.* (1) Before the gun is mounted in the lowest position the tripod may be in any of the following adjustments:

(*a*) Folded in the usual way with the trail set at an angle suitable for the normal sitting position.

(*b*) The trail set at an angle suitable for the lowest position so that it will not have to be adjusted after mounting.

(*c*) The trail set at an angle suitable for the lowest position so that it will not have to be adjusted after mounting, and, in addition, the two legs instead of being alongside the trail are swung forward, upward, and backward, pointing in the air.

(*d*) The tripod adjusted for carrying on the back.

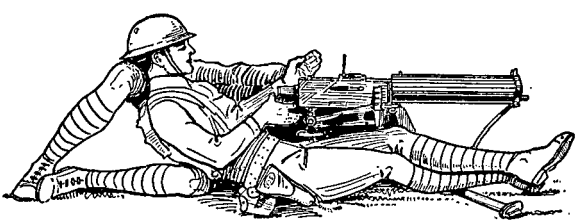


FIGURE 38.—The gun mounted in low position

(*e*) The tripod mounted for the low position prior to being brought forward.

(2) The tripod may be carried forward in the usual way, by crawling and dragging the tripod, or by crawling with the tripod carried on the back.

b. (1) When, before mounting, the tripod is adjusted in the usual way with the trail set at a suitable angle for the normal sitting position, at the command ***MOUNT GUN,*** No. 1 crawls with the tripod to the position indicated, places it on the ground, lies down an the right side of it with his feet to the front, and loosens the trail and leg clamps. He then adjusts the legs by rolling the tripod to the right and left and raises the socket about 1 inch from the ground, supporting the socket in the palm of his left hand. Keeping the socket upright, he clamps the trail and then tightens the leg clamps. He then removes the

trunnion and elevating pins. No. 2 carries the gun to the position by crawling. He lies down on the left of the tripod with his head to the front and, assisted by No. 1, places the gun on the tripod. No. 1 inserts the trunnion pin, No. 2 the elevating pin. No. 3 crawls up with the ammunition and water chests. When the gun is mounted, No. 1 lies down on the right of the tripod, feet to the front, left leg crossed over the right, with his head and shoulders supported by the legs of No. 2.

(2) The right leg of No. 2 is doubled up to give support at the proper height to the neck of No. 1. When the gun is mounted, the shoes themselves and not the tubular portion of the legs and trail rest on the ground and the bottom of the socket is at least 1 inch from the ground.

236. To dismount the gun from low position.—The gun is dismounted at the position of mounting in the manner prescribed for elementary gun drill.

237. To mount the gun on sloping ground.—*a.* Throughout this drill the squad is taught to mount the gun on varying slopes engaging targets uphill, downhill, and to the right and left along the slope of the hill. The gun is not mounted until reasonable progress has been made in mounting the tripod. All men are trained to mount the tripod on any kind of ground.

b. The gun position having been designated on sloping ground and the target indicated, the command is: ***MOUNT GUN.*** At this command, the gun is mounted as described in elementary gun drill or as in paragraph 235, with the following exception: The trail is pointed downhill on a steep slope, regardless of the direction the gun is to be laid. Nos. 1 and 2 take positions adapted to the ground. No. 3 performs his usual duties.

238. To lay the gun.—*a.* The gun having been mounted, loaded, or loading having been simulated, the instructor announces the range and designates the target by giving commands similar to the following: 1. ***Range eight hundred,*** 2. ***Paster No. 5.*** In giving the command, the instructor pauses after each element a sufficient length of time to permit No. 1 to repeat it. No. 1 repeats the first element of the command, raises the sight leaf and sets the lower edges of the sight adjustment plate at the range announced. While he is setting the sight, No. 1 repeats the second element of the command. After completing the sight setting, No. 1 manipulates the gun, first by traversing and then by elevating or depressing until the direction and elevation are approximately correct. He then quickly

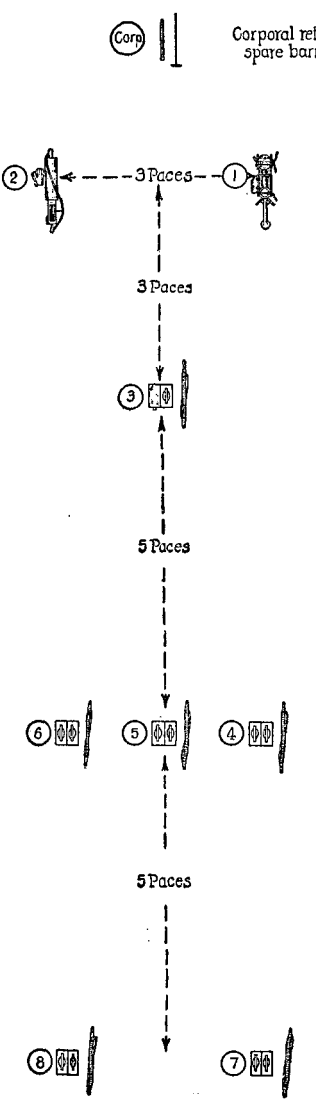


FIGURE 39.—Layout of equipment, advanced gun drill

and accurately aligns the sights on the designated point, takes the proper position at the gun and calls ***UP.*** The instructor checks the sight setting and aim and points out the errors, if any.

b. If deflection is given in the command, it is announced as the second element, as: 1. ***Range nine hundred,*** 2. ***Sight right, 4,*** 3. ***Paster No. 6.*** No. 1 sets the deflection on the wind gauge after he has completed the sight setting. He then lays the gun as described above. Whenever a fairly large change of direction is necessary, No. 2 loosens the traversing clamp at the third command. No. 1 then swings approximately on the target, No. 2 tightens the traversing clamp and No. 1 lays accurately on the target by tapping.

239. To go into action.—*a.* The steam-condensing device is additional equipment required for this drill. It is secured by No. 2 and attached to the gun before the movement begins.

b. The instructor gives commands similar to the following: 1. ***Range nine hundred,*** 2. ***Paster No. 5,*** 3. ***ACTION.*** The instructor pauses between each element of the command a sufficient length of time to permit No. 1 to repeat it. At the command ***ACTION,*** No. 1 mounts the gun, sets the sights at the range indicated in the command, loads, and accurately lays on the indicated target. He then takes the proper position at the gun and calls ***UP.***

c. The instructor watches the performance closely and requires that all points learned in previous drills be carefully observed. Each number performs his duties as prescribed for previous drills. When No. 3 has placed the water chest in position, he inserts the end of the steam-condensing device in the chest.

240. To take the gun out of action.—*a. No cover available.*—When the gun is in action and cover is too far away to permit the mounted gun being dragged or carried the whole distance, the command is: 1. ***No cover available,*** 2. ***OUT OF ACTION.*** The gun is unloaded and dismounted at the position. If the equipment is to be carried a considerable distance, the command ***BY HAND*** is given after the command ***OUT OF ACTION.***

b. Cover close at hand.—When the gun is in action and cover is sufficiently close at hand to permit the mounted gun being dragged to cover before being dismounted, the commands are: 1. ***Cover close behind (to the right, left),*** 2. ***OUT OF ACTION.***

The gun is unloaded and the belt packed in the ammunition chest. Nos. 1 and 2 assisted by No. 3, if necessary, drag the mounted gun and the ammunition and water chests to the designated cover, where the dismounting is completed.

c. Two (three) man load.—When the gun is in action and cover is too far away to permit dragging the mounted gun to cover, but close enough to avoid the necessity of dismounting the gun in the open, the location of cover having been pointed out, the commands are: 1. ***Two-man load (three-man load),*** 2. ***OUT OF ACTION.***

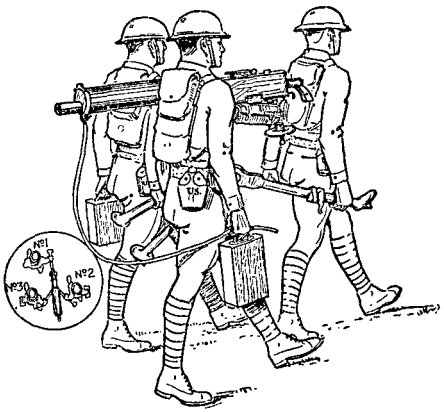


FIGURE 40.—Three-man load

(1) *Two-man load.*—The gun is unloaded and the belt packed in the ammunition chest. No. 1 keeping well down moves to the right of the gun and grasps the ammunition chest (passed to him by No. 2) and right leg of the tripod with his right hand and the trail with his left. No. 2 passes the ammunition chest to No. 1, grasps the left leg with his left hand, and the water chest and end of the steam tube with his right hand. When both numbers have secured their loads, No. 1 calls ***UP.*** Both numbers spring up and rapidly carry the equipment to the cover designated, where the gun is dismounted. All other numbers at the gun position rush back to cover when the gun is carried back.

(2) *Three-man load.*—If the distance to cover is great, the three-man load is preferable. The gun is unloaded, and the belt packed in the ammunition chest. No. 3 crawls forward

to a position on the right of the gun, grasps the ammunition chest with his left hand and the right leg with his right hand. No. 2 operates as described for the two-man load. No. 1 grasps the trail with his right hand. When all numbers have secured their loads, No. 1 calls ***UP*** and the squad moves to cover as described for the two-man load.

d. The object of this drill is to train the squad in the use of cover when taking the guns out of action, and, when cover is not close at hand, speed in taking the equipment to cover, where the gun may be dismounted. Variations from the above prescribed methods are authorized when such variations lead to a better accomplishment of ends sought.

241. To commence firing.—*a.* (1) The gun being loaded (or loading simulated) and laid on the designated target, the commands are: ***COMMENCE FIRING.*** No. 2 taps No. 1 on the back and calls: ***FIRE.*** No. 1 presses the trigger to the rear by an even pressure with the finger in such manner as not to disturb the laying of the gun or influence its vibrations during firing. The eyes are directed at the target. Any tendency to look down at the trigger or elevating handwheel or through the sights while firing must be corrected.

(2) When the command ***COMMENCE FIRING*** is given as a part of and immediately following other elements of a fire order, No. 1 completes the laying of the gun or carries out any other necessary movements before opening fire.

b. To fire at any desired rate, the commands are: 1. ***Slow (medium, rapid),*** 2. ***COMMENCE FIRING.*** The interval between bursts is so regulated that 60, 125, or 250 rounds per minute, respectively, are fired, depending on the rate ordered.

c. To increase (decrease) the rate of fire in progress, the commands are: ***FASTER (SLOWER).*** No. 1 changes the rate of fire to the next higher (lower) rate.

242. To cease firing.—The command is: ***CEASE FIRING.*** No. 2 taps No. 1 on the back and calls: ***CEASE FIRING.*** No. 1 releases the trigger. Firing stops. The sight is set at 700, the deflection at zero, and the sight leaf laid.

243. To zero the dial.—The gun being laid on the designated point, the command is: ***ZERO DIAL.*** The corporal unclamps the traversing dial, turns it until the zero of the dial is opposite the index, and then clamps the dial.

244. To measure an angle.—*a.* (1) *Horizontal angles.*—The gun being laid on the designated point, with the traversing dial at zero, the commands are: 1. ***Measure the angle right (left),*** 2. ***TO THAT STEEPLE*** (or point desired). The corporal loosens the traversing clamp. No. 1 turns the gun until it is aimed at the designated point. The corporal tightens the clamp and announces the angle, as ***Dial right (left) 2,440.*** If the angle is found to be other than an even division on the dial the corporal moves the gun back to the nearest division, or multiple of 20, and directs the gunner to complete the laying by means of the rear sight. The gunner turns the windage screw to the left (right) until the aim is in the designated point. The corporal then announces the dial and sight reading.

Example 1.—Assume the angle to be measured is right. When the gun is laid on the designated point the index is between 1,440 and 1,460. The corporal moves the gun back until the index is opposite 1,440 and the gunner moves the sight left until the line of aim is on the designated point (left 10). The angle is announced as ***Dial right 1,440, sight left 10.*** (Angle measured is R 1,450).

Example 2.—Assume the angle to be measured is left. When the gun is laid on the designated point the index is between 5,520 and 5,540. The corporal moves the gun back to 5,540 and the gunner moves the sight right until the line of aim is on the designated point (right 10). The angle is then announced as ***Dial left 5,540, sight right 10.*** The amount of the angle is then determined by subtracting the amount of the dial reading from 6,400, because the dial is graduated clockwise, and adding the sight reading to that result (angle measured is L 870).

(2) Angles of less than 20 mils are measured on the rear sight.

b. Vertical angles.—The gun being laid on any point, the commands are: 1. ***Measure the angle up (down),*** 2. ***TO THAT CROSSROADS*** (or point desired). No. 1 turns the elevating handwheel until the gun is aimed at the designated point, the corporal notes the angle of elevation or depression by means of the dial or by counting clicks and announces it as: ***10 mils up (down).***

245. **To lay off an angle.**—*a. Horizontal angles.*—The gun being laid on the designated point and the dial having been set at zero, the command is: ***DIAL RIGHT (LEFT) 620 (640, 800).*** When the angle is right, the dial is set at zero, if not already there. The corporal loosens the traversing clamp and turns the gun to the right until the index is opposite 620 on the traversing dial. He then tightens the traversing clamp. If the angle is left, the corporal sets 620 at the index, without moving the gun, and clamps the dial. The gun is then swung to the left in a similar manner until the index is opposite the zero of the traversing dial and the traversing clamp tightened. If the angle announced is one which can not be laid off on an even division on the dial, as right 690, the corporal proceeds as outlined above except that he turns the gun until the index is opposite the next lower division on the dial, or multiple of 20, 680, and then directs the gunner to take left 10 on the rear sight. If the angle should be left, as left 690, the corporal moves the dial left until the index is opposite the next lower division on the dial (680) and directs the gunner to take right 10 on the rear sight. The gun is then turned left until the dial is at zero.

b. Vertical angles.—The gun being laid on the designated point, the command is: ***UP (DOWN) 5 (10, 17).*** No. 1 turns the elevating handwheel until the gun has been elevated or depressed the required number of mils. The angle may be laid off by counting clicks or by noting the readings of the handwheel dial.

246. **To put out base and aiming stakes.**—*a.* The gun being pointed in the desired direction, the command is: ***BASE (AIMING) STAKE OUT.*** At this command, No. 3, with base or aiming stake and shovel, moves to the front of the gun about 20 yards. Under the direction of the platoon sergeant he places the stake in line from the right and drives it in the ground. No. 3 then moves back to his original position in rear of the gun.

Base and aiming stakes are placed in such manner that they will not be shot down during the delivery of fire. This is accomplished by setting the sight at 2,000 and driving the stakes below the probable lowest elevation for firing.

b. The base stake having been put out, the gun may be laid on this point at any time by the command ***LAY ON BASE STAKE.*** With the sight still set at 2,000, No. 1 lays the gun

on the designated stake. Aiming stakes are differentiated by color, shape, or some distinctive mark such as a letter or number. To lay on any particular aiming stake, announce the stake, as: ***On red or No. 1.***

247. To put on quadrant elevation.—The gun being laid for direction, the command is: ***Q. E. (quadrant elevation) 20 (45, 80).*** The clinometer is set at 20 mils. No. 1 operates the elevating handwheel until the elevating screw threads are exposed about 1 inch. The corporal loosens the elevating clamping handle and with the clinometer on top of the right side of the gun, with the arc of the clinometer to the rear for a plus quadrant elevation or to the front for a minus one, elevates or depresses the gun until the bubble is approximately centered. He then tightens the elevating handle and accurately centers the bubble by operating the elevating handwheel. No. 1 raises or lowers the rear-sight slide and fixes the line of sighting on any selected auxiliary aiming point and notes the sight setting. If an aiming stake is used which was previously set out, it will usually be found that the allowance for drift on the sight leaf has caused an apparent movement of the line of sighting to the right. This should be corrected by means of the wind gage and not by moving the gun. In laying on a new aiming point, sights should still be set at 2,000 with the wind gage at zero.

248. To measure the quadrant elevation.—The gun being laid on the target with the correct sight setting, the command is: ***Measure Q. E.*** At this command, the corporal sets the clinometer on the gun with the arc to the rear if the muzzle is elevated, and with the arc to the front if the muzzle is depressed. Without disturbing the gun he then adjusts the plunger index and bubble holder index until the bubble is centered. The corporal takes the reading and announces the quadrant elevation, giving the number of his gun, as "No. 2, Q. E. 16 (minus 15)."

249. Training in immediate action.—*a.* To maintain proficiency in immediate action, instruction in the reduction of prepared stoppages is introduced from time to time during advanced gun drills.

b. The gun having been loaded with the required stoppages without the knowledge of No. 1, the instructor announces "Gun fails to fire." No. 1 applies the correct immediate action, reloads, relays, and resumes simulated firing.

250. Training in attention to points before, during, and after firing.—*a.* To teach the necessity for and form the habit of attention to points which must be cared for before, during, and after firing, the instructor occasionally throughout advanced gun drill commands: ***ATTENTION TO POINTS BEFORE FIRING (DURING SUSPENSION OF FIRING, AFTER FIRING).*** Members of the squad carry out points to be observed.

b. The proper care of the gun and equipment and replenishment of water, oil, and ammunition are duties which are performed automatically and without waiting for specific orders.

251. Training in the supply of ammunition, water, oil, and spare parts.—Adequate and uninterrupted supply of ammunition, water, oil, and spare parts being essential to the successful employment of the machine gun in combat, training in supply must not be neglected. The squad is first instructed in the operation of the belt-filling machine, establishment and operation of a munitions distributing point, and the functioning of the chain of supply. This instruction having been given, provision for and maintenance of supply are combined with other drills or exercises. Training in supply includes:

a. Establishment and operation of a munitions distributing point.—(1) Receipt and storage of ammunition, water, oil, and spare parts.

(2) Sorting, cleaning, and filling empty ammunition belts by hand and with the belt-filling machine. Loading of belts with ball or designated proportions of ball, tracer, and armor-piercing ammunition.

(3) Packing loaded belts into empty ammunition chests.

(4) Segregation and storage of filled ammunition and water chests for issuance to carriers as required.

b. Operation of the chain of supply.—The gun being mounted and a munitions distributing point having been established, the instructor directs the squad to practice the operation of the chain of supply. The following methods are given as a guide:

(1) When the exercise is started, No. 4 brings ammunition to the position of No. 3, secures empty ammunition chests and belts, and returns to the munitions distributing point for a new supply. Each succeeding number delivers his load as required to the position of No. 3 in a similar manner and returns to the munitions distributing point for a new supply. As each number secures a new load, he again approaches the position of

No. 3, following the man who has preceded him from the munitions distributing point. When the required supply is at the position of No. 3, all carriers take available cover.

(2) If the distance to be covered is very short, or if it is difficult for men to pass each other en route, as along a ditch leading to the gun position, chests may be passed from hand to hand.

(3) If the supply is to be maintained across an open space for a short distance, the supply may sometimes be kept up by dragging chests which have been attached to the emergency rope. One end of the rope being at the gun position, No. 3 makes a loop in the center of the rope and passes it through the handle of an ammunition chest, securing it with a stick. No. 2 then pulls the full chest to the gun, attaches an empty, and No. 3 pulls it back.

SECTION III

TESTS IN ELEMENTARY AND ADVANCED GUN DRILL AND IMMEDIATE ACTION

252. General rules.—*a.* When tests are given the squad they are carried out in accordance with these instructions.

b. Before a man is tested, he is informed of all details of the test. This may be done by a demonstration of the test.

c. A reasonable length of time is allowed for the examination of the equipment.

d. Immediately after a test, a man is informed that he passed or failed. If he has failed, the instructor points out the causes of his failure.

e. Failure to perform the task properly, or failure to complete it within the specified time, constitutes a failure in the test.

f. Time is taken from the completion of that portion of the command which starts the movement, to the completion of the last movement of the test.

g. No additional credit is given for completing the test under the prescribed time.

h. Where No. 1 fails through the fault of No. 2, he is given another test.

i. No movement is allowed after the signal is given that the test has been completed.

100821°—32——8

j. If practicable, these tests are conducted by an officer, otherwise by a noncommissioned officer specially fitted for this work who will function under the close supervision of an officer.

k. The individual conducting the tests notes all points listed under "performance," and disqualifies all men who fail to perform correctly any of these points.

253. Test in mounting the gun.—*a. Procedure.*—As prescribed in paragraph 228. The position where the gun is to be mounted is 3 paces from the point where the tripod is laid out for elementary gun drill.

b. Time allowed.—Twenty-five seconds.

254. Test in loading the gun.—*a. Procedure.*—As prescribed in paragraph 230. The belt is loaded with a few selected dummy cartridges and properly packed in the chest. The chest is closed and fastened prior to the test.

b. Time allowed.—Five seconds.

c. If through no fault of No. 1 the gun is not loaded, No. 1 is credited with passing the test, provided he has correctly performed the required procedure of loading.

255. Test in unloading the gun.—*a. Procedure.*—As prescribed in paragraph 231.

b. Time allowed.—Five seconds.

c. The belt is in the ammunition chest with lid closed and fastened.

256. Test in dismounting the gun.—*a. Procedure.*—As prescribed in paragraph 229. The tripod and gun are carried back to the original position.

b. Time allowed.—Twelve seconds.

257. Test in laying the gun.—*a. Procedure.*—As prescribed in paragraph 238. The manipulation target is set up 1,000 inches from the gun position. The gun is mounted for the normal sitting position. Before the test is given, the gun will be laid on the target so as to be approximately 10 mils off in elevation and 10 mils off in direction from the aiming point which is to be designated. The man being tested will not be informed in advance of the aiming point which will be designated. Any range between 500 and 1,200 may be ordered. No deflection will be announced.

b. Time allowed.—Ten seconds. Time is taken from the announcement of the range.

c. The gun must be laid within one-half mil vertically and horizontally of the center of the bottom of the aiming paster.

258. Test in going into action.—*a. Procedure.*—As prescribed in paragraph 239. The range and target are announced before the command ***ACTION.*** The position where the gun is to go into action is 3 paces from where the gun is laid out for elementary gun drill.

b. Time allowed.—Forty seconds.

259. Test in immediate action.—*a. Preparation.*—The test is prepared as follows: Four guns are set on a line with 3-pace intervals between guns. On each gun a different stoppage is prepared, the receiver covered with a cloth, and the firing pin released. At least two of the guns will be prepared with stoppages which will require the execution of the second stage of immediate action. Identical targets are placed in front of each gun. The aiming mark for each gun is such that one designation applies to all of them; for example, "The aiming mark for each gun is to be the black paster in the center of the target in front of each gun." After the stoppage has been prepared the gun is so laid that a slight manipulation of the traversing and elevating gears is necessary in order to lay accurately on the aiming mark. The sight setting on all the guns is the same.

b. Procedure.—The man to be tested is called up and given the aiming mark for each gun and the sight setting to be used. He then takes the proper position at the gun. As the instructor removes the cloth from the receiver he announces, "Gun fails to fire," and the man undergoing the test immediately applies the correct action. As soon as he has performed the correct action at this gun he presses the trigger, and the instructor then orders: ***NEXT GUN.*** The man moves as quickly as possible to the gun next in order. Here he takes the correct position without command and, as soon as the cloth is removed from the receiver, applies the correct immediate action. The procedure at the remaining guns is the same as at the second gun. As he presses the trigger of the last gun, the instructor at the gun calls: ***TIME,*** indicating that the man has completed the test.

c. Additional rules for test in immediate action.—(1) The guns are placed out of sight and not in effective hearing distance of the men waiting to be tested.

(2) An officer or noncommissioned officer is at each gun to conduct the test at that gun as well as to grade the man tested.

(3) If, after apparently correcting a stoppage and pressing the trigger, the instructor should say, "the gun still fails to fire," the man taking the test then applies the immediate action necessary in that case.

(4) The officer or noncommissioned officer conducting the test at each gun, or a man detailed, performs the duties of No. 2 for the man undergoing the test.

d. Time allowed.—Two minutes. Time is taken from the instant when gun fails to fire is called at the first gun until the instructor calls: ***TIME***, at the last gun.

e. Performance.—(1) The correct immediate action for each stoppage is applied.

(2) The gun is loaded.

(3) The gun is laid.

(4) The trigger is pressed.

SECTION IV

MACHINE-GUN BATTERY DRILL

260. The object of battery drill.—The object of battery drill is to train the personnel in the application of indirect-laying data so that, either by command or by written orders, the fire of the battery may be delivered rapidly, accurately, and correctly.

261. Organization of the battery.—A battery may consist of any number of guns, not less than two. The usual unit which executes battery firing is the platoon. The normal battery-drill unit is the platoon. The platoon leader commands the battery, section leaders their sections, and the squad leaders their squads. The platoon sergeant assists the battery commander. Members of platoon headquarters are assigned to squads for drill.

262. General.—*a. Training prerequisites.*—Elementary gun drill and advanced gun drill are mastered before battery drill is taken up.

b. Equipment required.—(1) Each squad is provided with a gun, tripod, gunner's pouch, spare barrel, clinometer, cleaning rod, water chest, steam-condensing device, nine ammunition chests (eight ammunition chests and one spare-parts chest in

odd-numbered squads), one base stake and one or more aiming stakes, a shovel, three sandbags, and a T base, when practicable. When dummy cartridges are used, at least six dummies are placed in each belt.

(2) The responsibility and procedure respecting equipment is the same as that prescribed with the following modifications:

(*a*) No. 4 has the base and aiming stakes in addition to his other prescribed load.

(*b*) No. 5 has a shovel, two sandbags, one ammunition chest, and a carrying sling.

(*c*) No. 6 has a T base, one sandbag, one ammunition chest, and a carrying sling. When the T base is not used, No. 6 has an ammunition chest in its stead.

c. Commands.—(1) When all guns are to execute a movement, the command is prefaced by 1. ***All guns.*** When only a part of the battery is to execute the command, the command is preceded by 1. (***No. — gun only***) or 1. (***Nos. — and — guns only***).

(2) The execution of both the angle of shift and the angle of convergence (or distribution) is combined into one command given directly by the battery commander to each gun. Where the use of the dial and rear sight is involved in laying off an angle the amount and direction of each are given as ***Dial right 600, sight left 7.*** Section leaders will verify the proper execution of each command.

(3) The numbers 1 will repeat all commands.

(4) In giving data, numbers are announced as follows: "Forty," "twenty-four," "ten-fifty," "four hundred," "three thousand."

d. Safety precautions.—(1) Firing ceases and guns are unloaded whenever any member of the personnel is ordered in front of the guns. This applies when firing is simulated as well as when firing is with ball or other ammunition.

(2) In firing at any target, gunners never search below the elevation at which the guns were originally laid for that target unless specifically ordered to do so by the battery commander.

e. Explanations.—(1) In the explanations of movements, No. 1 gun (the right gun) is the base gun. The movements may be executed with any gun as base gun by substituting the proper words in the command. To designate the base gun, the command is: ***No. 1 (2, 3, 4), BASE GUN.***

(2) The explanations given below are for a battery of four guns. They are, however, applicable to a battery of any number of guns.

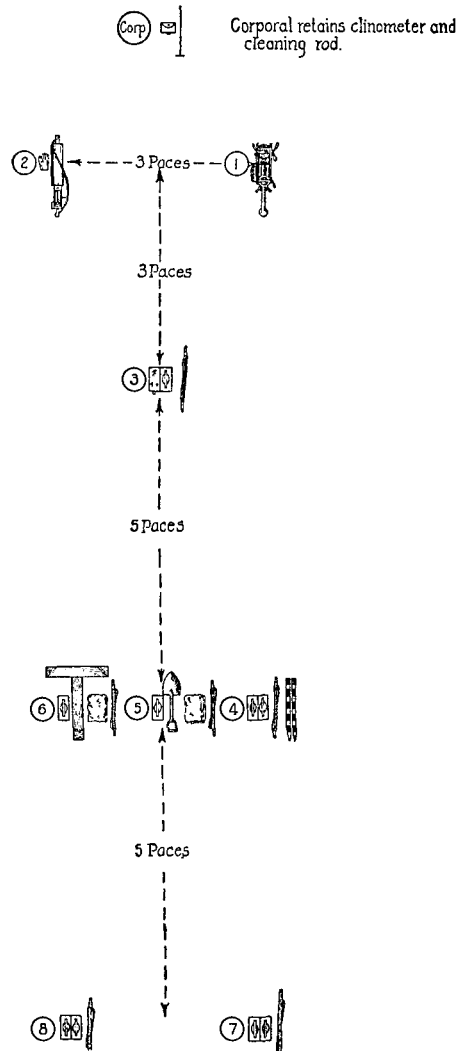
263. Formations for battery drill.—*a.* When the platoon is formed for battery drill, it forms in line with 5-pace intervals between squads, each squad in column unless other intervals are ordered. To cause the platoon to form for battery drill, the command is: ***FORM FOR BATTERY DRILL*** (with 10-pace interval).

b. If the platoon has already been formed in line, each squad takes the indicated interval from the squad on its right. The corporal paces off the required interval, designates the position for No. 1 of his squad, and commands: ***FALL IN.***

c. Squads fall in, count off, secure equipment, examine equipment, and change numbers and duties in the squad as explained for elementary gun drill. Equipment is laid out for battery drill and posts are taken as shown in Figure 41. Nos. 9 and 10, when present, take post immediately in rear of 7 and 8, respectively.

264. To prepare the battery position.—*a.* The battery commander designates the location of the base gun, direction in which the battery position is to extend, and general direction of base lines. He announces the interval between guns and issues the necessary instructions relative to digging of emplacements and concealment or other preparation of the position.

b. When T bases are used, the battery commander takes post on the flank of the battery position toward the base gun, indicates the direction in which the battery position is to extend and the general direction of base lines, announces the interval between guns, and commands: ***ON THIS LINE MOUNT T BASES.*** At this command the corporal, Nos. 5 and 6 of each squad run forward with T base, shovel, and sandbag. No. 6 places himself at the proper interval, as directed by the corporal, on the general line indicated for the direction in which the battery position is to extend. He then places the T base on the ground with the long arm of the T base aligned in the general direction indicated for base lines. Nos. 5 and 6 dig in the T base so that it is level and stable, fill the sandbags three-quarters full and stand them on end, one bag opposite each end of the T base and 1 foot therefrom. Nos. 5 and 6 then run back to their original positions, No. 5 taking the shovel with him.



No. 4 of odd numbered squads carries one box of ammunition and the spare parts box instead of two boxes of ammunition.

FIGURE 41.—Layout of equipment, battery drill

265. To mount guns.—*a.* The commands are: 1. ***All guns,*** 2. ***MOUNT GUNS,*** or 1. ***(Nos. — and —) guns,*** 2. ***MOUNT GUNS.*** At this command the gun or designated guns are mounted on **T** bases; Nos. 1 and 2 place the filled sandbags over the shoes of the tripod. No. 3 brings up one chest of ammunition and the water chest. No. 3 then returns to his post and gets two more chests of ammunition, which he carries to the gun position. He then returns to his position. The ammunition and stakes carried by the remainder of the squad are brought up to the post of No. 3.

b. When only the flank or other designated guns of a battery are mounted, to mount the remaining guns of the battery, the commands are: 1. ***All guns,*** 2. ***MOUNT GUNS.***

266. To lay guns on initial aiming point.—The battery commander designates the initial aiming point by any convenient method of target designation. The initial aiming point having been designated, to lay the guns on the initial aiming point the commands are: 1. ***All guns (No. — and — guns),*** 2. ***ON I. A. P.*** At this command each corporal loosens the traversing clamp and the gunner sets the sight at 700 and the wind gage at zero. Each No. 1 lays his gun on the initial aiming point. The corporals tighten the traversing clamps and zero the dials.

267. To parallel all guns on their base lines by means of an aiming circle or compass (see fig. 42).—*a. Obtaining the data.*—(1) The aiming circle or compass is set up in any position with reference to the battery, but not less than 150 yards from it.

(2) All guns are ordered to lay on the head of aiming circle or compass as an initial aiming point. (See par. 266.)

(3) The magnetic azimuth, aiming circle to No. 1 gun, is then read and converted to a back azimuth (5,305—3,200= 2,105).

(4) The difference between the magnetic azimuth of the base line, and the magnetic azimuth No. 1 gun—aiming circle is the angle through which No. 1 gun must turn from the aiming circle in order to lay on its base line (2,900—2,105= 795).

(5) To lay the other guns of the battery, this procedure is repeated for each gun. This automatically parallels all guns of the battery.

b. Applying the data.—Each gun in turn is laid on its base line by command similar to the following:

No. 1. Dial right 780, sight left 15.

No. 2. Dial right 760, sight left 15.

No. 3. ——— — ———.

No. 4. ——— — ———.

Base stakes are then set out as described in paragraph **246.**

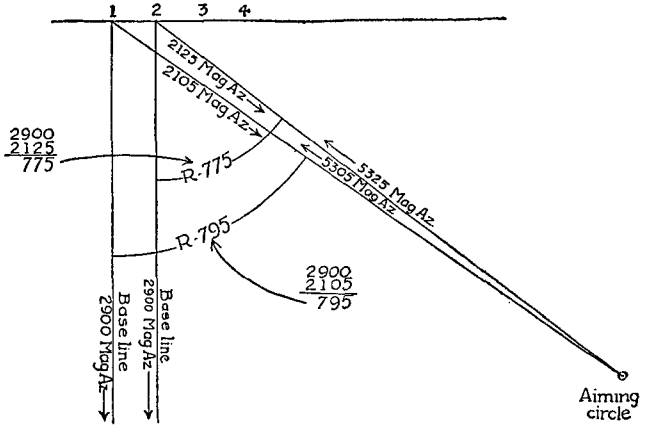


FIGURE 42.—Using the aiming circle or a compass as the initial aiming point

268. To measure the battery angle of parallax.—*a.* The flank guns only of a battery having been mounted and the initial aiming point designated, the command is: ***MEASURE THE PARALLAX.*** At this command each gun is laid on the front sight of the other and the dials and wind gages are set at zero. Each gun is then turned and laid on the initial aiming point. Each corporal announces the dial reading, giving the number of his gun as: "No. 1 dial 1,560 or No. 4 dial 4,820."

b. If, when the gun is laid accurately on the initial aiming point, the dial index is not exactly opposite a division on the dial, the corporal moves the gun back to the nearest division on the dial and directs the gunner to complete the laying by means of the rear sight He then announces the dial and

sight reading, giving the number of his gun as: "No. 1 dial 1,580, sight left 5 or No. 4 dial 4,800, sight right 15."

c. The battery commander determines the battery angle of parallax. The angles through which No. 1 and No. 4 guns have been turned are determined as follows: When the dial reading announced for any gun is greater than 3,200, the dial reading is subtracted from 6,400—because the dial is graduated clockwise—and the sight reading if used is added to this result. When the dial reading announced for any gun is less than 3,200, the sight reading is added directly to the dial reading. The sum of the angles for No. 1 and No. 4 guns is then subtracted from 3,200, and the result is the battery angle of parallax.

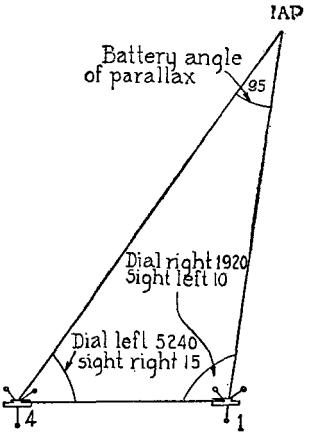


FIGURE 43.—Measuring the battery angle of parallax

d. Example: Suppose the dial on No. 4 gun reads between 5,220 and 5,240. The corporal moves the gun back to 5,240 and then directs the gunner to lay on the initial aiming point by means of the rear sight. The gunner moves the rear sight until the line of sighting is on the initial aiming point. Suppose the rear sight now reads right 15. The corporal then announces: "No. 4 dial 5,240, sight right 15." Suppose the dial on No. 1 gun reads between 1,920 and 1,940. The corporal moves the gun back to 1,920 and directs the gunner to lay on the initial aiming point by means of the rear sight. Suppose

the rear sight now reads left 10. The corporal then announces: "No. 1 dial 1,920, sight left 10." The battery angle of parallax is then figured as follows:

No. 1 gun		1,930
No. 4 gun	6,400—5,240=1,160	
	1,160+ 15=1,175	
		1,175
		3,105

3,200 minus 3,105 equals 95 (battery angle of parallax). (See fig. 43.)

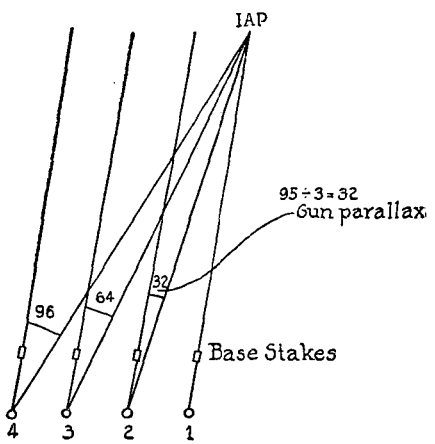


FIGURE 44.—Laying guns on parallel lines

269. To lay the guns on parallel lines.—The guns being laid on the I. A. P. and the gun parallax having been determined to be 32 mils, to lay the guns on parallel lines the command is: ***No. 2 dial left 20, sight right 12. No. 3 dial left 60, sight right 4. No. 4 dial left 80, sight right 16.*** (Fig. 44.) Each corporal lays off the announced angle on the dial, and each gunner lays off the announced angle on the sight. The lines of sighting of all guns of the battery are now parallel.

270. To establish base lines.—*a.* The guns of the battery being laid on parallel lines and being shifted through the base angle, to establish base lines, the command is: ***BASE STAKES OUT.*** At this command, base stakes are set out. (See fig. 45.)

b. The base lines having been established, the guns may be laid on their base lines by the command: ***All guns LAY ON BASE STAKE.*** At this command, each gun is laid on its base stake with the sight set at 2,000 and the dial and windage at zero.

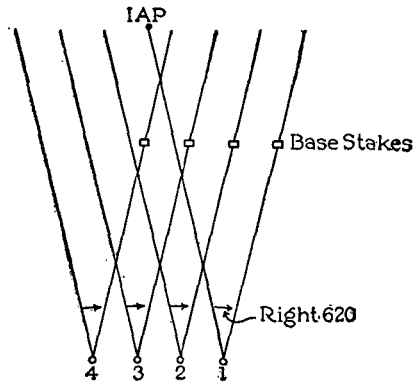


FIGURE 45.—Establishing base lines

271. To shift the battery through an angle.—The guns being laid on parallel lines and the base angle having been determined, to shift the battery through the desired angle the command is: ***ALL GUNS DIAL RIGHT (LEFT) 620.*** If the angle should be other than an even division on the dial, as right 627, the command is: ***ALL GUNS DIAL RIGHT 620, SIGHT LEFT 7.*** The corporal makes the necessary changes on the dial; the gunner, on the rear sight. The corporal, however, is responsible that the angle ordered is accurately laid off. In laying off horizontal angles, except as in paragraph 267, the rear sight is always moved in the direction opposite to that in which the gun is to be moved. In this connection it must be remembered that moving the rear sight left actually moves the line of sighting right and vice versa. In either case the moving of the rear sight does not move the gun, and its use is purely as an angle-measuring instrument for angles less than 20 mils.

272. To lay the guns on their part of the target.—*a.* When the target is wider than the battery frontage the paralleled guns are shifted through their angle of shift and turned through their

distribution differences by the one command: ***NO. 1 DIAL (R) 620. NO. 2 DIAL (R) 600.*** (Fig. 46.) If the angle for any gun is found to be other than an even division on the dial, as right 610, the gun is laid on its proper part of the target by the command: ***NO. — DIAL (R) 600, SIGHT (L) 10.***

Example: Let us assume that it is desired to lay No. 2 gun on its proper part of the target and that the distribution difference is 13 instead of 20, as shown in Figure 46.

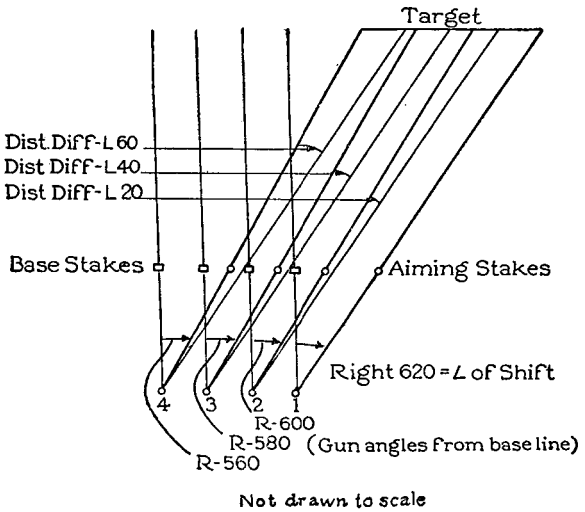


FIGURE 46.—Laying guns on a wide target

The angle of shift is right 620. The distribution difference is left 13. No. 2 gun would then actually be turned from its base line right (620 minus 13) 607 by the command: ***NO. 2 DIAL (R) 600, SIGHT (L) 7.***

b. When the target is a point target or narrower than the battery frontage, the parallel guns are swung through their angle of shift and turned through their convergence differences by the command: ***NO. 1 DIAL (R) 600, NO. 2 DIAL (R) 620, ETC.*** (Fig. 47.) If the angle for any gun is found to be other than an even division on the dial as right 610 the gun is laid on target by the command: ***NO. 2 DIAL (R) 600, SIGHT (L) 10.***

Example: Let us assume that it is desired to lay No. 2 gun on its proper part of the target and that the convergence difference is 13 instead of 20, as shown in Figure 47.

The angle of shift is right 600. The convergence difference is right 13. The gun would then actually be turned from its base line right (600 plus 13) 613 by the command: ***NO. 2 DIAL (R) 600, SIGHT (L) 13.***

c. The guns having been laid on their part of the target, aiming stakes may be set out by the command: ***(RED), (GREEN) STAKES OUT.***

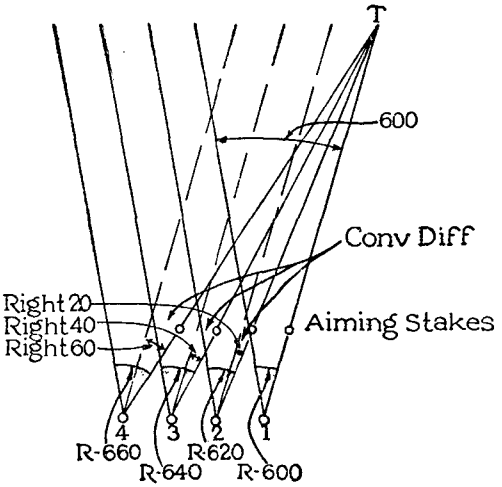


FIGURE 47.—Laying guns on a narrow or point target

d. Aiming stakes having been set out, the guns may be laid on their parts of the target by the command: ***All guns ON RED (TASK A) STAKES.*** At this command each gun is laid on its designated aiming stake, with the sight still set at 2,000.

273. To lay the guns for elevation.—*a.* To lay all guns of the battery with the same elevation, the command is: ***ALL GUNS Q. E. 60 (72).*** At this command, all guns are laid with the designated quadrant elevation.

b. To lay the guns of the battery with elevations successively greater or less than that of the base gun, the command is: ***NO. 1 Q. E. 60, NO. 2 Q. E. 65 (55), NO. 3 Q. E. 70 (50), NO. 4 Q. E. 75 (45).***

274. Tasks.—*a.* In battery firing, the proper direction lines for engaging various targets are marked by distinctive aiming stakes before firing is opened.

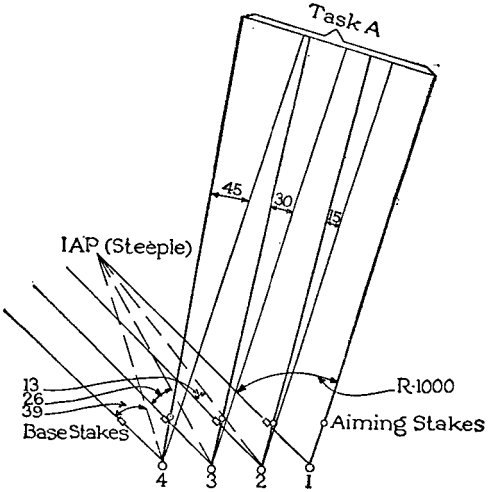


FIGURE 48.—Establishing base and direction lines

b. When the squads have become proficient in the details of battery drill, they are trained in the accurate, rapid establishment of base and direction lines, shifting from one task to another, and the simulated firing of a series of tasks. The drill is ordinarily conducted by command.

Example 1: (See fig. 48.)

IAP To your left front. Steeple.
All guns on IAP.
No. 1 gun base gun.
No. 2 sight (R) 13.
No. 3 dial (L) 20, sight (R) 6.
No. 4 dial (L) 20, sight (R) 19.
Base stakes out.

Example 2: (See fig. 48.)

All guns on base lines.
No. 1 dial (R) 1,000.
No. 2 dial (R) 980, sight (L) 5.
No. 3 dial (R) 960, sight (L) 10.
No. 4 dial (R) 940, sight (L) 15.
Red stakes out.
No. 1, Q. E. 70.
No. 2, Q. E. 74.
No. 3, Q. E. 78.
No. 4, Q. E. 82.
Traverse 32.
Search up 10.
Medium.
Commence firing.

275. Firing by chart.—*a.* Instead of using commands, the fire of a battery may be directed and controlled by the use of charts. Each gun has a chart upon which are entered the time and all data necessary to fire upon any target. These are obtained from the battery chart. Firing may be executed by a time schedule or by command. In the latter case, at the command ***TASK A (B), ETC.,*** the guns are laid for that task according to data on the charts and fire is opened at the command or signal of the battery commander.

b. When firing on time schedule, at least one minute must be allowed for changing direction and elevation.

CHAPTER 9

EXTENDED ORDER—THE MACHINE-GUN COMPANY

		Paragraphs
SECTION I.	General	276–279
II.	The machine-gun squad	280–284
III.	The machine-gun section	285–290
IV.	The machine-gun platoon	291–298
V.	Extended-order exercises	299

SECTION I

GENERAL

276. Factors governing extended order.—In combat, machine-gun units take up extended-order formations in order to make effective use of their weapons and to minimize casualties. The extension is governed by the mission to be performed, the nature of the ground, and the necessity for proper control.

277. Rules for deployment.—*a.* Deployments may be executed from any formation.

b. All units are so instructed that they are able to deploy in any direction, in silence and in order. The direction may be indicated by signal; by designating prominent terrain features (e. g., windmill, building, lone tree); by prescribing a magnetic azimuth; by indicating to the leader of the base unit the route to be followed; or by any combination of the above. If the deployment is to be made in a direction varying greatly from that of the advance, the unit changes direction before deploying. If no direction be designated, the unit deploys straight to the front. When an advance is to take place on assigned direction lines for long-continued periods, both a distant direction point and a magnetic azimuth should be designated, if practicable.

c. The leading squad is the base of deployment; it becomes the base of movement after deployment unless another squad is announced as the base by the platoon leader. All extensions are made to the left unless otherwise announced.

d. All deployments are made at a run; that is, at top speed, in contradistinction to double time. During training in the

mechanics of extended order, this rule may be departed from, and movements may be made in quick time for instructional purposes.

278. Movement.—*a.* A deployed machine-gun unit advances, halts, changes direction, passes from quick to double time and the reverse, as prescribed in chapter 2. Changes in the direction of march are usually effected by assigning a new march direction to base squads. The remainder of the unit conforms to the change in direction.

b. Movement may be interrupted by the commands or signals: ***HALT, LIE DOWN, OFF CARTS, ON CARTS,*** or ***ACTION.*** On halting, units take advantage of cover. If a halt is caused by the command or signal ***OFF CARTS,*** equipment is removed from the carts, and the carts, if under enemy observation, are moved to the nearest available cover unless otherwise directed. At the command ***ON CARTS,*** the equipment is loaded on carts. When halted by the command ***ACTION,*** squad leaders cause their equipment to be removed from the carts (if ***OFF CARTS*** has not been executed) and the guns to be mounted in the positions indicated.

279. Preliminary training.—Instruction in the mechanism of extended order may be taken up in conjunction with the drill prescribed in chapter 8. Training in the extended-order exercises outlined hereinafter should be preceded by instruction in the proper use of ground and cover. The principles covering this instruction are found in TR 200–5. In this preliminary training, methods of concealing the gun from terrestrial and aerial observation will be emphasized. The use of background, both natural and artificial, of terrain features, and of camouflage should first be demonstrated, then practiced. A guide to this instruction is contained in paragraph 299*d*.

SECTION II

THE MACHINE-GUN SQUAD

280. Duties of squad leader.—The squad is deployed and led by its leader. During movement, his usual position is at the head of his squad. It is his duty to guide on the base unit, to watch the section leader for signals, and to lead his squad in the assigned direction, controlling the movements of his men to insure the skillful use of ground and other cover. He will prevent bunching, particularly at the gun. When resuming the advance after a halt, he will make sure that

all members of the squad have understood and obeyed the order to move forward. In case of casualties he will prescribe such redistribution of the loads of members of the squad as will insure the arrival at the next firing position of all equipment necessary for the immediate opening of fire.

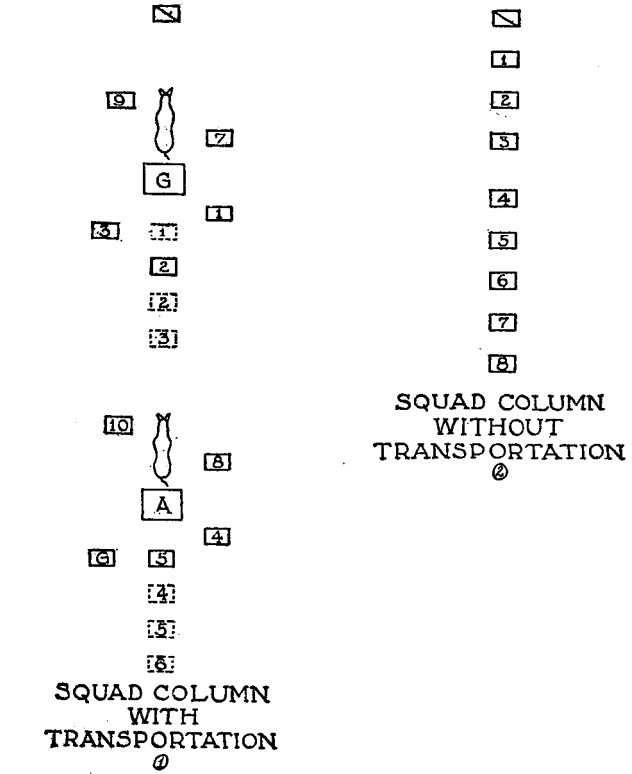


FIGURE 49.—Extended-order formations of the squad

281. Formations.—The formations of the machine-gun squad are squad column, with transportation, and squad column, without transportation. (See fig. 49.) The distances between men and carts are variable, but should not be less than 5 paces, except when advancing at night, in fog, in smoke, or through woods. In the excepted cases, the distances may

be reduced to the limits of visibility in order to prevent loss of control and contact.

282. Squad column, with transportation.—The equipment being loaded on the carts, to assume the formation "squad column," the corporal commands: ***SQUAD COLUMN.*** The corporal moves in the desired direction followed by the squad formed as in Figure 49①.

283. Squad column, without transportation.—The equipment being loaded on the carts, to assume the formation squad column without transportation the corporal commands: ***OFF CARTS, SQUAD COLUMN.*** The equipment is removed from the carts. The corporal moves in the desired direction followed in column by the squad in numerical order carrying equipment. (See fig. 49②.) The carts proceed to a designated place.

284. Assembly.—To assemble the squads, the squad leader commands: 1. ***Assemble,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** The members of the squad move at a run toward the squad leader and form around carts or in column as in close-order drill.

SECTION III

THE MACHINE-GUN SECTION

285. Duties of section leader.—The section is deployed and led by its leader. During movement he occupies no fixed position, but he will generally be in advance of his unit. When leading his section, he selects routes of advance, and reconnoiters for gun positions and targets. When the section is halted in a firing position, he places himself where he can best control its fire, usually in rear and to a flank of his guns; when otherwise halted, he is usually in front of his section. He keeps in touch with the platoon leader at all times.

286. Transportation.—When the equipment is loaded on the carts, the formation of the squads within the section is as shown in Figure 49①. The equipment being carried by hand, the formation of the squad is as shown in Figure 49②. The equipment being removed from the carts, the transportation moves to a designated place.

287. Formations.—*a.* The formation of the section in a line of squad columns (see fig. 50) is used to minimize the effect of hostile shell fire. It is easier to go into action from this formation than from any other.

b. To obtain greater depth in the deployment, a formation of the section in line of squad columns, echeloned, may be used. (See fig. 50 and par. 288.) This formation affords greater protection against shell fire, and facilitates the employment of the guns in directions other than to the front. It is especially adaptable to units marching near a flank.

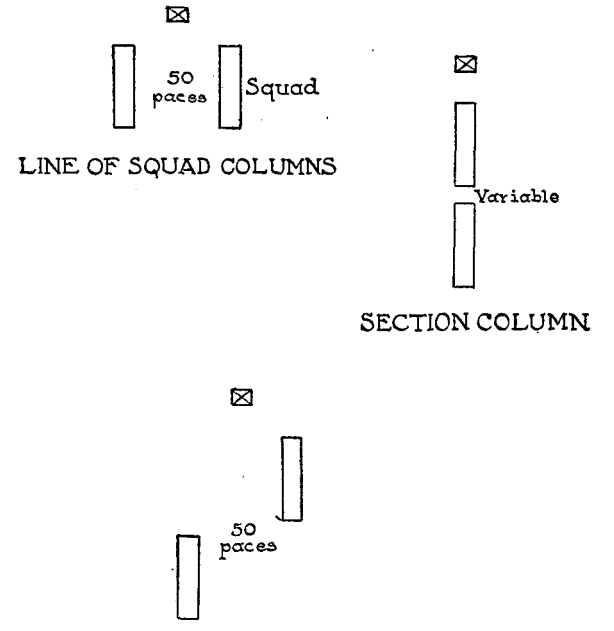


FIGURE 50.—Extended-order formations of the section

c. To facilitate control when moving at night or through woods, intervals and distances are decreased. A good formation is a section column with reduced distances, in which the squads in squad column march one behind the other. (See fig. 50.) This formation can also be used for moving through defiles or narrow approaches, by having the men follow in file.

288. Line of squad columns.—*a.* The section being in any formation, to form line of squad columns the command is: ***SQUAD COLUMNS.*** Each squad leader commands: 1. ***Squad column,*** 2. ***FOLLOW ME,*** and leads his unit in the required direction. The leading or right squad, unless otherwise directed, moves straight to the front, the other to the left, if necessary, continuing at a run until it has gained the required interval and is abreast of the leading squad, whereupon it conforms to the movements of the squad on the right. To form line of squad columns at greater or less intervals, the section leader commands: ***SQUAD COLUMNS AT (50, 30, 20) PACES.*** Deployment may be made to the right by the command: ***SQUAD COLUMNS, RIGHT.*** The movement is executed as described above, except that the rear squad moves to the right of the leading squad.

b. To form line of squad columns, echeloned, the command is: ***SQUAD COLUMNS, ECHELONED.*** The execution is the same as is prescribed in *a* above, except that the rear or left squad moves so that its head is on a line with the tail of the leading squad.

289. Section column.—The section being in any formation, to form section column, the command is: ***SECTION COLUMN.*** The leading or right squad forms squad column, if necessary, and moves off in the indicated direction, while the other forms squad column, if necessary, and follows without distance. The movement is executed at a run until the section column has been formed.

290. Assembly.—To assemble the section, the section leader takes post at or designates the point at which the section is to assemble and commands: 1. ***Assemble,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** Each squad leader assembles his squad and marches it at quick time or as otherwise directed to the point of assembly. With transportation, the section assembles in column of squads, otherwise, in column of twos.

SECTION IV

THE MACHINE-GUN PLATOON

291. Duties of platoon leader.—The platoon leader does not remain in a fixed position with respect to his unit, but goes wherever his presence is required. During movement, he is

generally on the side toward the enemy; when the platoon is in action, he occupies a position from which he can observe the effect of fire and from which he can control his sections. The platoon leader deploys the platoon, makes such personal reconnaissance as may be necessary or directed by the company commander, and directs the advance of, and assigns firing positions to, his sections. In addition he provides for the supply of ammunition, water, and oil; and disposes of the carts when the company commander relinquishes control of them.

292. Duties of platoon sergeant.—The platoon sergeant is the second in command; he leads the platoon when the leader goes ahead on reconnaissance or becomes a casualty. When the platoon commander is within controlling distance, the platoon sergeant follows in rear of the platoon during movement and insures its orderly advance. When the platoon is in action, the platoon sergeant is in charge of the platoon command post. He also is charged with the disposal and operation of the range finder.

293. Duties of transport corporal.—The transport corporal marches at the rear of the carts of the platoon and insures their orderly advance. After ***Off carts*** has been executed, he takes charge of the carts and disposes of them in accordance with orders from the platoon leader; in case orders are not issued, the transport corporal takes the carts to the nearest available cover. He commands the platoon munitions distributing point.

294. Duties of agent corporal.—When the platoon is deployed, the runners are formed as a squad under command of the agent corporal, who conducts it at the head of the platoon, conforming to the formation of the other elements. When the platoon is in action, as part of the company, operating as a unit, the agent corporal remains at the platoon command post unless otherwise directed, and has charge of the runners under the supervision of the platoon sergeant. If the platoon is supporting a rifle company, the agent corporal, with one or two runners, is sent to the command post of the rifle unit supported.

295. Formations.—The platoon deploys in the same manner as the squad and section. Formations used are line of sec-

tions, platoon column, and line of sections echeloned. No fixed formation will be adhered to. The formations, intervals, and distances will depend upon the requirements of the tactical situation, the nature of the ground, and the fire of the enemy. Each section leader designates the formation of his section within the platoon, unless otherwise directed. In order to make the maximum possible use of defiladed approaches, the formations, intervals, and distances will be changed from time to time during the advance, or the formation of one section may be varied from that of the other.

296. Line of sections.—*a.* The platoon being in any formation, to form line of sections, the command is: ***LINE OF SECTIONS.*** (See fig. 51.) The leading or right section, which is the base, moves straight to the front or in the designated direction; the other moves to the left and forward at a run until the required interval has been gained and the section is on line with the base section. If no interval is announced, the platoon will deploy with 50 paces between sections.

b. To form line of sections, echeloned, the command is: ***LINE OF SECTIONS, ECHELONED.*** (See fig. 51.) The leading or right section moves out as prescribed in *a* above; the other moves to the left until the required interval has been gained, and at such distance that its head is on a line with the tail of the leading section.

c. Deployment may be made to the right by the command: ***LINE OF SECTIONS, RIGHT or LINE OF SECTIONS ECHELONED, RIGHT.*** The movements are executed as described in *a* above, except that the rear section deploys to the right of the leading section.

297. Platoon column.—The platoon being in any formation, to form platoon column the command is: ***PLATOON COLUMN.*** (See fig. 51.) In this formation the sections in column follow each other. When the situation requires speed, the movement is executed at a run until all squads have formed squad column; on account of the considerable distance this movement requires the leading units to run with loads, it should be executed at a walk whenever the situation permits.

298. Assembly.—To assemble the platoon, the platoon leader takes post at or designates the point at which the platoon is to assemble and commands: 1. ***Assemble,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** Each section leader assembles his section and conducts it to the point

of assembly as already explained for the section. The platoon assembles in column of squads or fours. The sections of a platoon can be assembled by the command or signal: ***BY SECTIONS, ASSEMBLE.***

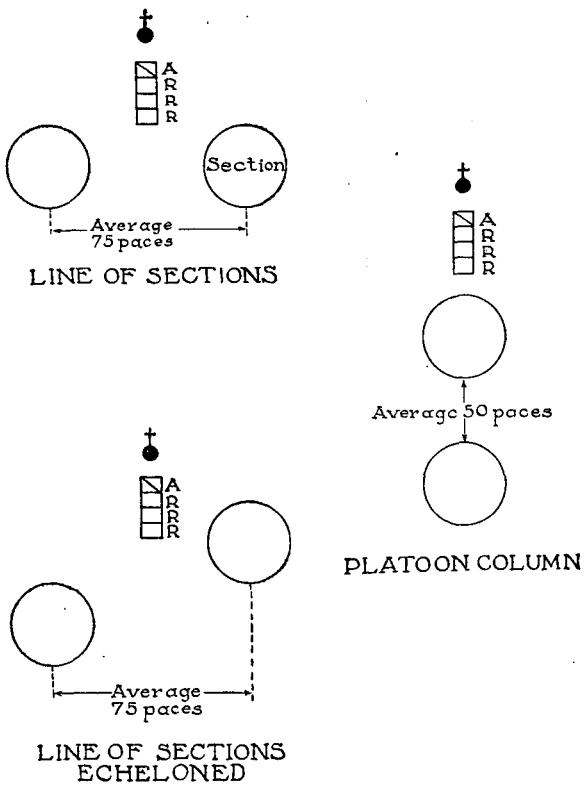


FIGURE 51.—Extended-order formations of the platoon

SECTION V

EXTENDED-ORDER EXERCISES

299. Extended-order exercises.—*a. General.*—(1) As soon as a unit has had instruction in the formations of extended order sufficient to enable it to deploy easily and quickly in

any direction and from any formation, it should be given simple extended-order exercises for the squad, section, and platoon. These should coordinate the mechanism of extended order with the proper use of ground and various forms of cover under assumed tactical situations.

(2) The following points should be stressed in this phase of training:

(*a*) Approach into position.

(*b*) Movement from one firing position to another.

(*c*) Advancing over rough ground and through woods in various formations, with and without carts.

(*d*) Selection, occupation, construction, and concealment of gun positions.

(*e*) Supply of ammunition and water.

(*f*) Speed in going into action from carts.

(*g*) Practice at night.

b. Methods of conducting exercises.—(1) The instructor selects suitable ground, prepares a simple tactical situation embracing one or more of the points outlined above, and insures that the organization undergoing instruction is properly equipped for the exercise. The unit is then conducted to the vicinity of the ground selected for the purpose. The instructor explains the purpose and nature of the exercise, and outlines the assumed tactical situation. The unit then carries out the mission which is implied in the statement of the tactical situation or which has been announced by the instructor.

(2) Exercises involving such movements as an approach to a firing position, going into action, and concealment of gun positions are made more instructive and interesting by detailing a part of the unit or other units to watch the exercise from the assumed location of the enemy. The importance of skillful use of ground and cover and of the proper handling of gun equipment is thus emphasized and understood.

(3) Every extended-order exercise should be concluded by a critique. The entire unit undergoing instruction is assembled for this purpose. The instructor will comment upon the performance of lessons learned in elementary and advanced gun drill and in direct laying, if applicable, as well as the application of formations and movements prescribed for extended order. When a unit has failed to perform the exercise properly, he will point out the causes of the failure and the probable results of such failure under real battle conditions.

c. Approach into position.—(1) Special emphasis in extended-order exercises should be laid on the approach into position. Machine guns, when discovered, always attract fire. A careful approach march will be of no value if the last part of the approach and the actual mounting of the gun result in bunching of men and a considerable amount of noticeable movement. The character of the terrain with respect to cover, visibility, and the tactical requirements will govern the exact method of going into action.

(2) If a position offering but slight cover and under hostile observation is to be occupied, the approach into position must be carried out with great caution. The gun crew must crawl forward with their loads from the nearest available concealment to the gun position, and there mount the gun. Only such members of the squad as are absolutely necessary should go to the gun position. Because of the awkwardness of the loads, this work will require a great deal of practice. No. 1 must crawl forward with the tripod. The gunner folds the legs of the tripod back against the trail and drags the tripod with him as he crawls by hooking his arm under the cradle. No. 2 must crawl forward with the gun, exercising great care so that it will not be damaged. There are two methods of crawling with the gun: In the first, No. 2 lies on one side, holding the water jacket of the gun between his legs and the stock in one hand, and hitches himself along with his feet and elbow; in the second method, No. 2 carries the gun lying across both arms, crawling on elbows and knees or stooping as low as possible. This latter method allows greater speed but permits less use of concealment. Other members of the squad crawl forward, either pushing their boxes ahead of them or dragging them behind by means of the carrying sling. The actual mounting of the gun must be done very carefully in order to avoid attracting attention to the gun position.

(3) Where cover exists close to the position in which the gun is to be mounted, it is usually better to set the gun up under cover and then push or drag it into position.

(4) Time is usually an important factor in battle, and these methods of mounting a gun may often be inadvisable because of the great amount of time necessary to get it into position. Safety at such times may be found in the use of speed in going into action. Where this course of action is advisable, the mem-

bers of the squad must particularly avoid bunching in moving to the gun position. The squad leader, by causing his men to go individually forward to the gun position, can greatly reduce the possibility of hostile observation and, consequently, the number of casualties.

d. Selection, occupation, and concealment of gun positions.— (1) Since the primary object of extended order is to facilitate the effective use of machine guns in action, instruction in the method of using and improving natural cover and in the construction of simple emplacements will be taken up in this connection. In the attack particularly and sometimes in the defense, section and squad leaders must pick out the exact positions. The proper training of a machine-gun unit demands that exercises in the selection, preparation, and concealment of gun positions be given squads and sections.

(2) There are several requirements for a good machine-gun position. First, it must be such that the mission assigned the gun can be carried out. The orders designating positions should be definite enough to limit the noncommissioned officers to areas where the mission of the company or platoon can be accomplished. Second, the position selected must permit the most effective use of ground for concealment. Not only the position itself, but also the approach thereto, should allow reasonable concealment for the gun crew. The other factors to be considered in selecting positions are ease of control, signal communication, and supply.

(3) Gun positions should always be selected with reference to existing natural cover from observation. High grass or brush, low crests, ditches, steep banks, existing shell holes, and dugouts, all furnish more or less desirable concealment for guns. Care must be exercised, however, that the cover itself is inconspicuous. A lone tree or bush, while offering concealment, may also serve as an excellent aiming point for enemy fire. Positions near features of the terrain that are likely to draw fire, and which can easily be designated by the enemy, should be avoided.

(4) In attack situations, opportunities for further preparation of gun positions will be scarce. In the defense, however, even when time is limited, much work can be done in concealing guns. In such situations concealment from aerial observation should be given the same consideration as that from ground observation. The making of paths to and around

guns must be avoided. Those already in existence should be used as far as practicable, and any leading to the gun positions must be continued beyond the emplacement, to some other path or road, or to a dummy emplacement. The preparation of the position should alter the natural appearance of the ground as little as possible. If the site is grassy, the sod should first be removed and then later used to conceal any work done. Surplus excavated earth must be disposed of in such a manner as not to attract attention; it may be used on a dummy work. To cover a position completely, recourse to the use of camouflage nets, grass, or brush for screening the work may be necssary. Such screening, if it does not blend with its surroundings, is worse than none. Care must be exercised, or an alert enemy familiar with the ground will recognize changes in the appearance of the terrain. Therefore regular slopes or outlines, regular spacing, and unnatural shadows are especially to be avoided.

(5) The amount of preparation for gun positions will vary a great deal, depending upon the time available and the character of the ground. Ditches and steep banks give good opportunities for immediate concealment of guns and also for more elaborate emplacements. Shell holes are easily converted into gun emplacements, because the ground in and around a freshly made shell hole is ordinarily soft and easily worked with the small intrenching tools usually available. If time is available, cover for the gun crew against shrapnel and shell fragments and against aerial observation can be obtained by digging into one side of the shell hole. Light overhead cover against aerial observation can be improvised with a few hours labor by using either netting or small branches to cover the emplacement.

e. Training in supply.—(1) Adequate and uninterrupted supply of ammunition, water, oil, and spare parts being essential to the successful employment of machine guns in combat, training in supply must not be neglected. This form of training involves instruction in the establishment and operation of a munitions distributing point and of chains of supply. Instruction in these having been given, provision for and maintenance of supply should be combined with other extended-order drills and exercises.

(2) A munitions distributing point is established for the company or for each platoon, depending upon the tactical situa-

tion. The munitions distributing point is commanded by the senior noncommissioned officer present, usually a transport corporal, and will be manned by mule leaders and horse holders. The establishment of a munitions distributing point involves the following considerations:

(*a*) Receipt and storage of ammunition, water, oil, and spare parts. Ammunition will be obtained from the battalion munitions distributing point by carts. The orders of company commanders and of platoon leaders will state the location of these points, the amount of ammunition to be secured, and possibly the route to be traversed by the carts. Water will be obtained locally wherever possible. Oil and spare parts are not an automatic issue, but, when obtained, will reach the guns through the munitions distributing points.

(*b*) Sorting, cleaning, and filling empty ammunition belts by hand and with the belt-filling machine; loading of belts with designated proportions of ball, tracer, and armor-piercing ammunition; packing loaded belts into ammunition chests.

(*c*) Segregation and storage of filled ammunition chests and water boxes for issuance to carriers as required.

(3) Instruction in the establishment and operation of the chain of supply is of especial importance in extended-order training. When guns are mounted for action, ample ammunition should immediately be brought to their vicinity, to enable them to deliver a suitable volume of fire quickly. To effect this the ammunition carriers of each squad should be trained to bring the ammunition carried by them to the position of No. 3 as soon as the gun has been ordered mounted in a definite position. Squad and section leaders are responsible for getting this ammunition forward. The method by which it is brought forward will depend upon the character of the terrain and the enemy fire. Squad and section leaders will control the ammunition chain by orders given to the carriers through No. 3. The following methods of the operation of an ammunition chain in getting ammunition to the gun position are furnished as guides:

(*a*) When the terrain up to the position of No. 3 affords good cover, each ammunition carrier will bring his load to that point.

(*b*) If but one good approach to the gun position exists and if it is difficult for men to move along it (as in a ditch), the

ammunition may be passed from carrier to carrier, each man moving it to the position of the next forward carrier. If but one approach to both guns of a section exists, all of the carriers of the section may be combined into one chain and operate as indicated above.

(*c*) If the supply has to be maintained across an open space, covered either by the enemy's observation or fire, chests may have to be thrown to the position of No. 3 or dragged across the open by means of a rope.

(4) The ammunition carried by the members of the squad will often be insufficient for the entire action. The amount needed will vary with the tactical situation. In defensive situations as much as 20,000 rounds per gun may have to be brought to the gun positions. The orders of company and platoon commanders will prescribe the amount of ammunition, the location of the munitions distributing points, the routes thereto, and special instructions for carrying parties. Extra ammunition brought forward must be carried by hand, the work being done by the ammunition carriers of the squads. Squad and section leaders must control these carrying parties by definite orders specifying the location of munitions distributing points, the amounts of ammunition to be brought forward, and the routes to be followed. Whenever the munitions distributing points are at some distance from the gun positions, the ammunition carriers should be handled as a detail under the command of a specified carrier. These details may contain all the carriers of a section or platoon, or the men of each squad may constitute a separate detail. When but one good route to the munitions distributing point exists or where there is considerable danger of becoming lost, a section detail will probably be the best; when the area to be traversed is under heavy enemy fire, several small details can usually move with greater safety. In moving from the gun positions to the munitions distributing points and return, the ammunition details will take all possible advantage of cover, using such formations as will minimize the danger of casualties. The most usual formation will be a squad column with distances of 5 paces between men. These distances will vary, depending upon the conditions of visibility, ground traversed, and enemy fire. Under conditions of poor visibility or when crossing close country, the distances between men will be materially reduced; under heavy enemy fire, they will be increased.

(5) When sections or platoons move from one firing position to another, by hand, the question of supply is particularly serious. Enough ammunition must be carried so that the guns can carry out their mission from their new positions. To obtain this ammunition it may be necessary for each ammunition carrier to carry 3 or 4 chests of ammunition on the move. This can be done providing ammunition slings are used. Platoon leaders are charged with the responsibility of prescribing the number of chests to be carried forward. This number should be sufficient for the initial needs at the new positions. In addition they must inform their section leaders of any change in the location of the munitions distributing points from which they are to procure their subsequent supply.

CHAPTER 10

BATTALION, REGIMENTAL, AND BRIGADE HEADQUARTERS COMPANIES

	Paragraphs
SECTION I. General	300–304
II. Formations	305–312

SECTION I

GENERAL

300. Responsibility for training.—*a.* The company commander is responsible for the general training of the company.

b. The responsibility for the special training of each platoon and section is normally placed upon the officer under whom the platoon or section functions in time of combat.

301. How trained.—*a.* The company will be trained in close-order drill, mounted and dismounted.

b. The mounted enlisted men will, in addition, be trained in cavalry close-order squad drill.

c. The motorcyclists, wagoners, and chauffeurs will be trained in maneuvering their vehicles to conform to the company in mounted drill.

302. Kinds of formations.—The formations employed by the company are as follows:

a. In general, all formations used by the rifle company, in so far as they are applicable to a company of this size and type.

b. The following special formations are employed:

(1) Dismounted assembly.
(2) Mounted assembly.
(3) Dismounted drill.
(4) Mounted drill.
(5) Route march.
(6) Inspections.

303. Use of formations.—*a.* The dismounted assembly formation is generally used for reveille, retreat, and roll call.

b. The mounted assembly formation is used prior to forming for—

(1) Mounted ceremonies.
(2) Mounted drill.
(3) Route march.
(4) Mounted inspection.

c. The dismounted drill formation is used for close-order dismounted drill and in preparation for dismounted ceremonies.

d. The mounted drill formation is used for close-order mounted drill and in preparation for mounted ceremonies.

e. The inspection formation is used for careful check of the personnel and for thorough and detailed inspection of equipment.

304. Rules for formations.—*a. General.*—The company forms and executes movements in accordance with prescribed drill of the other infantry units.

b. Mounted personnel.—(1) *Definition.*—An officer or enlisted man is considered as mounted when he has with him in formation his horse, mule, motor cycle, or any vehicle which he controls.

(2) *Conduct.*—In all mounted formations, except at inspections, personnel having horses are mounted; motorcyclists are on their motor cycles. At inspection formations, all mounted personnel, except drivers of animal-drawn vehicles, dismount as soon as they have taken their positions in the formation; those with horses stand to horse; those with motor and animal-drawn vehicles stand at the left of their vehicles. All face to the front.

(3) *With large commands.*—At battalion and regimental drill and at mounted ceremonies, all personnel of the battalion and regimental headquarters companies mounted on horses, with the exception of the company commanders, are normally attached to the staff of the battalion, regimental, and special-unit commanders, respectively, in accordance with instructions for those units. If not required to be present with their companies, the personnel of brigade headquarters companies mounted on horses may be attached to the staff of the brigade commander.

c. Formation of mounted personnel.—(1) *Motorcyclists, mounted.*—When the company is in column of threes, mounted motorcyclists form in single file. In the route march, they

move by bounds, regaining their proper position in the company when it halts, unless otherwise ordered.

(2) *Mounted messengers.*—When the company is in column of threes, mounted messengers form in column of twos. When the company is in column of twos, they form in single file.

(3) *Joining company.*—For mounted formations in camp, the men mounted on horses or vehicles usually join the company at a designated point outside the company street.

d. Forming the company.—(1) *Rapidity.*—Companies will be trained in quickly taking these drill formations from the assembly formations. In emergencies, when time is lacking, companies will take the drill formations, omitting assembly and roll call.

(2) *Positions.*—In forming for mounted or dismounted drill or for ceremonies, the platoons composed of dismounted men may, for the sake of uniformity and appearance, be formed as follows:

(*a*) Each with the same number of squads.

(*b*) Men equipped with the rifle may be placed in one platoon. If there are too many for one platoon they may form in the front rank of another.

(3) *Size.*—For formations other than assembly, a platoon having less than three squads will be broken up and its personnel distributed among the other platoons; a company composed of less than six squads will be formed as one platoon.

In the regimental and brigade headquarters companies it may be found advisable, because of the few men present in company headquarters, to organize the company into two platoons. The communication platoon, intact, may then remain as the second platoon and the remainder of the men present be formed as the first platoon. The battalion headquarters company may similarly be consolidated into one platoon.

e. Throughout these regulations, in changing from assembly formation to drill or route-march formation, the second preparatory command is often expressed as: 2. ***Describes formation desired.*** Such indication means that the company commander may give instructions for effecting any modification of the company's established formation. Such changes may be made necessary by the marked increase or decrease of personnel

present or by orders from higher authority. In these instructions the company commander may state the following:

(1) Number of platoons.
(2) Commander of each platoon.
(3) What personnel will compose each platoon.
(4) What personnel is to report to the battalion commander.
(5) Line on which company will re-form.

SECTION II

FORMATIONS

305. Assembly formation.—*a.* The assembly formation consists of formation in line, mounted and dismounted.

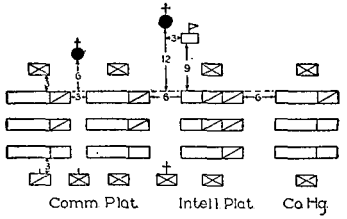
b. At assembly formation, the elements of the company are arranged from right to left as shown in Figure 52. The platoons are formed as directed by the company commander in accordance with paragraph 304.

The communications platoon normally forms from right to left in the following order: Message center section; radio and visual section; wire section. The integrity of sections is maintained in so far as a formation by squads will permit.

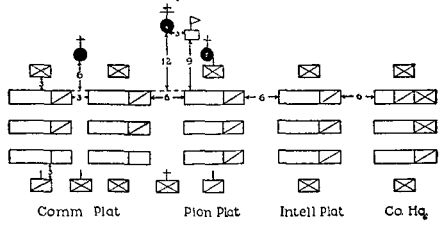
c. The headquarters company does not drill while in assembly formation.

d. (1) To form the company in dismounted assembly formation, the first sergeant takes position 9 paces in front of the point where the center of the company is to be, faces it and commands: ***FALL IN.*** The right section forms, facing to the front, so that the center of the company will be opposite to and 9 paces from the first sergeant. Platoons form in their proper places under supervision of the platoon sergeants, who take posts 6 paces in front of the points where the centers of their platoons will be.

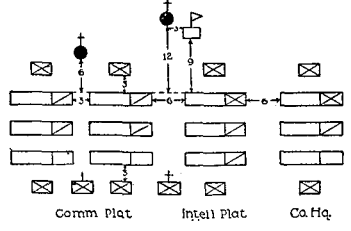
(2) The platoon sergeants then command: ***REPORT.*** Remaining in position at the order, the squad leaders, in succession from the right, in each platoon, salute and report: "All present," or "Private(s) ——— absent." The platoon sergeants then command: 1. ***Inspection,*** 2. ***ARMS,*** 3. ***Order,*** 4. ***ARMS,*** face about, and at the command ***REPORT,*** given by the first sergeant, they salute and report, successively, beginning with company headquarters: "All present or accounted for," or "— men absent." The first sergeant then faces about, salutes and reports: "Sir, all present or accounted for," or "Sir, — men absent," and without command takes his post.



BATTALION HEADQUARTERS COMPANY



REGIMENTAL HEADQUARTERS COMPANY



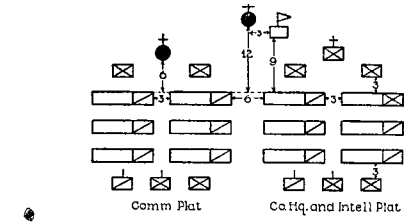
BRIGADE HEADQUARTERS COMPANY

Legend

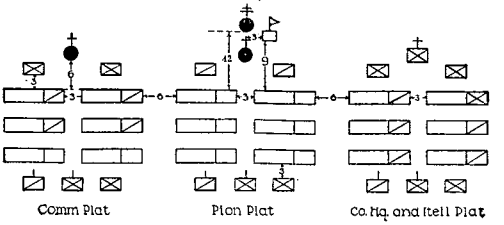
- Captain
- Lieutenants
- First Sergeants
- Platoon Sergeants
- Section Leaders
- Corporals (Seconds-in-Command of Sections)
- Corporals (Squad Leaders)
- Guidon
- Privates

All distances and intervals are in paces

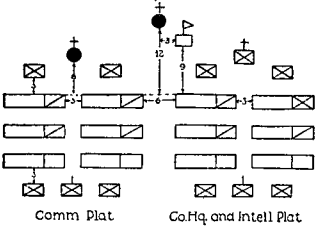
FIGURE 52.—Assembly formations, dismounted, of brigade, regimental and battalion headquarters companies



BATTALION HEADQUARTERS COMPANY



REGIMENTAL HEADQUARTERS COMPANY



BRIGADE HEADQUARTERS COMPANY

Legend

- Captain
- Lieutenants
- First Sergeants
- Platoon Sergeants
- Section Leaders
- Corporals (Seconds-in-Command of Sections)
- Corporals (Squad Leaders)
- Guidon
- Privates

All distances and intervals are in paces

FIGURE 53.—Drill formations, dismounted, of brigade, regimental and battalion headquarters companies

(3) The company commander places himself 12 paces in front of and facing the company in time to receive the report of the first sergeant.

(4) The lieutenants and warrant officer take their posts when the first sergeant has reported.

(5) The company not under arms is formed in like manner, but with omission of reference to arms.

(6) In forming the company, all who are required to make a report maintain the first position of salute until it is returned.

e. (1) To form the company in mounted assembly formation, the platoons take the same position as in the dismounted assembly. The mounted men, except those commanding platoons, form on the left of the company. (See par. 304.)

(2) The first sergeant takes position 9 paces in front of where the center of the company will form.

(3) The company commander takes position 12 paces in front of the center of and facing the company, in time to receive the report of the first sergeant.

(4) Posts of platoon leaders, the warrant officer, and platoon sergeants are taken in accordance with the principles outlined above for the dismounted assembly and as shown in Figure 52.

306. To form the company for dismounted drill.—*a.* To form the company for dismounted drill or dismounted ceremonies from dismounted assembly formations, the company commander directs the first sergeant to form the company for drill. The first sergeant moves to a position 9 paces in front of the center of the company, faces it, and commands: 1. ***Form for drill,*** 2. (***Describes formation desired***), 3. ***MARCH.*** Officers and the warrant officer fall out. Platoon sergeants supervise the formation of their platoons. At the command ***POSTS,*** given by the first sergeant when the formation is completed, they take posts. The first sergeant then faces about, salutes and reports: "Sir, the company is formed," and takes his post.

b. The platoon leaders take their posts when the first sergeant has reported.

307. To form the company for mounted drill.—*a.* To form the company for mounted drill or ceremonies from mounted assembly formation, the commands and the execution thereof are as prescribed in paragraph 306.

b. Mounted men, except those commanding platoons, form on the left of the company under indicated leaders.

308. Order of elements in mounted formations.—*a.* In all mounted formations, the following elements of the headquarters company, when present, form on the left when in line and in rear when in march column in the order given, and with an interval or distance of 6 paces between elements.

(1) *Battalion headquarters company.*—Communication carts; mounted men not commanding platoons; motor cycles.

(2) *Regimental headquarters company.*—Communication carts; mounted men not commanding platoons; motor transportation.

(3) *Brigade headquarters company.*—Communication carts; mounted men not commanding platoons; motor transportation.

b. The company commander may make such adjustments in the formation of these elements as circumstances demand.

309. To form the company for route march.—*a.* To form the company for route march from the mounted assembly formation the commands are: 1. ***Form for route march,*** 2. (***Describes formation desired***), 3. ***MARCH.***

b. The battalion headquarters company.—(1) At the command ***MARCH,*** if transportation accompanies the battalion, the company headquarters personnel (less sergeant major and clerk) join the transportation assigned to the battalion headquarters company and are assigned to vehicles by the first sergeant.

(2) Such personnel of the company as may have been so directed by the battalion commander joins the battalion staff. If the staff is at a great distance, motor cycles are used to transport this personnel.

c. Regimental headquarters company.—(1) At the command ***MARCH,*** the company headquarters (less company commander, sergeant major, first sergeant, and two chauffeurs) joins the transportation of the headquarters section of the service company, the personnel being assigned to vehicles by the senior noncommissioned officer present.

(2) Such personnel of the company as may have been so directed by the regimental commander joins the regimental staff. If the staff is at a great distance, motor vehicles are used to transport this personnel.

d. Brigade headquarters company.—(1) At the command ***MARCH,*** the personnel of the company headquarters, and the cook and private, miscellaneous, of the staff section join the

transportation section and are assigned to vehicles by the first sergeant.

(2) Such personnel as may have been so directed by the brigade commander joins the brigade staff. If the staff is at a great distance, motor vehicles are used to transport this personnel.

(3) Two privates (operators) of the radio and visual section join the 1½ to 2 ton cargo truck to care for the equipment. Additional personnel is sent to this truck in accordance with orders for its employment.

(4) The warrant officer, clerk, and the stenographer of the staff section, if present, take position on the right of the company.

(5) The remaining dismounted men close to the left, forming one platoon.

(6) The communication chief and the sergeant of the staff section assist the communication officer in the forming of the dismounted platoon, and then take positions on the right.

(7) The 5-passenger motor cars will generally be ordered to report to brigade headquarters.

(8) The horse-drawn transportation will generally be ordered to join the combat train of the leading regiment.

(9) Platoon sections retain their designation and are formed in the same order as in the mounted assembly formation.

(10) Each section chief places himself so that he will be on the left and in the leading rank of his section when ***sections column right*** is executed.

(11) In the route march, the company will march as directed by the battalion, regimental, or brigade commander. Subdivisions of the company should be kept intact if possible.

310. Company mounted drill.—*a.* While the company will generally drill in accordance with the drill regulations of the other infantry units, it may at times be desirable for the mounted platoons to form in rear of the dismounted platoon or platoons.

b. Such a formation is accomplished by preceding the usual preparatory command by the command: ***Transportation to the rear.***

c. At the command of execution, the mounted platoons move to their positions by the shortest route and in the most expeditious manner, conforming to the formations shown in Figure 54 in so far as their organization will permit.

311. **Battalion and regimental drill and mounted ceremonies.**—At battalion and regimental drill and mounted ceremonies the provisions of paragraph 310 apply, except that the mounted messenger platoon will generally not be present with the company. (See par. 304 *b* (3).)

312. **The guidon.**—*a.* The guidon is carried in accordance with the principles outlined in chapter 3, part two. If the formation is mounted, the guidon is carried by a specially selected mounted enlisted man.

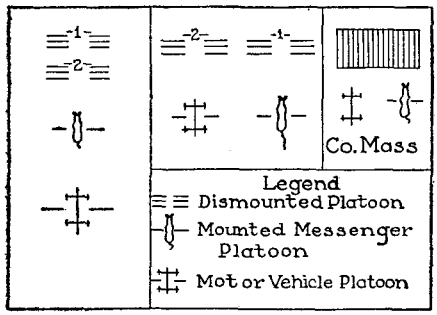


FIGURE 54.—Mounted formations, headquarters companies

b. The post of the guidon bearer in formation is as follows:

(1) *In assembly formation, dismounted.*—The guidon bearer is on the right flank of the leading rank of company headquarters; in mounted formations he remains with the detachment of mounted messengers, being posted as the left flank man of this section.

(2) *In drill formation, mounted or dismounted.*—He is 3 paces to the right and 1 pace to the rear of the company commander.

(3) *In route-march formation.*—If the guidon is ordered to be carried, the guidon bearer is at the head of the column, as prescribed for the rifle company.

(4) *At inspection formation.*—The guidon bearer is on the left of the mounted messengers of the message center section.

(5) *In initial formation and subsequent movements.*—The guidon bearer takes post as herein prescribed without command.

CHAPTER 11

CLOSE-ORDER DRILL—THE HOWITZER COMPANY

		Paragraphs
SECTION I.	General, without transportation	313
II.	The howitzer squad, with transportation	314–320
III.	The howitzer platoon, with transportation	321–334
IV.	The howitzer company, with transportation	335–340

SECTION I

GENERAL, WITHOUT TRANSPORTATION

313. General.—*a.* Individual instruction in basic subjects is carried out as prescribed for rifle units.

b. Howitzer units execute close-order drill, without transportation, as prescribed for rifle units with the following exceptions:

(1) The platoon is formed and drilled as a rifle section.

(2) The noncommissioned officers are not numbered.

(3) Members of platoon headquarters, with the exception of the platoon sergeant, are used to equalize the squad. The platoon sergeant is second in command of the platoon and takes post as prescribed for the section leader of the rifle section.

c. Men armed with the rifle do not execute movements of the manual of arms except inspections of arms. At formations of the company and for drill and ceremonies, the rifle is carried slung over the right shoulder, butt down, barrel to the rear. Rifles are unslung only at the commands ***INSPECTION ARMS, REST, FALL OUT*** or when directed.

d. Shelter tents are pitched as prescribed in chapter 5. Squad leaders execute the movements prescribed for the corporals of the rifle squads.

SECTION II

THE HOWITZER SQUAD, WITH TRANSPORTATION

314. Objects.—The objects of close-order drill, with transportation, are:

a. To instruct men to drill, maneuver, and march with carts.

b. To instruct men in the proper methods of handling animals.

315. Organization.—*a.* The 37-mm gun squad consists of one sergeant, one corporal, and six privates. The sergeant commands the squad, the corporal is the gunner, No. 1 is the assistant gunner and loader, and Nos. 2, 3, and 4 are ammunition carriers. No. 5 is an ammunition carrier and assistant mule leader. No. 6 is the mule leader.

b. The 3-inch trench mortar squad consists of one sergeant, one corporal, and five privates. The sergeant commands the squad, the corporal is the gunner, No. 1 is the assistant gunner and loader, and Nos. 2 and 3 are ammunition carriers. No. 4 is an ammunition carrier and assistant mule leader. No. 5 is the mule leader.

c. The ammunition squad consists of one corporal and seven privates. The corporal commands the squad and Nos. 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5 are ammunition carriers and perform certain duties in the preparation of 3-inch trench mortar ammunition for firing as set forth in the chapter on ammunition drill. No. 6 is an ammunition carrier and assistant mule leader. No. 7 is the mule leader.

316. Transportation.—*a.* The transportation of howitzer company squads consists of the following:

(1) *The 37-mm gun squad.*—An ammunition cart, which serves also as a limber, the gun on wheels, and a mule.

(2) *The 3-inch trench mortar squad.*—An ammunition cart, which carries the mortar and ammunition, and a mule.

(3) *The ammunition squad.*—An ammunition cart and a mule.

b. The animals and carts being integral parts of the howitzer company squads, all men are trained in harnessing, hitching, loading the carts, and leading the mules. Mule leaders are selected from those men who demonstrate special ability in the care and handling of mules. Mule leaders should be held responsible for the care and handling of the transportation under their charge.

c. Duties of the mule leader.—The chief duties of the mule leader are:

(1) Leading the mule during drill, on the march, and during combat.

(2) Training and care of the mule.

(3) Care and adjustment of the harness.

(4) Harnessing and unharnessing.

(5) Hitching and unhitching.

(6) Care of the cart.

d. To lead the mule.—When hitched, the mule is led by means of the reins or halter tie rope. The mule leader takes position on the near side of the mule, holding the reins near the bit with his right hand, and holding the loose ends of the reins in his left hand. At drill and ceremonies the mule is led with the reins; on the march the halter tie rope may be used. The mule is led with a loose rein and urged on from the rear, if necessary, by a member of the squad. The mule leader never faces or threatens the mule when leading him.

e. To gather the mule.—The mule leader raises his right hand until it touches the mule's lower jaw and at the same time exerts a slight pressure with the reins in the direction in which the movement is to be made. The object of gathering the mule is to attract his attention and prepare him for the movement. At all preparatory commands involving a movement of the cart, the mule is gathered in time to cause the movement to begin at the command of execution.

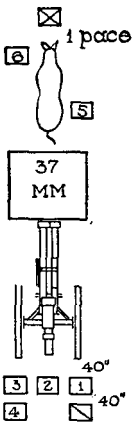
f. To change direction.—In all changes of direction the mule is led outward and away from the pivot in order to increase the radius of turning. In a turn to the right, the mule while actually led in the turn, may be better controlled if the mule leader places his right shoulder against the mule and guides him in the turn.

g. To load the carts.—(1) At the command ***LOAD CARTS,*** the squad, under the supervision of the squad leader, loads the squad and other equipment on the carts in such manner that the load is evenly balanced and properly secured to the cart.

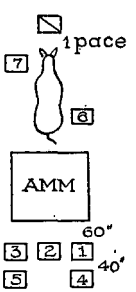
(2) Pending the issue of howitzer company carts of standard design, no definite procedure in loading the carts can be prescribed. The method of loading machine-gun carts may be used as a guide.

317. To form the squad.—The squad leader places himself 1 pace in front of where the head of the mule is to be and commands: ***AROUND CARTS, FALL IN.*** The other members of the squad post themselves as follows:

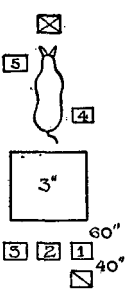
a. The 37-mm gun squad.—Nos. 1, 2, and 3, in that order from right to left, at 4-inch interval in rear of the gun and 40 inches therefrom. The corporal and No. 4 cover Nos. 1 and 3 at 40-inch distance. No. 5 is to the right of the right hip of the mule.



THE 37-MM SQUAD



THE AMMUNITION SQUAD



THE TRENCH MORTAR SQUAD

FIGURE 55.—Formations of the howitzer company squads

b. The 3-inch trench mortar squad.—Nos. 1, 2, and 3, in that order from right to left at 4-inch interval, in rear of the cart and 60 inches therefrom. The corporal covers off No. 1 at 40 inches distance. No. 4 is to the right of the right hip of the mule.

c. The ammunition squad.—Nos. 1, 2, and 3, in that order from right to left at 4-inch interval in rear of the cart and

60 inches therefrom. Nos. 4 and 5 cover off Nos. 1 and 3, respectively, at 40 inches distance.

d. The men fall in at attention. Each man who has to establish interval to the man on his left raises his elbow as in dress right. The arms are dropped as soon as the man on the left has the proper interval.

e. When the squad has fallen in, the squad leader commands: 1. ***Count,*** 2. ***OFF.*** The command is executed as prescribed in paragraph 86, except that the corporal, when in ranks, calls ***Gunner,*** and the mule leader and assistant mule leader do not execute ***eyes right.*** All men count off in numerical order at the proper time, starting with the gunner.

f. In subsequent movement of the squad, all men except the squad leader retain their positions around the cart.

318. Previous instruction applicable.—The squad executes the halts, rests, steps (except side steps), and forward march as prescribed in chapter 2, except that the mule leader does not execute ***parade rest*** but remains at attention. In executing the halt, sufficient interval is allowed between the preparatory command and the command of execution to permit the prompt halting of the mule.

319. To align the squad.—To align the squad, the commands are as prescribed in paragraph 87. The mule leader leads his mule to a position 1 pace from and facing the squad leader. The mule leader and assistant mule leader place themselves in their proper positions and remain at attention. The remaining members of the squad execute the command as prescribed in paragraph 87.

320. To change direction.—To change direction, the commands are: 1. ***Column right (left),*** 2. ***MARCH.***

a. At the command ***MARCH*** the mules are led as explained in paragraph 184.

b. ***Column half right (left)*** is executed in a similar manner.

SECTION III

THE HOWITZER PLATOON, WITH TRANSPORTATION

321. Organization.—*a.* The platoon consists of a platoon headquarters, a 37-mm gun squad, a 3-inch trench mortar squad, and an ammunition squad.

b. The platoon headquarters consists of one lieutenant (platoon leader), one platoon sergeant (second in command), one corporal (transport), one corporal agent, and three privates (one orderly, two runners).

c. In each platoon men are assigned to squads without reference to height, in order that each squad may have its proper proportion of large men. Men are assigned duties which they are best fitted to perform. The integrity of squads is maintained.

d. Runners are attached to squads during close-order formations not requiring their normal employment as agents of communication.

322. Individual duties.—*a.* The *platoon sergeant* forms the platoon and receives the reports of squad leaders at all formations. When the platoon is in formation, he is posted in rear of the center of the trench mortar squad, and on line with the last rank of the gun squad. During drill, he marches and takes post where he can best assist the platoon leader.

b. Transport corporal.—When the platoon is in formation, except for ceremonies and company drill, he is posted in rear of the trench mortar squad and 2 paces behind the platoon sergeant. For ceremonies, he may be mounted or dismounted. If mounted, he is 2 paces to the left and 1 pace to the rear of the platoon leader. If dismounted, he is posted in rear of No. 4 of the ammunition squad and on line with the platoon sergeant.

c. Agent corporal.—When the platoon is in formation, he is posted in rear of the left rear man of the platoon, on line with the last rank of the gun squad.

323. Formations.—The formations of the platoon are mass, line of squads, and column of squads. (Fig. 56.)

324. To form the platoon.—To form the platoon the platoon sergeant places himself 6 paces in front of and facing where the center of the platoon is to be and commands: ***AROUND CARTS, FALL IN.***

a. At this command the platoon forms in mass as shown in Figure 56.

b. When the platoon has formed as prescribed above, the platoon sergeant commands: 1. ***Count,*** 2. ***OFF.*** The command is executed simultaneously by squads as prescribed in paragraph 317.

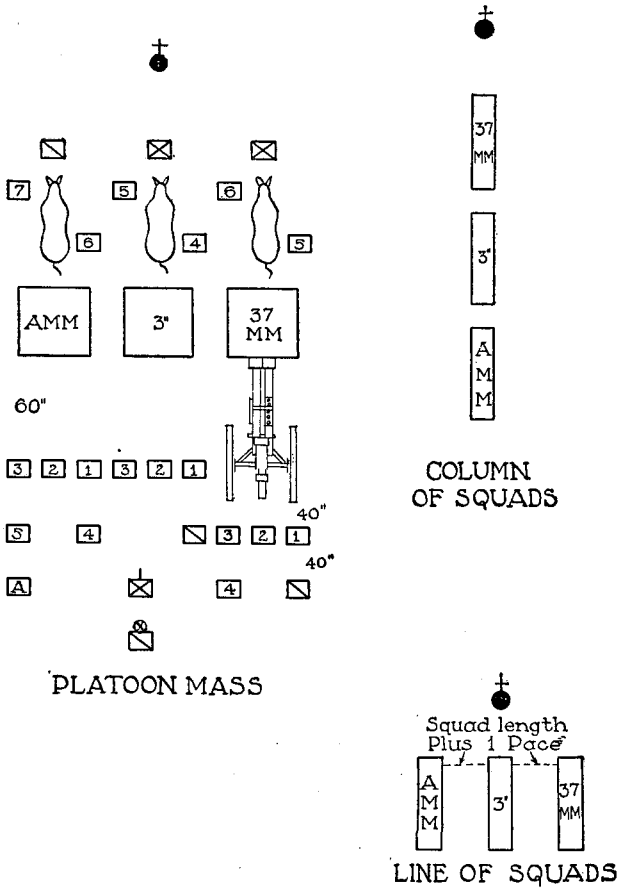


FIGURE 56.—Formations of the howitzer platoon

325. To align the platoon.—To align the platoon, the commands are: 1. ***Dress right (left),*** 2. ***DRESS,*** 3. ***Ready,*** 4. ***FRONT.***

a. The squads execute ***right dress.***

b. The platoon sergeant verifies the alignment in a manner similar to that explained in paragraph 319.

326. Previous instruction applicable.—The platoon executes the rests, steps (except the side steps), and marchings as explained in chapter 2. Being in column of squads, it changes direction as explained for the squad. It halts as prescribed for the squad.

327. To open and close ranks.—The platoon being in mass or line of squads, to open and close ranks the commands are: 1. ***Open ranks,*** 2. ***MARCH.***

a. At the command ***MARCH*** the transportation moves forward 6 paces and halts. Nos. 1, 2, and 3 of the mortar squad and of the ammunition squad move forward 4 paces and halt. Nos. 1, 2, and 3 of the gun squad, corporal of the mortar squad and 4 and 5 of the ammunition squad move forward 2 paces and halt. Assistant mule leaders retain their relative positions opposite the hips of the mules. If the platoon is in line of squads, all men in ranks in each squad extend to normal interval on the center man of each rank while opening ranks.

b. Being at open ranks, to close ranks, the commands are: 1. ***Close ranks,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH*** the elements in rear of the transportation close to normal distances.

328. Being in mass or line of squads, to form column of squads.—The commands are: 1. ***Right (left) by squads,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH,*** the right (left) squad moves forward. The other squads from right (left) to left (right) follow the leading squad at prescribed distances by the shortest practicable routes.

329. Being in any formation, to change direction.—The commands are: 1. ***Column right (left),*** 2. ***MARCH.***

a. If in column of squads, the leading squad executes ***column right;*** the rear squads follow in column.

b. If in mass or line of squads, the right squad executes ***column right*** and decreases its pace. The other squads turn to the right and, without changing the intervals, place themselves abreast of the base squad. When the last squad has arrived abreast of the base squad, all squads move off at quick time. To hasten the execution of the movement, the command ***Double time*** is given just before the command of execution. The base squad marches in quick time; the other squads move at double time until abreast the base squad when they resume quick time.

330. Being in column of squads, to form line of squads to the flank.—The commands are: 1. ***Squads, column right (left),*** 2. ***MARCH.***

At the command ***MARCH,*** each squad executes ***column right.*** The platoon is halted when it has advanced the desired distance. The platoon marches in line for short distances only.

331. Being in column of squads, to form mass to the front.—The commands are: 1. ***Platoon mass to the right (left) front,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH,*** the leading squad halts; the rear squads move by the shortest practicable route and form mass to the right (left) of the leading squad.

332. Being in column of squads, to form line of squads to the front.—The commands are: 1. ***Line of squads to the right (left) front,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH,*** the leading squad halts; the rear squads execute ***column right*** and when opposite their places in line execute ***column left,*** move up and halt abreast of the leading squad.

333. Being in line of squads, to form platoon mass.—The commands are: 1. ***Close on right (left) squad,*** 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. ***Platoon,*** 4. ***HALT.*** At the command ***MARCH,*** the right (left) squad marches forward. The remaining squads march by the shortest practicable routes to their respective places in mass formation. The command ***HALT*** is given when the leading squad has moved the desired distance. The leading squad halts at the command. The other squads halt when they are abreast of the leading squad.

334. Being in mass, to form line of squads to the front.—The commands are: 1. ***Line of squads to the right (left) front,*** 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. ***Platoon,*** 4. ***HALT.*** At the command ***MARCH,*** the left squad takes up the march or continues the march. The other squads execute ***column half right*** and, when opposite their proper places in line, execute ***column half left.*** When the base squad has advanced the desired distance, the command ***HALT*** is given. The base squad halts and the other squads move up abreast of the base squad and halt.

SECTION IV

THE HOWITZER COMPANY, WITH TRANSPORTATION

335. Formations.—*a.* The formations of the company are: Line of platoon masses, line of squads, column of platoon masses, and column of squads.

b. The company assembles in line of platoon masses or column of platoon masses. (Fig. 57.) The company headquarters is formed by the senior noncommissioned officer present. For drill

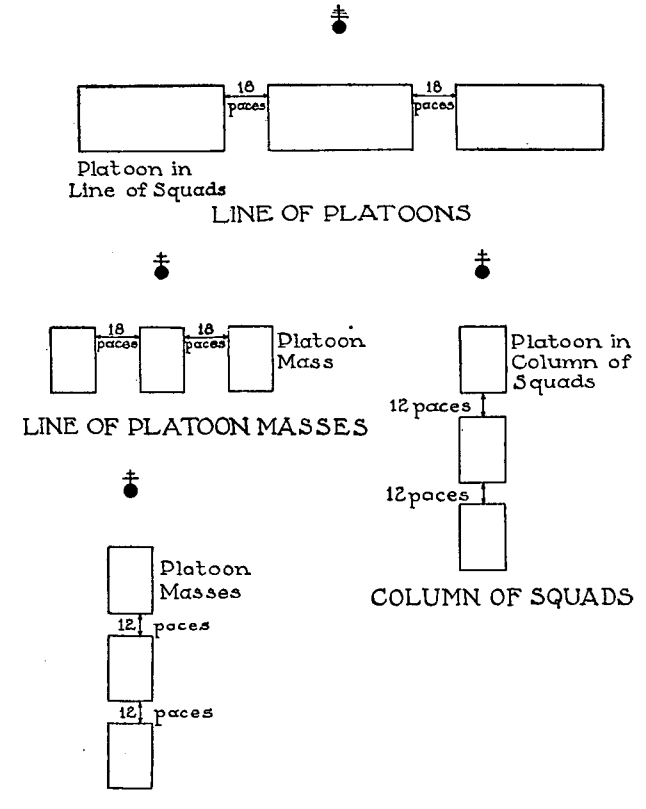


FIGURE 57.—Formation of the howitzer company

or ceremonies, unless otherwise directed, members of the company headquarters are distributed among the platoons in a way that will not interfere with the permanent squad organization.

c. The company drills as a unit only for the purpose of obtaining proficiency in ceremonial formations.

d. For practice marches in which no tactical situation is involved, the personnel of the company may be combined into one unit and marched in front of the combined company carts. This same expedient may be employed within platoons.

336. **To form the company.**—The company forms as explained in paragraph 124 except that the platoons form in platoon mass with 18 paces interval between platoons. (Fig. 57.)

337. **To dismiss the company.**—*a.* The company commander directs the first sergeant: ***DISMISS THE COMPANY.*** The officers fall out; the first sergeant moves to a point 9 paces in front of the center of the company or the leading platoon, salutes, faces toward the company and commands: 1. ***Inspection,*** 2. ***Pistols,*** 3. ***Return,*** 4. ***Pistols,*** 5. ***DISMISSED.*** Transportation and equipment are disposed of as directed.

b. Dismissal may take place by platoons. The company commander directs the platoon leaders: ***Dismiss your platoons.*** Each platoon is then dismissed as described for the company, the platoon sergeant performing the duties prescribed for the first sergeant. The company headquarters is dismissed by its leader.

338. **Previous instruction applicable.**—Being in line of masses or line of squads, the company forms column of squads and executes the reverse of this movement; being in line of squads it forms line of masses, it opens and closes ranks and changes direction in a manner similar to that prescribed in Section III.

339. **Being in line of masses, to form column of platoon masses.**—The commands are: 1. ***Platoons column right (left),*** 2. ***MARCH,*** or 1. ***Right by platoons,*** 2. ***MARCH.***

340. **Being in column of platoon masses, to form column of squads.**—The commands are: 1. ***Column of squads, leading platoon right (left) by squads,*** 2. ***MARCH.***

CHAPTER 12

GUN DRILL—THE HOWITZER COMPANY

	Paragraphs
SECTION I. 37 mm gun drill	341–353
II. 3-inch trench mortar drill	354–364
III. Ammunition drill	365–373

SECTION I

37-MM GUN DRILL

341. Object.—The object of 37-mm gun drill is to teach all members of the squad the duties of each member in putting the gun in and out of action, and in serving the gun with accuracy and speed during firing.

342. Equipment.—*a.* The following articles of equipment are required for 37-mm gun drill:

1 37-mm gun on wheels.
1 telescopic sight.
1 quadrant sight.
4 ammunition chests.
2 aiming stakes.
4 dummy cartridges.
1 pair field glasses.
1 compass.
1 set fire-control tables.
5 carrying slings.

If drill is to be conducted over rough ground, two breast straps should be included.

b. When the gun is drawn on wheels, the equipment is transported as follows:

(1) *Sergeant.*—Carries field glass, compass, and fire-control tables.

(2) *Gunner.*—Carries sights and aiming stakes.

(3) *Nos. 1 and 2.*—Draw the 37-mm gun.

(4) *Nos. 3 and 4.*—Carry two ammunition chests each.

(5) *No. 5.*—No load assigned.

(6) *No. 6.*—Mule leader, if present, assists as directed.

When the gun is drawn by hand over rough ground, one or more members of the squad may assist in drawing the gun by means of breast straps. Breast straps are carried in the cart. In the field or in training for field duties all members who carry ammunition chests or ammunition and parts of the gun are equipped with carrying slings. The carrying slings are carried in the carts with the breast straps.

c. When the gun is carried by hand, the equipment is transported as follows:

(1) *Sergeant.*—Carries field glass, compass, and fire-control tables.

(2) *Gunner.*—Carries sights and aiming stakes.

(3) *Nos. 1 and 2.*—Carry trails, pintle to the front, and one ammunition chest each.

(4) *Nos. 3 and 4.*—Carry assembled barrel and cradle, muzzle to the front, and one ammunition chest each.

(5) *No. 5.*—Pushes the wheels and axle.

(6) *No. 6.*—Mule leader, if present, assists as directed.

d. During dismounting and mounting, the minimum number of men will be at the gun position. Only those members who are actively engaged in a phase of dismounting or mounting will be at the gun position. Those members who have dismounted or mounted a part of the gun will move clear of the gun position and hold themselves in readiness for the next formation or movement. Those members who are to dismount or mount a part of the gun will be ready to move immediately to the gun position, to execute their mission, when the gun position has been cleared by the preceding group.

e. Grounding equipment.—At the original assembly with equipment and at all halts, loads are grounded without command. The ammunition chests are placed on the ground directly in front of the carrier. The rear of each chest touches and is on line with the toes of the carrier. The trail of the 37-mm gun is placed on the ground between Nos. 1 and 2.

f. Taking equipment.—At all preparatory commands for movement, loads are taken.

343. To form the squad.—The squad is formed as prescribed in paragraph 317.

344. To secure equipment.—*a.* Normally, equipment for gun drill is secured before the squad is formed.

b. At any time after the gun squad has been formed, to secure equipment, the command is: ***SECURE EQUIPMENT FOR GUN DRILL.*** At this command the men fall out and each secures the equipment described in paragraph 342.

c. After the equipment is secured, the squad assembles without command in the formation described in paragraph 317.

345. To change numbers and duties in the squad.—*a.* The squad being in any formation, the command is: ***FALL OUT GUNNER, ONE, TWO*** (or any other number in the squad). At this command the gunner takes the position of the last number of the squad. No. 1 calls out ***GUNNER,*** and moves to the position of the gunner. No. 2 calls out ***ONE,*** and moves to the position of No. 1, and in this manner throughout the squad, each man moves up one number. When a number other than the gunner is directed to fall out, he takes the position of the last number of the squad. The numbers following the designated number call out their new numbers and move to their new positions. The men preceding the designated number do not change their positions.

b. This rotation in drill is made in order to train all members of the squad in the duties of the other members and to simulate casualties. During the earlier stages of gun drill this command is given only after a movement or command has been completely executed. After each member of the squad is familiar with the duties of each other member, the command may be given before the completion of a movement. In such cases, each man at once stops the execution of his duties and takes up the duties of his new number.

346. To form squad column.—*a. Gun drawn by hand.*—The squad being in any formation and the gun on wheels, to form the squad in squad column the command is: ***SQUAD COLUMN.*** The members of the squad follow the squad leader at easy marching distance in the order given in Figure 58.

b. Gun carried by hand.—When the gun is carried by hand the movement is the same, except that the members of the squad follow the squad leader in the order given in Figure 59.

347. To assemble the squad.—*a.* The squad being in squad column, and the gun on wheels, the commands are: 1. ***Assemble,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** If marching, the sergeant halts. The men move at a run toward the sergeant and form in column as described in paragraph 346.

b. The squad being in squad column, and the gun carried by hand, to assemble the squad, the commands are: 1. ***Assemble,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** If marching, the squad halts. The gun is assembled on wheels as described in paragraph 349. All men of the squad then move at a run toward the squad leader and form in column as described in paragraph 346.

348. To dismount the gun and form squad column.—*a.* The squad being in any formation and the gun on wheels, the command is: ***BY HAND.***

(1) If marching, the squad halts.

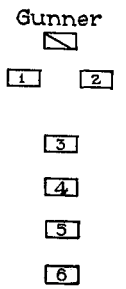


FIGURE 58.—The 37-mm squad in squad column formation, gun drawn by hand

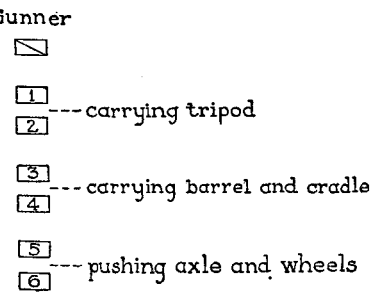


FIGURE 59.—The 37-mm squad in squad column formation, gun carried by hand

(2) Nos. 1 and 2 turn the gun to the right about with the left wheel as a pivot, until the muzzle points directly to the front and then ground the spades. No. 2 withdraws the cleaning brush staff from the lunette swivels and hands it to No. 4.

(3) Nos. 3 and 4 each drops one ammunition chest 1 pace to the left of the center of the trails and retains the other chest. No. 2 withdraws the cleaning brush staff from the lunette swivels and passes it to No. 4. No. 4 opens the breech, inserts the cleaning brush staff through the bore, supports the breech by means of the cleaning brush staff, and separates

the elevating screw from the elevating-screw latch-catch bracket. No. 3, from a position near the muzzle, turns the trunnion cap wing nuts to the front, grasps the protruding end of the cleaning brush staff, and assisted by No. 4 lifts the barrel and cradle over the left wheel.

(4) No. 1 straddles the trails, unhooks the axle stays, and raises the front of the trails slightly.

(5) No. 5 takes out the axle coupling pin, removes the axle and wheels and withdraws them 2 paces to the right so as to prevent interference with the forward movement of Nos. 1 and 2.

(6) As soon as the axle and wheels have been removed, the members of the squad secure their loads. Nos. 1 and 2 take the ammunition chests dropped by Nos. 3 and 4. For the purpose of uniformity in drill, the trails will be carried on the right hips with the top of the trails against the body. In the field, however, to avoid undue fatigue the trails may be shifted by Nos. 1 and 2 to suit their convenience. The squad forms in squad column as described in paragraph 346.

b. The squad being in position either of prepare for action or on wheels action, the command is: ***BY HAND.***

(1) The gunner removes the shoulder guard and passes it to No. 1. He then removes the sight, returns it to its case, secures the aiming stakes and stands clear.

(2) No. 1 replaces the shoulder guard on the right trail and pulls down on the traversing screw lock ring.

(3) No. 2 removes the ammunition chests from between the trails to a position to the left of the trails, removes the trail brace and places it on the left trail, closes and straps the trails, and stands clear.

(4) No. 4 opens the breech (if not open) and places the trigger crank lever in the carrying position.

(5) No. 3 takes one ammunition chest from No. 4. Nos. 3 and 4 remove the barrel and cradle.

(6) No. 1 straddles the trails, unhooks the axle stays and raises the front of the trails slightly.

(7) No. 5 takes out the axle coupling pin, removes the axle and wheels and withdraws them 2 paces to the right, in order to prevent interference with the forward movement of Nos. 1 and 2.

(8) Members of the squad secure their loads. Nos. 1 and 2 take the ammunition chests dropped by Nos. 3 and 4. The squad forms squad column as described in paragraph 346.

349. To mount the gun on wheels and form squad column.—The squad being in squad column and the gun carried by hand, the command is: ***ON WHEELS.***

a. If marching, the squad halts.

b. No. 2 lowers the trail spades to the ground. No. 1 lowers and straddles the pintle end of the trails. No. 5 rapidly brings up the axle and wheels. No. 1 inserts the socket stud in the pintle socket and hooks the axle stays. No. 5 inserts the axle coupling pin and locks the axle lock.

c. Nos. 3 and 4 replace the barrel and cradle on the mount. No. 3 locks the trunnion caps. No. 4 fastens the elevating screw latch, withdraws the cleaning brush staff from the bore and passes it to No. 2 who inserts it through the lunette swivels. No. 4 closes the breech, uncocks the gun, and puts the trigger crank lever in the carrying position.

d. All members secure their loads and form squad column.

350. Prepare for action.—The squad being either in line or in squad column and the gun on wheels, to prepare for action the command is: ***PREPARE FOR ACTION.***

a. If marching, the squad halts.

b. Nos. 1 and 2 turn the gun to the right about with the left wheel as a pivot until the muzzle points directly to the front and then ground the spades. No. 1 goes to the front of the gun and unlocks the axle lock.

c. No. 2 withdraws the cleaning brush staff from the lunette swivels, places it on the ground beneath the axle, unfastens the trail strap, opens the trails and adjusts the trail brace. No. 1 takes the shoulder guard from the right trail, passes it to the gunner, releases the trigger crank lever from the carrying position, opens the breech, and inspects the bore.

d. No. 3 places his ammunition chests between the trails in rear of the trail brace.

e. The gunner places the aiming stakes, pointed ends to the left, under the trail brace, attaches the shoulder guard and sight to the gun, and tests the elevating and traversing mechanisms.

f. Any deficiencies noted by members of the squad are reported to the gunner.

g. The members of the squad then take post as follows. (See fig. 60.)

(1) Sergeant, facing to the front, 2 paces to the left of and on line with the muzzle.

(2) Gunner, 2 paces to the left of, on line with, and facing the breech.

(3) No. 1, 2 paces to the right of, on line with, and facing the breech.

(4) Nos. 2, 3, 4, 5, and 6 (mule leader) form from right to left facing to the front 2 paces in rear of the trails.

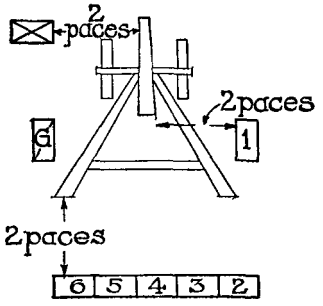


FIGURE 60.—The prepare for action formation of the 37-mm gun squad

h. No. 4 places his ammunition chests on the ground on line with and touching his toes.

i. As soon as the squad is posted the gunner reports, "Gun correct" (or the deficiencies noted).

351. Action.—The 37-mm gun may go into action either on wheels or on tripod. In action, should conditions demand a short, rapid change of position, the gun may be moved, without dismounting, by the most expeditious means.

a. The commands are: 1. ***On wheels (on tripod)***, 2. ***ACTION.*** At the command the sergeant indicates the gun position to the gunner, obtains firing data, and any other information necessary. For indirect laying, No. 5 will accompany the sergeant in order to drive aiming stakes when necessary; after the stakes are driven he will then take his post in rear of the gun.

The sergeant transmits the firing data to the squad and takes a position from which he can observe, direct, and control the fire. For drill purposes the gunner places the telescopic sight on the gun unless the sergeant designates otherwise. As soon as the gunner has received the fire order he adjusts the sight and lays on the aiming point indicated. At the announcement of ***one round*** by the sergeant, No. 1 loads. The gunner, having completed the laying, commands: ***FIRE.*** At this command No. 1 fires or simulates the firing of the gun.

b. The squad being either in line or in squad column, and the gun on wheels, to form for action on wheels, the commands are: 1. ***On wheels,*** 2. ***ACTION.*** The squad executes ***prepare for action,*** except that the gunner and No. 1 take firing positions (which are prone) on the left and right trails, respectively. For drill purposes all other members of the squad take a prone position 5 paces in rear of the trails. No. 4 places his ammunition chests by his side.

c. The squad being either in line or in squad column and the gun on wheels, to form for action on tripod, the commands are: 1. ***On tripod,*** 2. ***ACTION.***

(1) If marching the squad halts.

(2) Nos. 1 and 2 turn the gun to the right-about, with the left wheel as a pivot, until the muzzle points directly to the front and ground the trail spades. No. 2 removes the cleaning brush staff and passes it to No. 4.

(3) Nos. 3 and 4 each drops one ammunition chest 5 paces in rear of the gun position and retains the other. They then remove the barrel and cradle to the left. (See par. 348 *a* (3).)

(4) Nos. 5 and 1 remove the axle and wheels from the tripod. No. 5 moves the axle and wheels to a position in rear of the gun. For drill purposes the wheels are moved 8 paces in rear of and 1 pace to the right of the right trail spade. No. 1 straddles the trails, grasps them between his knees and adjusts the front leg while No. 2 unstraps and spreads the trails and adjusts the trail brace.

(5) Nos. 3 and 4 replace the barrel and cradle on the tripod. No. 3 locks the trunnion caps. No. 4 fastens the elevating screw latch, withdraws the cleaning brush staff from the bore and places it on the ground under the gun and releases the trigger crank lever. They place their two remaining ammunition chests between the trails in rear of the trail brace.

(6) No. 1 takes the shoulder guard from the right trail, and hands it to the gunner; he then takes his firing position on the right trail and inspects the bore.

(7) No. 4 secures the two ammunition chests which he and No. 3 dropped in rear of the gun.

(8) The gunner places the aiming stakes, pointed ends to the left, under the trail brace, attaches the shoulder guard and sight to the gun, and tests the elevating and traversing mechanisms.

(9) Members of the squad take firing positions as for on wheels action.

d. The squad being in squad column carrying the gun by hand, to form for action on tripod, the commands are: 1. ***On tripod,*** 2. ***ACTION.***

(1) Nos. 1 and 2 set up the tripod and place their ammunition chests between the trails in rear of the trail brace.

(2) Nos. 3 and 4 leave their ammunition chests 5 paces in rear of the gun position and mount the barrel and cradle on the tripod.

(3) No. 4 secures the ammunition chests which he and No. 3 have dropped.

(4) The gunner adjusts the shoulder guard and sight to the gun, inspects the elevating and traversing mechanisms.

(5) No. 1 inspects the bore.

(6) All members take positions as prescribed for action.

e. The squad being in squad column carrying the gun by hand, to form for action on wheels, the commands are: 1. ***On wheels,*** 2. ***ACTION.***

(1) If marching the squad halts.

(2) Nos. 1 and 5 assemble the trails and wheels. No. 5 does not lock the axle lock.

(3) No. 2 unstraps and spreads the trails and adjusts the trail brace.

(4) Nos. 3 and 4 replace the barrel and cradle on the tripod. No. 4 secures the ammunition chest carried by No. 3 and takes his post in rear of the trails.

(5) No. 1 passes the shoulder guard to the gunner and inspects the bore.

(6) The gunner places the aiming stakes, pointed ends to the left, under the trail brace, attaches the shoulder guard

and sight to the gun and tests the elevating and traversing mechanism.

(7) Members of the squad take position as prescribed for action.

352. Out of action.—*a.* The squad being in position either of prepare for action or on wheels action, to go out of action the command is: ***OUT OF ACTION.***

(1) The gunner removes the shoulder guard and passes it to No. 1; secures the sight and aiming stakes and stands clear.

(2) No. 1 adjusts the shoulder guard to the right trail, closes the breech, uncocks the gun and turns the trigger crank lever to the carrying position. He moves to the left of the trails the ammunition chests which were between the trails. He then locks the axle lock and releases the traversing screw lock while No. 2 closes and straps the trails and passes the cleaning brush staff through the lunette swivels.

(3) The squad forms in squad column unless otherwise directed.

b. The squad being in position of on tripod action, to go out of action with the gun mounted on wheels, the commands are: 1. ***On wheels,*** 2. ***OUT OF ACTION.***

(1) The shoulder guard and sight are secured as described in *a* (1) above.

(2) No. 3 secures one ammunition chest from No. 4. Nos. 3 and 4 remove the barrel and cradle to the left.

(3) No. 1 moves to the left of the trails the ammunition chests which were between the trails.

(4) Nos. 1 and 2 close and strap the trails.

(5) No. 1 raises the front end of the trails, folds back and secures the front leg.

(6) Nos. 1 and 5 assemble the axle and wheels to the trails.

(7) Nos. 3 and 4 mount the barrel and cradle on the carriage.

(8) All members secure their loads.

(9) The squad forms in squad column unless otherwise directed.

c. The squad being in position of on tripod action, to go out of action with loads carried by hand, the commands are: 1. ***By hand,*** 2. ***OUT OF ACTION.***

(1) The gunner removes the shoulder guard and sight and secures his load.

(2) No. 1 places the shoulder guard on the right trail, moves the ammunition chests to the left of the trails and stands clear.

(3) No. 3 takes an ammunition chest from No. 4. Nos. 3 and 4 remove the barrel and cradle from the tripod.

(4) Nos. 1 and 2 close and strap the trails.

(5) All members of squad secure their loads and form squad column.

353. **Firing.**—*a. Fire order.*—The original fire order (which contains the data for laying the gun for the first round) will contain the following data and will be given in the sequence shown:

(1) Original fire order for direct laying:

(*a*) Type of shell to be used.

(*b*) Deflection.

(*c*) Range.

(*d*) Aiming point.

(*e*) Number of rounds to be fired.

Example:

High explosive.
Right 10.
Nine hundred.
To your front, pine tree, base of tree.
One round.

(2) Original fire order for indirect laying:

(*a*) Type of shell to be used.

(*b*) Deflection.

(*c*) Angle of site.

(*d*) Range.

(*e*) Aiming point.

(*f*) Number of rounds to be fired.

Example:

High explosive.
Zero.
Zero.
Seven fifty.
Stake.
One round.

(3) The deflection and angle of site will always be announced, even if they are zero. Fire adjustment orders contain only the data which are to be changed and the number of rounds to be fired.

Example:

Correction for deflection and range—
Right 2.
Twelve hundred.
One round.
Correction for range only—
Thirteen hundred.
One round.

After fire has been adjusted, if five rounds are to be fired for effect the command is: ***FIVE ROUNDS.***

b. Duties during firing.—(1) The sergeant obtains firing data, observes, adjusts, directs, and controls the fire.

(2) The gunner takes position along the left trail and lays the gun in accordance with firing data given. When the command ***ROUNDS*** is received, the gunner gives the command ***FIRE*** for each round as soon as the gun is laid. In case several rounds are to be fired with the same data, as in fire for effect, the gunner relays the gun after each round. Firing may be simulated with dummy rounds.

(3) When indirect laying is used, as soon as the gun is put into position and the angle of site is announced by the sergeant the gunner determines the minimum range.

(4) No. 1 takes position on the right trail and at the command ***ROUNDS,*** loads the gun. At the command ***FIRE,*** given by the gunner, No. 1 immediately fires the gun by pressing down on the trigger crank lever with the thumb of his right hand. As soon as the gun returns to battery, No. 1 opens the breech with an upward jerk on the breech block lever. During drill with dummy rounds the recoil and return to battery are simulated. When more than one round is ordered, No. 1 keeps count of the rounds fired by calling out, "First round, second round, third round, fourth round, fifth, last round." When the number of rounds ordered has been fired the breech is left open and No. 1 does not reload the gun until the next number of rounds to be fired is ordered.

(5) Nos. 2, 3, 4, 5, and 6 (mule leader) maintain the ammunition supply.

(6) Movements of all members of the squad during simulated combat firing are made under simulated combat conditions unless otherwise ordered.

c. Cease firing.—At the command ***CEASE FIRING,*** firing stops and the gun is unloaded. Sight setting is not changed until a new fire order or adjustment order is given. The command or signal for cease firing may be given at any time.

SECTION II

3-INCH TRENCH MORTAR DRILL

354. Object.—The primary purpose of 3-inch trench mortar drill is to teach all members of the trench mortar squad the duties of each member, in carrying the mortar and equipment, in executing simple movements with the mortar and equipment, in putting the mortar in and out of action, and in serving the mortar during firing.

355. Equipment.—*a.* The following articles of equipment are required for 3-inch trench mortar drill:

Mount.
Barrel.
Base plate.
Cleaning rod.
Clinometer.
Short-handled shovel.
Gunner's pouch (containing tommy bar, combination wrench, extra base cap, and anvil pillar).
8 rounds of dummy ammunition.
4 sandbags.
2 shell carriers.
2 aiming stakes.
1 pair field glasses.
1 compass.
2 sets fire-control tables.

b. Equipment is carried by the individual members of the mortar squad as follows:

(1) *Sergeant.*—Field glass, compass, and fire-control tables.

(2) *Gunner.*—Clinometer, fire-control tables, four rounds of dummy ammunition in carrier, cleaning rod, and two aiming stakes.

(3) *No. 1.*—The mount.

(4) *No. 2.*—The barrel and gunner's pouch.

(5) *No. 3.*—The base plate, short-handled shovel, and four sandbags.

(6) *No. 4.*—Four rounds of dummy ammunition in carrier.

(7) *No. 5.*—If present, carries the gunner's ammunition.

c. Grounding equipment.—At the original assembly with equipment and at all halts, loads are grounded without command as follows:

(1) No. 1 places the mount in front of him, legs to the right with cross stays up.

(2) No. 2 places the barrel in front of him, base cap of the barrel to the right with traversing screw up.

(3) No. 3 places his load in front of him, bottom of base plate up, rope handle to the right, the handle of the shovel being inserted through the rope handle of the base plate, the shovel lying on top of the base plate, face up, handle to the right. The sandbags, neatly folded, are placed under the handle of the shovel and near the blade.

(4) The gunner places the cleaning rod and aiming stakes in front of him, handle of the cleaning rod and points of the aiming stakes to the right, and his ammunition in the carriers, on the ground in front of the cleaning rod and aiming stakes. No. 4 places his ammunition on the ground in front of his feet.

(5) All equipment will be on line parallel to the front of the squad and touching the toes of the man by whom it is carried.

d. Taking equipment.—At all preparatory commands for movement, loads are taken as follows:

(1) Nos. 1, 2, and 3 place their loads on their left shoulders. The base cap of barrel, the legs of mount, the handle of cleaning rod, the handle of shovel, and the points of aiming stakes are all toward the front. The weight of the base plate is supported on the shovel handle.

(2) The gunner (or No. 5 if No. 5 is present) and No. 4 put on the ammunition jackets.

356. To form the squad.—The squad is formed, less transportation, as prescribed in paragraph 317.

357. To secure equipment.—*a.* Normally, equipment for mortar drill is secured before the squad is formed. At any time after the squad has been formed, to secure equipment the command is: ***SECURE EQUIPMENT FOR MORTAR DRILL.*** At this command the men fall out and each secures the equipment prescribed in paragraph 355 *a.*

b. After the equipment is secured the squad assembles without command in the formation prescribed in paragraph 317.

358. To change numbers and duties in the squad.—Executed in the same manner as prescribed in paragraph 345.

359. To form squad column.—The squad being in any formation, to form squad column the command is: ***SQUAD COLUMN.*** The members of the squad follow the squad leader with easy marching distance in the following order:

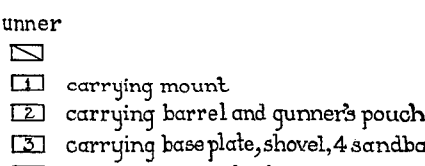

Gunner
1 carrying mount
2 carrying barrel and gunner's pouch
3 carrying base plate, shovel, 4 sandbags
4 carrying 4 rounds dummy ammunition
5

FIGURE 61.—The 3-inch trench mortar squad in squad column formation, mortar carried by hand

360. To assemble the squad.—The squad being in any formation, to assemble the squad the commands are: 1. ***Assemble,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** If marching the sergeant halts. All members of the squad move at a run toward the sergeant and form in squad column as prescribed in paragraph 359.

361. Prepare for action.—The squad being in any formation, to assemble the mortar preparatory to putting it in position to fire, the command is: ***PREPARE FOR ACTION.***

a. If marching, the squad halts.

b. No. 3 grounds his load in front of him.

c. Nos. 1 and 2 assemble the mortar (except that the base cap is not placed on the base plate) and place it, muzzle to the front, in an upright position, base cap 2 paces in front of and 1 pace to the left of No. 3.

d. The gunner hands the cleaning rod to No. 1 and places his ammunition on the ground 2 paces to the left of the base plate.

e. No. 1 removes the muzzle cap, sponges out the barrel and places the cleaning rod, handle to the rear, on the cross stays while No. 2 tests the elevating and traversing mechanism by turning each handle and places both screws at center.

f. Nos. 4 and 5, respectively, ground their loads to the left of and on line with the load of No. 3, so that these loads will

be directly in front of the number to whom the particular load pertains when the squad has taken post as prescribed below.

g. No. 1 then braces his right leg against the rear side of the mount and lifts the rear of the barrel while No. 2 removes the base cap and examines the parts to see that—

(1) All parts are clean.

(2) The anvil pillar is screwed firmly into the base cap and is not bent.

(3) The bore of the barrel is clean and not too oily.

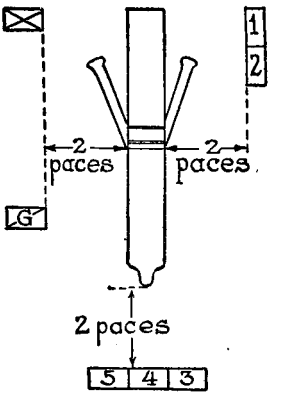


FIGURE 62.—The prepare for action formation of the trench mortar squad

h. No. 2 then screws the base cap tightly on the barrel.

i. No. 1 lowers the rear end of the barrel to the ground and replaces the muzzle cap.

j. Any deficiency noted by members of the squad is reported to the gunner.

k. The members of the squad then take post as follows (see fig. 62):

(1) *Sergeant.*—Two paces to the left of and on line with the muzzle, facing to the front.

(2) *Gunner.*—Two paces to the left of, on line with the base cap, and facing the mortar.

(3) *No. 1.*—Two paces to the right of, on line with, and facing the muzzle.

(4) *No. 2.*—On the left of No. 1 facing the mortar.

(5) *Nos. 3, 4, and 5 (mule leader).*—Form right to left 2 paces in rear of the base cap, facing to the front.

l. As soon as the squad is posted, the gunner reports "mortar correct" (or the deficiencies noted).

362. Action.—The squad being in any formation, to prepare the mortar to fire upon a target, the command is: ***ACTION.***

a. The sergeant indicates the position for the mortar and obtains firing data and any other information necessary. He transmits the firing data to the squad and takes a position from which he can observe, direct, and control the fire.

b. The squad executes ***prepare for action*** under the supervision of the gunner.

c. As soon as he receives the firing data, the gunner assisted by No. 3 sets out aiming stakes if required. The gunner then establishes the location and direction of the base plate pit in the following manner: Resting the base plate upon the ground on one of its longer edges, he aligns its upper edge toward the target along the line established by the stakes or other aiming point, and marks on the ground the line determined by the lower edge. The base plate is then placed flat on the ground, bottom-side up, with the shorter center line of the plate in coincidence with the line on the ground. No. 2 stands on the base plate to hold it firmly in position while No. 1 outlines its four edges on the ground with the shovel. The base plate pit is then dug by No. 1 within the lines thus made, except that the front edge of the pit is dug as far forward as is necessary to shape the pit properly. When the pit is dug, and properly revetted, when necessary, the base plate is placed in the pit by No. 2.

d. The mortar is then placed in position by No. 1 and No. 2.

e. No. 1 places himself in front of the mortar, grasps both legs of the mount, and moves the leg backward or forward as directed by the gunner until the approximate elevation that is to be used is obtained. The gunner then moves to the rear of the mortar and by sighting along the aiming line of the mortar and the stakes directs No. 1 to move the legs to the right or left until the approximate direction is obtained.

f. No. 2 then places sandbags on the legs, and No. 1 as directed by the gunner gives the mortar the exact direction by means of the traversing handle. The gunner, using the clinometer, then adjusts the mortar to the exact elevation by means of the elevating handle.

g. No. 3, assisted by No. 2 and No. 4, prepares ammunition for firing.

h. Members of the squad then take posts as follows:

(1) Gunner on the left of the mortar near the muzzle where he can make corrections in elevation and direction.

(2) No. 1 on the right of the mortar near the muzzle in a position to load.

(3) No. 2 on the left of No. 1.

(4) No. 3 in a position where he can supply ammunition to No. 2.

(5) No. 4 in a position to assist No. 3.

(6) No. 5 (mule leader) places himself in a position to assist No. 3.

363. Out of action.—The squad being either in position of prepare for action or action, to go out of action the command is: ***OUT OF ACTION.***

a. No. 1, assisted by No. 2, dismounts the mortar.

b. All members take their equipment and the squad forms in squad column unless otherwise directed by the sergeant.

364. Firing.—*a. Fire orders.*—The original fire order (which contains the data for laying the gun for the first round) will contain the data shown below and will be given in the sequence shown.

(1) Original fire order:

(*a*) Type of shell to be used.

(*b*) Range.

(*c*) Aiming point.

(*d*) Number of rounds to be fired.

The command — ***ROUNDS*** indicates that the mortar is to be laid at once and to be fired when so laid.

(2) Fire-adjustment orders contain only the data which are to be changed and the number of rounds to be fired.

Example:

LEFT ONE TURN.
ONE ROUND.

b. Duties during firing.—(1) The sergeant obtains firing data and observes, adjusts, directs, and controls the fire.

(2) The gunner takes post on the left of the muzzle and lays the mortar in accordance with the firing data given; he also calls out the number of the rings to be used on the shell. When the command — ***ROUNDS*** is received, the gunner gives the command ***FIRE*** for each round as soon as the mortar is laid.

In case several rounds are to be fired with the same data, as in fire for effect, the gunner relays the mortar after each round.

(3) No. 1, in position on the right of the muzzle, facing it, with his right foot near the lower part of the right leg of the mount, receives the prepared shell from No. 2. He holds the shell in both hands, grasping the fuze so that his right hand, palm up, covers the end of the safety fork, and the left hand, palm down, grasps the casing of the shell near the base. No. 2 withdraws the safety pin while the shell is held by No. 1. No. 1 then inserts the shell, with the fuze end up and the safety fork down, part way into the muzzle. He retains his grasp with both hands. At the gunner's command ***FIRE,*** No. 1, releasing the shell, allows it to slide down the barrel, and instantly removes his hands. After 5 to 10 rounds have been fired, No. 1 swabs out the barrel.

(4) No. 2 from position on the left of No. 1 makes a rapid inspection to insure that the shell is properly prepared for firing, hands the prepared shell to No. 1, and then withdraws the safety pin.

(5) No. 3, assisted by Nos. 2, 4, and 5 (mule leader), cleans the shell, paying particular attention to the head and base. He inspects the cartridge container to see that it is not bent and that the holes in the sides are free from oil or other substance. He then inserts the cartridge and puts on the number of rings ordered. (These duties may be performed by the ammunition squad.)

c. Misfires.—When a misfire occurs, No. 1 places his right leg behind the right leg of the mount, bracing the latter, and places his right hand, palm up, under the muzzle. No. 2 then lifts the base of the barrel until the shell slides slowly toward the muzzle. As soon as the shell has started forward, No. 1 places one or more fingers of his right hand over the muzzle and stops the shell when the tip of the fuze reaches the muzzle. He then ascertains the position of the safety fork and grasps the fuze so that the safety fork is held in place by the palm or fingers of his right hand. Keeping the palm or fingers of the right hand over the safety fork, he unscrews the casing of the shell from the fuze with his left hand. He then withdraws the shell from the barrel and passes the fuze and shell to No. 3, who replaces the safety pin and inspects the shell to determine the cause of the misfire. No. 2 unscrews the base cap and inspects the anvil pillar. The inspection being com-

pleted and the necessary repairs made, the base cap is replaced, the mortar put into position, and firing continued. If the inspection of the shell by No. 3 discloses a defect that he can promptly correct, that correction is made and the shell is again used. Otherwise the shell is discarded.

d. Cease firing.—At the command ***CEASE FIRING*** firing stops, the barrel is swabbed out. The laying of the mortar is checked unless a new fire order or adjustment order or the order to go out of action is given. The command for cease firing may be given at any time.

SECTION III

AMMUNITION DRILL

365. Object.—The object of ammunition drill is to teach all members of the squad the duties of each member in carrying and preparing ammunition for firing.

366. Equipment.—*a.* (1) The following equipment is required for ammunition drill: Four chests of 37-mm ammunition, twenty 3-inch mortar dummy shells, and a sufficient number of carriers and carrying slings for the mortar and 37-mm gun ammunition. Such additional ammunition is carried as the corporal directs.

(2) A load for one man is two chests of 37-mm gun ammunition or four rounds of 3-inch trench mortar ammunition. The mortar ammunition is carried in ammunition jackets or other authorized carriers. If no jackets or other carriers are issued, mortar ammunition is carried in burlap sacks, two shells in a sack.

(3) Equipment is carried by individual members of the ammunition squad as follows: Nos. 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5 each carry four rounds of 3-inch trench mortar dummy ammunition in an ammunition jacket or carrier; Nos. 6 and 7 each carry two chests of 37-mm gun ammunition by means of a carrying sling.

b. Grounding equipment.—At the original assembly with equipment and at all halts, loads are grounded without command, the individual members placing their ammunition in the carriers on the ground in front of them and on line with and touching their toes.

c. Taking equipment.—At all preparatory commands for movement loads are taken.

367. To form the ammunition squad.—The squad is formed, less transportation, as prescribed in paragraph 317.

368. To secure equipment.—*a.* Normally, equipment for ammunition drill is secured before the squad is formed. At any time after the squad has been formed, the squad being in any formation, to secure equipment the command is: ***SECURE EQUIPMENT FOR AMMUNITION DRILL.*** At this command the men fall out and each secures the equipment prescribed in paragraph 366.

b. After the equipment is secured the squad assembles without command in the formation prescribed in paragraph 317.

369. To change numbers and duties in the squad.—Executed in the same manner as prescribed in paragraph 345, except that there is no gunner in the ammunition squad.

370. To form squad column.—The squad being in any formation, to form the squad in column the command is: ***SQUAD COLUMN.*** The members of the squad follow the squad leader at easy marching distance in the following order (see fig. 63):

FIGURE 63.—The ammunition squad in squad column formation, loads carried by hand

371. To assemble the squad.—The squad being in any formation, the commands are: 1. ***Assemble,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** If marching the corporal halts. All members of the squad move at a run

toward the corporal and form in squad column as prescribed in paragraph 370.

372. Action.—The squad being in any formation and the platoon ammunition distributing point having been selected, to prepare mortar ammunition for firing, the command is: *ACTION.*

a. If marching, the squad halts and forms in line from right to left in the order No. 1, No. 2, No. 3, No. 4, No. 5, No. 6, No. 7 (mule leader). The right of the squad rests on the ammunition pile. The corporal remains in front of his squad in position to observe and direct their actions.

b. The corporal announces the number of rounds of mortar ammunition to be prepared.

c. Ammunition is prepared as follows: Nos. 1 and 2 open boxes and containers and distribute component parts of the shells to proper squad members. No. 3 cleans the shell, insuring that cosmoline is removed from the head and the base and from the holes in the cartridge container.

No. 3 unscrews the fuze hole plug.

No. 4 inserts the booster in the booster casing, open (red felt) end out.

No. 5 places the leather washer on the fuze, seating it well above the threads, and screws the fuze firmly on the shell casing.

No. 6 inserts a cartridge in the cartridge container and unless otherwise directed places three powder rings on the cartridge container, and stacks the ammunition in low piles containing not more than 20 rounds. These should be separated by not less than 20 yards.

No. 7 assists the other members as directed by the corporal.

d. As soon as the ammunition is prepared and piled all members of the squad take the prone position near the ammunition point.

e. When ammunition is made ready for use at some time in the future, the ammunition is prepared as described above, except that the cartridges are not inserted nor the cartridge rings attached. Shell beds are prepared for the separated piles of ammunition as follows:

A continuous embankment not less than 1 foot high and 2 feet thick is thrown up so that the stacked ammunition will be inclosed. Arrangements are made for drainage of the shell bed.

373. Out of action.—The squad being in the position of action, to go out of action, the command is: ***OUT OF ACTION.*** All unassembled components of 3-inch trench mortar shells are repacked in their containers. Surplus prepared ammunition is disposed of as prescribed by the corporal. All members of the squad take their proper loads and the squad forms in squad column unless otherwise directed by the corporal.

CHAPTER 13

EXTENDED ORDER—THE HOWITZER COMPANY

	Paragraphs
SECTION I. General	374–376
II. The howitzer squad	377–380
III. The howitzer platoon	381–391

SECTION I

GENERAL

374. General.—Extension is governed by the mission, the nature of the ground and the necessity for control. Well-trained troops can, without sacrificing control, be deployed with greater distances and intervals than troops poorly trained. Within the squad, intervals and distances will be not less than 5 paces and may vary as cover and the tactical situation demand.

375. Rules.—*a.* Extended-order drill is executed at ease.

b. The platoon is the largest unit which executes extended order as a drill.

c. Deployment is executed normally from column, but may be executed from any formation.

d. Direction should be designated prior to deployment. Direction may be indicated by designating some prominent object or by signal. If deployment is to be made in a direction varying greatly from the direction of advance, the unit changes direction before deploying. If no direction is indicated, the unit deploys straight to the front.

e. The right squad or the leading squad is the base of deployment unless another squad is indicated as base.

f. When deployed, howitzer company units advance, halt, move by the flank, resume the forward march, pass from quick to double time and the reverse as prescribed in close-order drill.

g. Movement may be interrupted by the command or signal for, ***Halt, Lie down, By hand, On wheels, or Action.***

h. In any movement in which the guns and equipment are removed from the transportation, the carts are moved to the nearest available cover, unless otherwise directed.

i. Advantage should be taken of cover, both natural and artificial.

j. Deployment is made as rapidly as loads carried, distance to be covered, and terrain permit.

k. Normally, units are deployed by signal.

l. The platoon may be deployed by assigning each squad a position and a route of approach.

376. Preliminary training.—Instruction in gun drill, camouflage, and utilization of cover should precede extended order.

SECTION II

THE HOWITZER SQUAD

377. Formations, with transportation.—The deployed formations of the squads are as shown in Figure 64.

378. Being in any formation, to deploy the squad.—The command is: ***SQUAD COLUMN.*** At this command squads take formations as follows:

a. The 37-mm gun squad with transportation, as shown in Figure 64.

b. The 37-mm gun squad, the gun being drawn by hand, as shown in Figure 58.

c. The 37-mm gun squad, the gun being carried by hand, as shown in Figure 59.

d. The 3-inch trench mortar squad, with transportation, as shown in Figure 64.

e. The 3-inch trench mortar squad, the mortar being carried by hand, as shown in Figure 61.

f. The ammunition squad, with transportation, as shown in Figure 64.

g. The ammunition squad, less transportation, as shown in Figure 63.

Intervals and distances may be varied by inserting after the preparatory command the command giving the desired distances; for example, ***At 10 paces.***

379. To assemble the squad.—The commands are: 1. ***Assemble,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** The members move toward the squad leader and assemble in column of files, if transportation is not present; around carts if transportation is present.

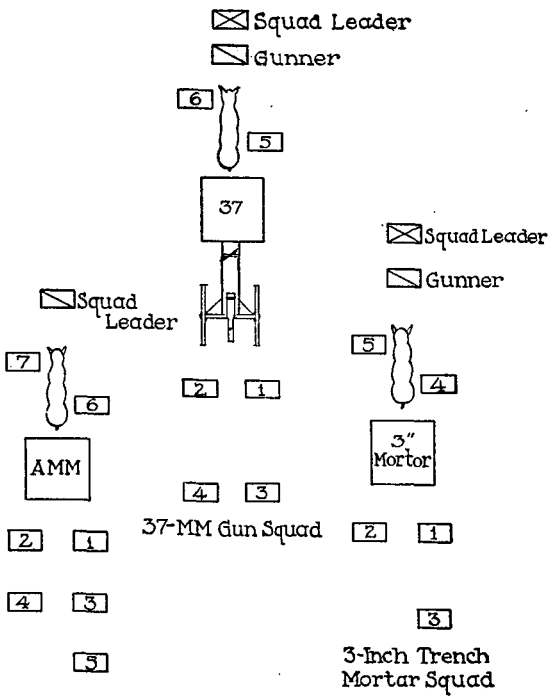


FIGURE 64.—The extended-order formation, with transportation, of each squad of the howitzer platoon

380. Duties and positions of the squad leader.—The position of the squad leader is at the head of the squad during movement. At drill he should be in such position as best to observe and instruct. He is responsible that the men keep proper intervals and distances and make use of cover.

SECTION III

THE HOWITZER PLATOON

381. Duties and position of the platoon leader.—The platoon leader goes wherever his presence is required. During movement he is generally on the side toward the enemy; when

the platoon is in action, he occupies a position from which he can direct and observe fire and control his squads. He deploys the platoon and makes such personal reconnaissance for positions and routes as may be necessary or directed by higher commanders.

382. **Duties and position of platoon sergeant.**—The platoon sergeant is the second in command. When the platoon commander is within controlling distance, the platoon sergeant follows in rear of the platoon during movement and insures its orderly advance. He supervises the supply of ammunition and performs such other duties as the platoon leader may prescribe.

383. **Duties of transport corporal.**—The transport corporal marches at the rear of the carts of the platoon and insures their orderly advance. After ***Off carts*** has been executed, he takes charge of the carts and disposes of them in accordance with orders from the platoon leader; in case orders are not issued, the transport corporal takes the carts to the nearest available cover. During action, he is responsible for the movement of ammunition from the battalion ammunition distributing point to the platoon ammunition distributing point.

384. **Duties of the agent corporal.**—When the platoon is deployed, the agent corporal has charge of the runners and conducts them to the rear of the leading or center squad; they conform to the formation and movement of the squad. During action he is at the command post of the supported rifle unit. The runners are utilized as directed by the platoon leader.

385. **Formations.**—The formations of the platoon are line of squad columns, squad columns echeloned, and platoon column. (Fig. 65.) Normal interval between squads is 50 paces.

386. **To form line of squad columns.**—*a.* The platoon being in any formation, to form line of squad columns the command is: ***SQUAD COLUMNS.*** Each squad leader commands: ***SQUAD COLUMN,*** and leads his unit in the required direction. The leading or right squad, unless otherwise directed, moves straight to the front, and the other squads move to the left of the base squad, moving at an increased gait until they have gained the required interval and are abreast of the leading squad, whereupon they conform to the movements of the right squad. To form line of squad columns at other than normal intervals, the platoon leader commands: ***SQUAD COLUMNS***

AT (75, 30, 20) PACES. Deployment may be made to the right by the command: ***SQUAD COLUMNS, RIGHT.*** The movement is executed as described above, except that each squad deploys to the right of the squad preceding it.

b. To form squad columns, echeloned, the command is: ***SQUAD COLUMNS, ECHELONED.*** The execution is the same as is prescribed in *a* above, except that each squad in rear moves so that its head is on a line with the tail of the preceding squad.

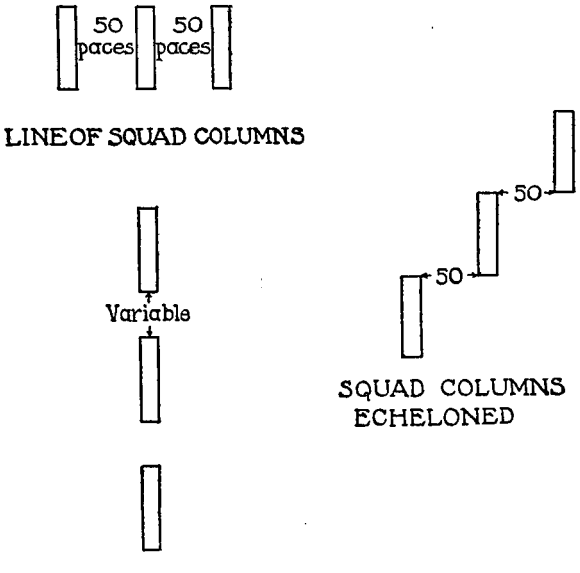


FIGURE 65.—Extended-order formations of the howitzer platoon

387. To form platoon column.—The platoon being in any formation, to form platoon column, the command is: ***PLATOON COLUMN.*** (Fig. 65.) In this formation the squads in squad column follow each other. When the situation requires speed, the movement is executed as rapidly as conditions permit.

388. To assemble the platoon.—The platoon leader takes post at or designates the point at which the platoon is to assemble and commands: 1. ***Assemble,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** Each squad leader assembles his squad and conducts it to the point of assembly. The platoon assembles in column of squads. The squads of a platoon can be assembled by the command or signal: ***SQUADS ASSEMBLE.***

389. Extended-order exercises.—*a. General.*—(1) As soon as a unit has had instruction in the formations of extended order sufficient to enable it to deploy easily and quickly in any direction and from any formation, it should be given simple extended-order exercises. These should coordinate the mechanism of entended order with the proper use of ground and various types of cover under assumed tactical situations.

(2) The following points should be stressed in this phase of training:

(*a*) Approach to a position.

(*b*) Movement from one firing position to another.

(*c*) Advancing over rough ground and through woods in various formations, with and without carts.

(*d*) Selection, occupation, construction, and concealment of gun positions.

(*e*) Supply of ammunition.

(*f*) Speed in going into action.

(*g*) Practice at night.

b. Methods of conducting exercises.—(1) The instructor selects suitable ground, prepares a simple tactical situation embracing one or more of the points outlined above, and insures that the unit undergoing instruction is properly equipped for the exercise. The unit is then conducted to the vicinity of the ground selected for the purpose. The instructor explains the purpose and nature of the exercise, and outlines the assumed tactical situation. The unit then carries out the mission which is implied in the statement of the tactical situation or which has been announced by the instructor.

(2) Exercises involving such movement as an approach to a firing position, going into action, and concealment of gun positions are made more instructive and interesting by detailing a part of the unit or other units to watch the exercise from the assumed location of the enemy. The importance of skillful use of ground and cover and of the proper handling of gun equipment is thus emphasized and understood.

(3) Every extended-order exercise should be concluded by a critique. The entire unit undergoing instruction is assembled for this purpose. The instructor will comment upon the performance of lessons learned in gun drill and laying, if applicable, as well as the application of formations and movements prescribed for extended order.

390. Selection and occupation of position.—Since the object of extended-order drill is to facilitate the approach to, and occupation of position, the use of covered routes should be emphasized. Squad leaders should be trained in the selection of exact gun positions with a view to accomplishment of missions assigned and utilization of cover.

391. Supply.—Exercises should be given in supplying the guns with ammunition. The ammunition squad should be required to establish the platoon ammunition distributing point and practice in the preparation and carrying of ammunition.

CHAPTER 14

THE SERVICE COMPANY OF THE REGIMENT

392. Introduction.—*a.* The service company as a unit does not, in general, engage in prescribed drills. Its personnel, being specialists, receive their principal instruction and training in the practical application of their respective duties as prescribed in the training publications covering their specialties. In addition to this instruction, short drills must be conducted for the purpose of developing physical qualifications, discipline, equitation, and skill and accuracy in driving.

b. For discipline and control, the company, in whole or in part, may be drilled in the close-order movements prescribed for the rifle company, platoon, section, and squad; drills may also be conducted to prepare for ceremonies, inspections, street parades, and marches.

393. Organization.—*a. Administrative organization.*—The organization of the service company is shown in Tables of Organization. It is composed of a company headquarters, a headquarters platoon, and a transportation platoon.

(1) The *company headquarters* comprises the personnel charged with the administration and interior economy of the company.

(2) The *headquarters platoon* comprises the personnel charged with regimental administration, supply, and personnel work; it is divided into a staff section and a supply section.

(*a*) The *staff section* comprises that personnel of the service company charged with regimental work.

(*b*) The *supply section* comprises that personnel charged with all factors pertaining to the supply of the regiment.

(3) The *transportation platoon* comprises that personnel required for the maintenance and operation of the regimental combat and field trains. It is divided into a platoon headquarters, a headquarters section, a howitzer company section, and three battalion sections.

(*a*) The *transportation platoon headquarters* comprises that personnel charged with the administration of the platoon and

the maintenance and operation of the transportation pertaining to the service company itself.

(*b*) The *headquarters section* comprises that personnel charged with the maintenance and operation of the train transportation pertaining to regimental headquarters and the headquarters company.

(*c*) The *howitzer company section* comprises that personnel which maintains and operates the train transportation pertaining to the howitzer company.

(*d*) The *battalion sections* each comprises that personnel which maintains and operates the transportation of a battalion of the regiment.

b. Organization for drill.—(1) To enable the service company to engage in close-order drills and to take part in such regimental formations as it may be required to attend, the company is divided into five sections: The administrative section, the regimental section, and the three battalion sections.

(2) For convenience in giving commands and for reference, the designations "administrative section" and "regimental section" are employed.

(*a*) The *administrative section* comprises the combined enlisted personnel of the staff section, the supply section, and company headquarters.

(*b*) The *regimental section* comprises the combined enlisted personnel of the headquarters, headquarters section, and the howitzer company section of the transportation platoon.

394. Formations and drill without transportation.—*a. General.*—(1) The service company is combined with the other special units of the regiment into a temporary organization which is commanded by the senior officer present with it, or as directed by the regimental commander.

(2) Formations, except as otherwise prescribed herein, and close-order drill, both without transportation, are in general as prescribed in Section III, Chapter 5. The movements prescribed for platoons are executed by sections of the service company, and the duties, positions, and commands of platoon leaders are those of section leaders of that company. The only subdivision of the drill section is the squad.

(3) For company close-order drill, the personnel is all dismounted. For regimental drills, ceremonies, and inspections, without transportation, the company commander, first sergeant,

and officers and noncommissioned officers temporarily on the staff of the commander of the combined special units, are mounted.

(4) When the regimental special units are combined, the service company forms as the left unit in line and the rear unit in column. It conforms as far as practicable to the formations and movements of the rifle company in battalion drill.

b. Formations.—The formations of the company are of two classes: Assembly formations and drill formations.

(1) The assembly formations consist of formation in line and formation in column.

(*a*) At assembly formation in line (see fig. 66 ①) the elements of the company are arranged from right to left as follows: Staff section, supply section, company headquarters, transportation platoon headquarters, headquarters section, howitzer company section, first battalion section, second battalion section, third battalion section. Sections are formed in three ranks.

(*b*) At assembly formation in column (see fig. 66 ③), the company is disposed as follows from front to rear: Administrative section, regimental section, first battalion section, second battalion section, third battalion section. Elements of the administrative and regimental sections are formed in the same order from right to left as in the formation of the company in line.

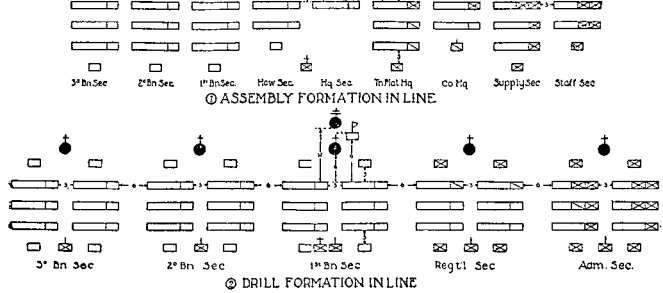
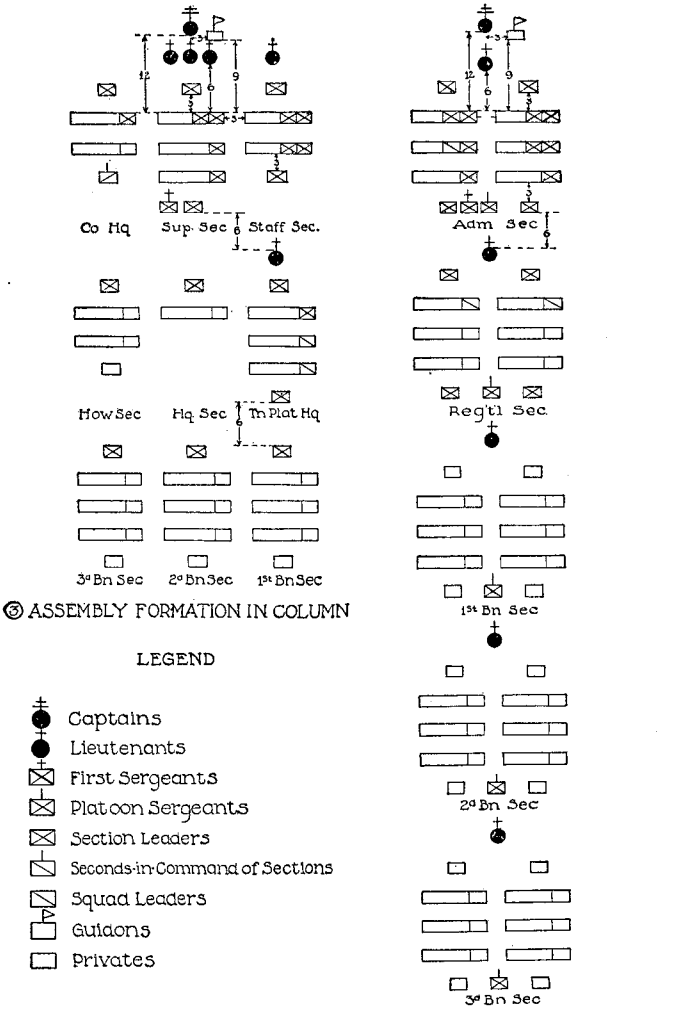


FIGURE 66 ① ②.—Formation of the service company without transportation



③ ASSEMBLY FORMATION IN COLUMN

④ DRILL FORMATION IN COLUMN

FIGURE 66 ③ ④.—Formation of the service company without transportation

(*c*) The service company does not drill while in assembly formations.

(2) *To form the company in assembly formation.*—(See fig. 66 ① and ③.) (*a*) The first sergeant takes position 9 paces in front of the point where the center of the company is to be, faces it, and commands: ***FALL IN.*** The staff section is formed, facing to the front, at such point that the center of the company when in line or the leading section when in column will be 9 paces from and opposite the first sergeant. The right flank men in the front rank of the other sections place themselves at prescribed intervals or distances from the right or leading section; section leaders take post 3 paces in front of the points where the centers of their sections will be; the sections form in their proper places supervised by the section leader. The section leaders then verify their sections and command: 1. ***Inspection,*** 2. ***ARMS,*** 3. ***Order,*** 4. ***ARMS,*** face about, and at the command ***REPORT,*** given by the first sergeant, each in turn, beginning with the right or leading section, reports: "Staff section (supply section, etc.) present or accounted for," or "— men absent." The first sergeant then faces about and reports: "Sir, all present or accounted for," or "Sir, — men absent," and without command takes his post.

(*b*) The company commander places himself 12 paces in front of the center of and facing the company when in line, or the leading section when in column, in time to receive the report of the first sergeant.

(*c*) The lieutenants take their posts when the first sergeant has reported.

(*d*) The company, not under arms, is formed in like manner, omitting reference to arms.

(*e*) In forming the company, all who are required to make a report, salute; they maintain the first position of salute until it is returned.

(3) *To form the company for drill.*—The company being in assembly formation, the company commander directs the first sergeant to form the company for drill. (See fig. 66 ② and ④.) The first sergeant moves to a position 9 paces in front of the center of the company, faces it, and commands: ***FORM FOR DRILL.*** Officers fall out. The supply section and company headquarters close on the staff section in line or column, and form the administrative section; the headquarters

section and howitzer company section close on the transportation platoon headquarters in line or column, and form the regimental section. Sections form in their proper places, and are organized as rifle platoons by the section leaders. Upon the completion of the formation, the first sergeant faces about and reports: "Sir, the company is formed," and takes his post. The company being formed, the company commander assigns the lieutenants to the command of the platoons.

395. Formations and drill of company with transportation.—*a. Organization.*—In taking part in regimental ceremonies, inspections, drills, and marches, with transportation, the service company is divided into two independent units—the service company (less transportation platoon), and the transportation platoon.

(1) The *service company* (less transportation platoon) is commanded by the company commander. It is formed and maneuvered as explained in paragraph 394. When sufficient personnel is not present to warrant the formation of this unit, the regimental commander may direct that the men present will join the transportation platoon and be assigned to wagons, or assign them otherwise as circumstances may require. The company commander then commands the transportation platoon, riding at its head. Mounted enlisted men, whose duties do not require them to be elsewhere, join the transportation platoon and march at its head, in rear of the platoon commander.

(2) (*a*) The *transportation platoon* is charged with the maintenance and operation of the regimental trains. For drills, ceremonies, and inspections the trains of the regiment are divided into four sections: The combined special unit train and three battalion trains. The battalion trains are commanded by the assistant wagonmaster of the battalion section of the transportation platoon; the combined special unit train is commanded by its senior assistant wagonmaster.

(*b*) Such men of the transportation platoon as are not individually mounted ride on the vehicles of the section to which assigned.

(*c*) The trains, as to service, are divided into combat and field trains; as to organizations, they are divided into company sections which comprise the vehicles of the combat and field train pertaining to the respective companies.

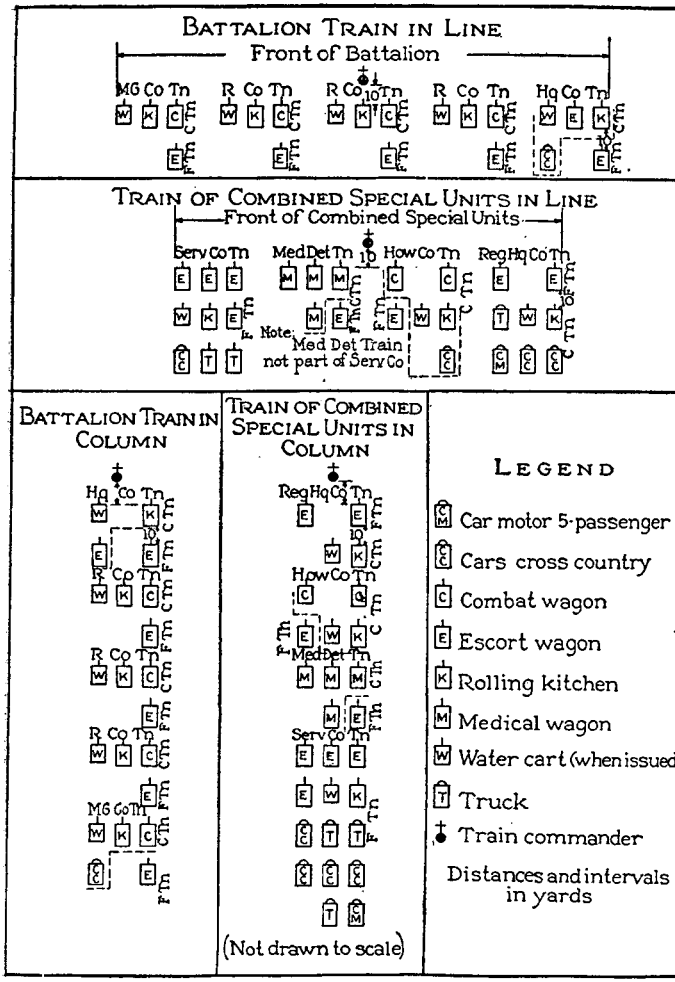


FIGURE 67.—Train formations

b. Train formations (see fig. 67).—(1) At regimental formations, the combined special unit and battalion trains take position as shown in Figures 71 and 72.

(2) For marches, unless otherwise directed, battalions and combined special unit combat trains follow their respective battalions or units, and the combat trains of the units attached to the battalions join the corresponding battalion combat train; field trains are consolidated and march at the tail of the regiment unless otherwise directed.

(3) The formations of the combined special unit and battalion trains for drills, ceremonies, and inspections are line and column; for marches, single column (column of vehicles).

(4) In formations in line, each company section of the various trains forms in rear of and covers the same frontage as the company to which it pertains. In formation in column, other than column of threes, the vehicles of the company sections are formed as shown in Figure 67, the frontage of the train column being the same as the frontage of the troop column.

(5) The formation of the vehicles in the various company sections is the same in line and in column. Vehicles are disposed as far as practicable in column of threes; the field train vehicles in rear of those of the combat train. The interval between vehicles is variable, depending on the frontage of the companies; the distance between vehicles is 10 yards. Distance is measured from the tail gate of one vehicle to the heads of the lead team of the vehicle next in rear.

c. Gaits.—The normal gait of draft animals of the company will be the walk, faster gaits being exceptional and limited to emergencies.

d. Alignments.—(1) When marching in line, company sections guide on the column of vehicles which marches immediately in rear of the train commander.

(2) In column of sections the guide is right.

(3) In successive formations, the guide is toward the base. Rear elements should halt short of the line and dress toward the base with precision, the line being established by the position of the drivers.

(4) *Being in line at a halt.*—If the company section on the side toward which the alignment is to be made is not in proper position, the train commander establishes it in the position desired, and commands: 1. ***Dress right (left)***, 2. ***DRESS.*** At the command ***DRESS*** the other vehicles move forward or backward, preserving their intervals, drivers turn their heads and eyes to the right and dress on the drivers of the vehicles

established as a basis of alignment. The train commander superintends the alignment. Drivers individually turn their heads and eyes to the front when their alignment is completed.

e. Battalion train movements.—(1) *Being in any formation to march to the front.*—The train commander commands or signals: 1. ***Forward,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** The movement is executed simultaneously by all vehicles. The trains of the special units, when combined, drill as a battalion train.

(2) *To halt the train.*—The train commander commands or signals: 1. ***Train,*** 2. ***HALT.*** All vehicles halt simultaneously.

(3) *To change direction.*—Being in section or single column, the train commander commands or signals: 1. ***Column right (left),*** 2. ***MARCH.*** The leading element changes direction to the right 90° followed by the other elements which turn on the same ground. As the pivot vehicle begins the turn, outside vehicles take up a fast walk, taking the gait of the inside vehicle on arriving abreast of it.

(4) *Being in line, to move in column to the flank.*—The train commander commands or signals: 1. ***Sections column right (left),*** 2. ***MARCH.*** The sections successively change direction to the right and follow in rear of the leading section.

(5) *Being in line, to form column of company sections.*—The train commander commands or signals: 1. ***Right (left) by sections,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** The right company section moves forward. When disengaged, the other sections in turn move forward, incline to the right, and follow the preceding section at a distance of 10 yards.

(6) *Being in column of sections, to form line to the front.*—The train commander commands or signals: 1. ***Right (left) front into line,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** The leading section moves straight to the front; each section in rear inclines to the right until opposite its place in line, and moves to the front. When the leading section has advanced the desired distance the train commander commands or signals: 1. ***Train,*** 2. ***HALT.*** The leading section halts and sections in rear halt when they arrive at their places in line.

(7) *Being in column of sections, to form line to flank.*—The train commander commands or signals: 1. ***Right (left) into line,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** The leading section executes ***column right.*** The other sections move forward and successively execute ***column right*** when by doing so they will be opposite their

positions in line (to the right of preceding section). The leading section is halted when it has advanced the desired distance; other sections halt when they arrive at their places in line.

f. Regimental train movements.—The regimental train commander indicates the formation to be taken; battalion and combined special unit train commanders move their trains into position independently in the most expeditious manner.

g. Signals.—For signals see Chapter 16.

h. The guidon.—(1) The guidon is carried in accordance with the principles outlined in Chapter 3, Part Two.

(2) The post of the guidon bearer in formation is as follows:

(*a*) In assembly formation, in line and column, the guidon bearer takes post on the right flank of the leading rank of the staff section.

(*b*) In drill formation, in line and column, the guidon bearer takes post 1 pace in rear and 3 paces to the right of the company commander.

(*c*) In the initial formation and subsequent movements, the guidon bearer takes post as herein prescribed without command.

CHAPTER 15

FORMATIONS OF THE BATTALION, REGIMENT, AND BRIGADE

		Paragraphs
SECTION I.	The battalion	396–400
II.	The regiment	401–407
III.	The brigade	408–409

SECTION I

THE BATTALION

396. General rules.—*a.* The battalion does not perform close-order drill but, in order that it can be formed and moved about conveniently for ceremonies, certain formations are prescribed.

b. Commands and orders.—(1) The commands or orders of the battalion commander are given either orally, by bugle, by signal, or by means of staff officers or orderlies who communicate the desired directions.

(2) In all close-order movements, except the manual of arms, or where otherwise prescribed, each company executes the necessary movements at the company commander's command of execution.

c. Movements.—(1) Each company commander moves his company from one formation to another by the most convenient means and route.

(2) Upon the completion of a movement ordered by the battalion commander, companies may be given ***at ease*** until another movement is begun, except at ceremonies.

(3) All movements, except the manual of arms, are executed independently by the companies of the battalion unless otherwise directed.

(4) Companies march at attention from one formation to another.

(5) After the battalion is halted, its subdivisions make no movement to correct alignment, intervals, or distances, unless directed by the battalion commander.

397. Formations of the battalion.—*a. For peace or reduced strength units.*

(1) Column of threes (fig. 69); a formation for marching on roads. Column of platoon masses may be used.

(2) Column of companies (fig. 69); a formation for inspections and shelter-tent pitching; not a march formation.

(3) Line (fig. 68); a formation for ceremonies only.

(4) Line of company masses (platoon mass) (fig. 68) (or column of twelves); a formation for ceremonies.

b. For war strength units.

(1) Column of threes (fig. 70); a formation for marching on roads. Column of platoon masses may be used.

(2) Column of company masses (fig. 70); a formation for ceremonies. For street parades, column of platoon masses may be used.

(3) Column of platoons (fig. 70); a formation for inspection and shelter-tent pitching; not a march formation.

(4) Line of company masses (fig. 70); a formation for ceremonies.

c. In forming the battalion, the companies are normally arranged from right to left or front to rear, as the case may be, in the following order: The headquarters company, the three rifle companies in alphabetical order, the machine-gun company.

d. When the battalion is in line of masses, the machine-gun company may be formed in column of masses or line of masses; the former is preferable for battalion ceremonies and the latter for regimental ceremonies.

e. To assume any formation the battalion commander indicates the character of the formation desired, the point where the right (left) of the battalion is to be, and the direction in which the line or column is to face.

f. The battalion is normally formed in column of threes.

g. A peace or reduced strength battalion conforms to the formations prescribed in Figures 68 and 69 as far as practicable.

h. The band.—The band when attached to the battalion is posted by the adjutant as prescribed in paragraph 399*b* (5) and *c* (2).

i. Attached units.—Attached units take position as directed by the battalion commander and conform to the movements of the units of the battalion.

j. Designation of units.—(1) In whatever direction the battalion faces, the companies are designated numerically from

right to left in line and from head to rear in column; that is, first company, second company, third company.

(2) The terms "right" and "left" apply to actual right and left as the troops face.

(3) The designation "center company" indicates the right center or the actual center company according to whether the number of companies is even or odd.

398. The staff.—*a. Composition.*—(1) The battalion commander's staff consists of the executive, the adjutant, intelligence officer, plans and training officer, and supply officer.

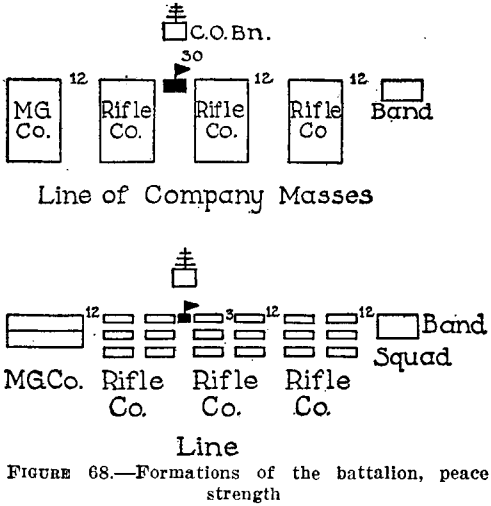


FIGURE 68.—Formations of the battalion, peace strength

(2) For the purposes of battalion ceremonies the following officers may be formed as a part of the staff: The communication officer, the surgeon, and the assistant surgeon.

(3) For ceremonies the following enlisted personnel form with the battalion commander's staff and consist of the following from the headquarters company: The sergeant major; the headquarters clerk; and the staff officers' orderlies.

b. Posts.—(1) In war strength organizations the plans and training officer is normally designated as the adjutant of the formation and takes post accordingly.

(2) The battalion adjutant, who commands the headquarters company, is with his company when it is formed as a unit. In peace strength organizations he performs the duties of all the battalion staff officers.

(3) The battalion commander supervises the formation from such positions as will best enable him to correct alignments, intervals, and distances. With his staff (less the adjutant and the plans and training officer) he takes post in time to receive the report.

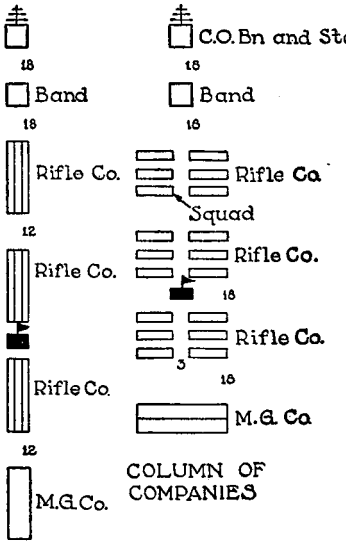


FIGURE 69.—Formations of the battalion, peace strength, companies formed as one platoon

(4) During route marches the supply officer, the two surgeons, the communication officer, and all enlisted personnel of the headquarters company march with their respective organizations unless otherwise directed.

399. To form the battalion.—*a. Line.*—(1) When the battalion is at peace or reduced strength, the formation will be as shown in Figures 68 and 69.

(2) The rifle companies march from the flank in column of threes to their respective places in line. The machine-gun companies approach from the rear. Each company commander commands: ***GUIDES ON THE LINE*** when his company arrives within 30 paces of its place in line. At this command the seconds in command of the leading and rear sections, without changing the position of their rifles, double time, place themselves on line with the adjutant, halt, and execute ***order arms,*** faced toward the adjutant.

(3) After halting the company, the company commander commands: 1. ***Left,*** 2. ***FACE,*** 3. ***Dress right,*** 4. ***DRESS.*** Section leaders dress their sections and command: 1. ***Ready,*** 2. ***FRONT.***

(4) The adjutant establishes the guides in the desired direction. When this alignment has been accomplished and all units of the battalion have been dressed and the officers and all others have reached their posts, the adjutant commands: 1. ***Guides,*** 2. ***POSTS.*** At this command the seconds in command (guides) take their posts in rear of their sections.

(5) The adjutant then takes post facing the battalion midway between the post of the battalion commander and the center of the battalion and commands: 1. ***Present,*** 2. ***ARMS.*** He then turns about, salutes, and reports to the battalion commander, "Sir, the battalion is formed."

(6) The battalion commander returns the salute and directs the adjutant, "Take your post, sir," and brings the battalion to the order.

(7) The adjutant takes his post by passing to the battalion commander's right.

b. Column of threes (peace or war strength).—(1) The company commanders will be informed of the formation to be taken, the place where the column is to form, and the direction in which it is to face.

(2) The adjutant takes post 6 paces in front of the point where the head of the battalion is to be so as to be facing the column when it is formed.

(3) *Adjutant's call* is then sounded, or the adjutant signals ***Assemble.***

(4) The companies are halted, at attention, successively from the front and in their proper order and positions.

(5) The band takes post so that there will be 18 paces between the rear of the band and the head of the leading company when the leading company has halted.

(6) Attached units take their position when the rear company has halted.

(7) Each company commander, when his company is in position, salutes the adjutant, who returns the salute. The former then faces toward his company and commands: ***AT EASE.***

(8) When the last unit commander has saluted and his salute has been returned, the adjutant brings the battalion to attention, faces the battalion commander, salutes and reports: "Sir, the battalion is formed." When his salute has been acknowledged he takes his post.

c. Line of company masses (peace or war strength).—(1) The company commanders will be informed of the place of the formation and the direction in which the battalion is to face.

(2) The band takes post as indicated in Figures 68 and 69.

(3) The adjutant takes post so as to be 6 paces to the right of the front rank of the right company when the battalion has formed, and faces in the direction in which the line is to extend.

(4) *Adjutant's call* is then sounded, or the adjutant signals ***Assemble.***

(5) When *Adjutant's call* has been sounded, or the adjutant has signaled the assembly, the band will play until the left company of the battalion has halted on the line.

(6) The companies, arriving from the rear, each in mass formation, are halted on the line successively from right to left and in their proper order and position.

(7) When each company arrives within 30 paces of the line it is to occupy, the company commander commands: ***GUIDES ON THE LINE.*** At this command the seconds in command of the flank sections, without changing the position of their rifles, double time, place themselves on line with the adjutant, halt, execute ***order arms*** and face toward the adjutant.

(8) The adjutant then establishes these guides in the desired direction.

(9) Each company commander halts his company 1 pace in rear of the line established by the guides who have been posted as in (7) above and commands: 1. ***Dress right,*** 2. ***DRESS.*** The first sergeant then dresses the company, com-

mands, 1. ***Ready,*** 2. ***FRONT,*** and takes his post. When the company is at reduced strength and consists of only one platoon, the platoon sergeant dresses the company.

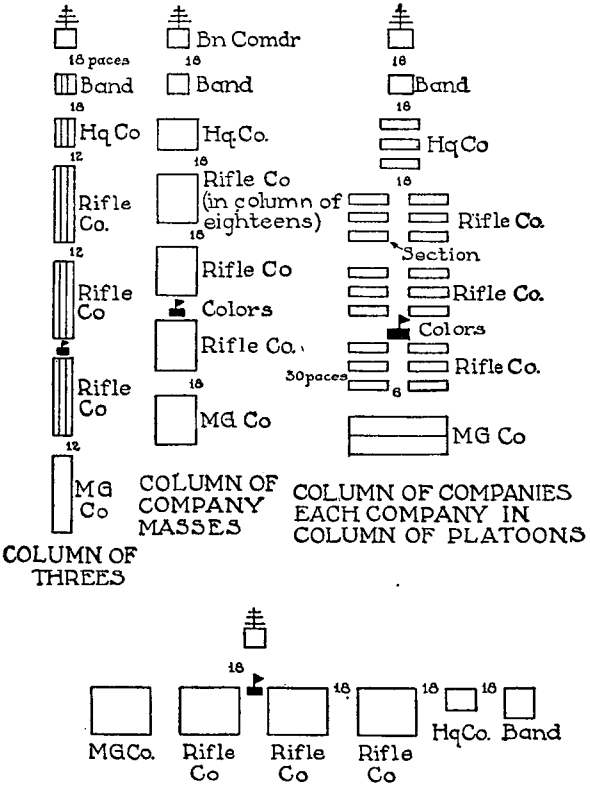


FIGURE 70.—Formations of the battalion, war strength

(10) After the adjutant has established the guides, he verifies the alignment of the lines of officers and noncommissioned officers from corresponding positions on the right. When this has been accomplished, and all units of the battalion have been

dressed and officers and all others have reached their posts, the adjutant from his original position commands: 1. ***Guides,*** 2. ***POSTS.*** At this command the guides take their posts.

(11) The adjutant then takes post facing the battalion midway between the post of the battalion commander and the center of the battalion and commands: 1. ***Present,*** 2. ***ARMS.*** He then turns about, salutes and reports to the battalion commander, "Sir, the battalion is formed."

(12) The battalion commander returns the salute and directs the adjutant: "Take your post, sir," and brings the battalion to the order.

(13) The adjutant takes his post by passing to the battalion commander's right.

400. To dismiss the battalion.—*a.* To dismiss the battalion the battalion commander commands: ***DISMISS YOUR COMPANIES.***

b. Each company commander salutes the battalion commander and marches his company off and dismisses it.

c. The battalion commander's command to dismiss the companies will be the signal for the staff, including its enlisted personnel, to fall out.

SECTION II

THE REGIMENT

401. General.—The regiment does not perform close-order drill but, in order that it can be formed and moved about conveniently for ceremonies, certain formations are prescribed.

402. Formations.—The formations of the regiment are—

a. For peace or reduced-strength units—

(1) Column of threes (fig. 71); a formation for marching on roads. Column of platoon masses may be used.

(2) Line of battalions, each battalion and company in line (fig. 71); a formation for inspections and ceremonies.

(3) Line of battalions, each battalion in line of company masses (platoon mass) (fig. 71); a formation for ceremonies.

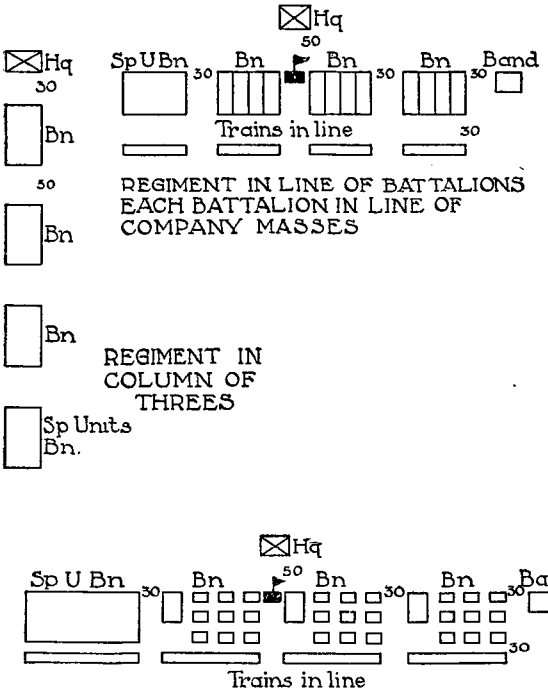
b. For war-strength units—

(1) Column of threes (fig. 73); a formation for marching on roads. Column of platoon masses may be used.

(2) Column of battalions, each battalion in column of company masses (fig. 73); a formation for ceremonies. For street parades, column of platoon masses may be used.

(3) Column of battalions, each battalion in line of company masses (fig. 73); a formation for ceremonies.

(4) Line of battalions, each battalion in line of company masses (fig. 72); a formation for ceremonies.



REGIMENT IN LINE OF BATTALIONS
EACH BATTALION AND COMPANY
IN LINE.

FIGURE 71.—Formations of the regiment, peace strength

(5) Line of battalions, each battalion in column of company masses (fig. 72); a formation for ceremonies.

(6) Line or column of battalions, each battalion in column of platoons (fig. 73); a formation for inspections and shelter-tent pitching; not a march formation.

403. **Rules for formations.**—*a.* In whatever formation the regiment may be, the battalions retain their permanent administrative designations: First, second, and third battalions. For convenience they may be designated, when in line, as right, center, or left battalion; when in column, as leading, center, or rear battalion. These designations apply to the actual positions of the battalions in line or column.

b. For all formations of the regiment, except column of threes, the headquarters company (less the commander of the communication platoon and all mounted enlisted men), the howitzer company, the service company (less the mounted officers and enlisted men of the headquarters platoon, and the transportation platoon), and the attached medical personnel (less those mounted), are combined under command of the senior officer present with the above-mentioned special units, or, as directed by the regimental commander. The combined special units conform to the formations and movements of the battalions and are formed in the following order from right to left, when in line, and from front to rear, when in column: Headquarters company, howitzer company, attached medical personnel, service company.

c. When the regiment is in line, the battalion trains (battalion sections of the transportation platoon, service company) are formed in rear of their respective battalions; when in column, they are formed in rear of the combined special units and in the same order from front to rear as their respective battalions.

d. When the regiment is in line, the combined trains of the special units are formed in rear of the combined special units; when in column, except column of threes, they are formed in rear of the battalion trains. (Figs. 71 and 72.)

e. When battalions are in line, trains are formed in line; when in column, except in column of threes, trains are formed in column. When troops are in column of threes, trains are in single column.

f. When the regiment is in column of threes, unless otherwise directed, battalion and special unit combat trains follow their respective battalions or units, and the combat trains of units attached to battalions join the corresponding combat trains.

g. For all formations except column of threes, the regimental commander's staff is augmented by the following: The surgeon, two chaplains, one first lieutenant (commanding communica-

tion platoon, headquarters company). In addition, one master sergeant (headquarters company), and a mounted messenger of the communication platoon form with the staff.

h. When the special units are combined, the following officers form the staff of the commander of the special units: Two first lieutenants, and one second lieutenant (supply section, headquarters platoon, service company). The following enlisted men form with the staff: Two master sergeants and one supply sergeant (supply section, headquarters platoon, service company), and a private (mounted messenger, communication platoon, headquarters company).

i. When the regiment forms in column of threes, the surgeon joins the regimental commander's staff and the attached chaplains join the service company, unless otherwise directed.

j. In all formations of the regiment, except in column of threes, the colors are with the center battalion; when in column of threes, the colors are with the service company, unless otherwise ordered.

k. In all formations of the regiment except in column of threes, the band takes post as shown in Figures 72 and 73. When in column of threes, the band takes post as directed by the regimental commander.

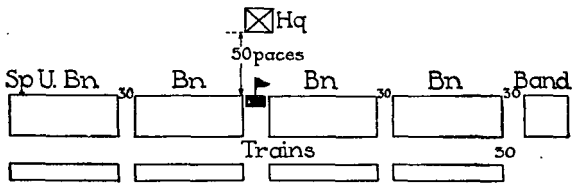
404. To form the regiment.—*a.* To assume any formation, except column of threes, the regimental commander prescribes the formation, the hour of forming, the direction in which the regiment will face, the order of battalions from right to left, in line, or from front to rear, in column, and the place of the formation.

b. To form the regiment in columns of threes, the regimental commander prescribes the formation, the place where the regiment is to form (usually on a road), the direction in which the regiment will face, the hour of forming, the initial point (location of head of column), and the order in column of the headquarters, band, battalions, special and attached units, and field trains.

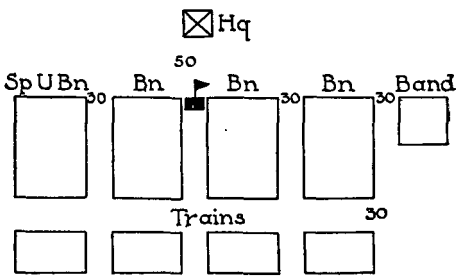
c. The regimental commander gives his orders, either orally or in writing, to form the regiment; they may be given directly to the officers concerned or may be communicated to them through staff officers or messengers.

d. Before forming the regiment, the regimental commander may cause the positions which are to be taken by the larger elements to be indicated by markers.

e. Battalion commanders and commanders of special and attached units move their commands by the most suitable means and routes to the place of formation and dispose them as ordered.



REGIMENT IN LINE OF BATTALIONS, EACH BATTALION IN LINE OF COMPANY MASSES



REGIMENT IN LINE OF BATTALIONS, EACH BATTALION IN COLUMN OF COMPANIES OR COLUMN OF COMPANY MASSES

FIGURE 72.—Formations of the regiment, war strength

f. Upon arrival at their designated places in the prescribed formation, battalion and special-unit commanders report the fact to the regimental commander; if the special units are combined, the commander thereof reports the arrival of the combined special units at their designated place.

g. Battalions and special units stand at rest upon arrival at their designated places, unless otherwise directed.

405. To march.—*a.* The regiment being in any formation, the regimental commander prescribes the formation in which the regiment will march and the route to be followed and puts the command in motion by prescribing the hour or by giving the command, 1. ***Forward,*** 2. ***MARCH,*** or by bugle or signal.

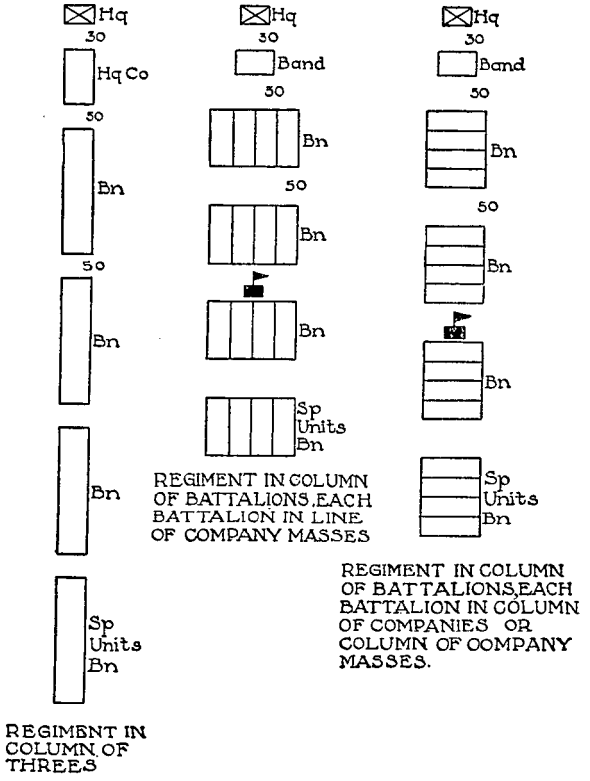


FIGURE 73.—Formations of the regiment, war strength

b. To march in route column, the regiment is not ordinarily formed and put into march as a unit. Battalion commanders and special and attached unit commanders are usually informed in orders of the destination, route, hour of starting, initial point, order of march, and, if necessary, the distances

between elements, and are held responsible for having their commands take their places in the column at the prescribed times and places.

406. To halt.—To halt the regiment, the regimental commander may either prescribe the hour when the column will be halted or he may give the command or signal ***HALT.***

407. To dismiss the regiment.—To dismiss the regiment, the regimental commander orders the battalion and special and attached unit commanders to dismiss their organizations. The order may be given directly to the commanders concerned or it may be communicated to them through staff officers or messengers.

SECTION III

THE BRIGADE

408. Drill.—The brigade does not drill.

409. To form the brigade.—*a.* To assume any formation the brigade commander issues oral or written orders in which he prescribes the formation and the method of forming. When necessary, such orders are accompanied by march tables.

b. To form the brigade in route column, unit commanders are informed of the destination, the route, the hour of starting, the initial point, the order of march, and, if necessary, the distances between elements.

c. For ceremonial formations the brigade commander ordinarily causes the positions of the larger elements to be indicated by markers on the ground where the brigade is to form.

d. At ceremonies the brigade headquarters company is posted as the right element of the brigade in line and the leading element in column.

CHAPTER 16

DRILL AND COMBAT SIGNALS

		Paragraphs
SECTION I.	General	410–411
II.	Whistle signals	412–414
III.	General arm-and-hand signals	415–439
IV.	Additional arm-and-hand signals for rifle companies	440–441
V.	Additional arm-and-hand signals for machine-gun companies	442–449
VI.	Additional arm-and-hand signals for howitzer companies	450–459
VII.	Arm-and-hand signals for service companies (transportation)	460–469
VIII.	Bugle signals	470–471

SECTION I

GENERAL

410. Purpose and limitation of signals.—Drill and combat signals are for the purpose of transmitting essential commands under conditions rendering the voice inadequate. They are prescribed for no other purpose.

411. General.—*a.* Drill and combat signals may be by whistle and by arm-and-hand as prescribed herein; or by bugle as prescribed in TR 75–5.

b. An arm-and-hand or a whistle signal is both the preparatory command and the command of execution; the movement commences as soon as the signal is understood, unless otherwise prescribed.

c. Officers and men fix their attention at the first note of the whistle or bugle, or the first motion of the arm-and-hand signal.

d. Subordinate commanders repeat signals or cause them to be repeated whenever they deem repetition necessary to insure prompt and correct execution.

SECTION II

WHISTLE SIGNALS

412. Whistle signals.—Whistle signals will be made with the whistle prescribed for the leader or commander concerned and will be confined to ***ATTENTION TO ORDERS*** and ***CEASE FIRING.***

413. Attention to orders.—*a.* Sound a short blast of the whistle. The signal is used to fix the attention of troops, or of their commanders and leaders, preparatory to giving commands, orders, or signals.

b. When in charge of a portion of the firing line, each squad leader will fix his attention upon his section or platoon leader for signals at the short blast of a whistle. If the squad leader's attention is attracted by a whistle other than that of his platoon or section leader, or if he receives no orders or commands to give to his squad, he will return his full attention at once to his squad or group.

414. Cease firing.—Sound a long blast of the whistle. This signal will be verified at once by an arm-and-hand signal or by other means.

SECTION III

GENERAL ARM-AND-HAND SIGNALS

415. General.—If a movement is to be executed by a subordinate unit of a command, the signal designating the unit or units will be given before the signal for the movement.

416. Forward; to the right (left); to the rear.—Face and move in the desired direction of march; at the same time extend the hand vertically to the full extent of the arm, palm to the front, and lower the arm and hand in the direction of movement until horizontal.

417. Halt.—Carry the hand to the shoulder, palm to front; then thrust the hand upward vertically to the full extent of the arm and hold it in that position until the signal is understood.

418. Lie down; or, take cover.—Turn toward the unit or group and raise the hand, palm down, in front of the elbow, forearm horizontal; thrust the hand downward and back to this position.

419. Double time; or, rush.—Carry the hand to the shoulder, fist closed; rapidly thrust the fist upward vertically to the full extent of the arm and back to the shoulder several times.

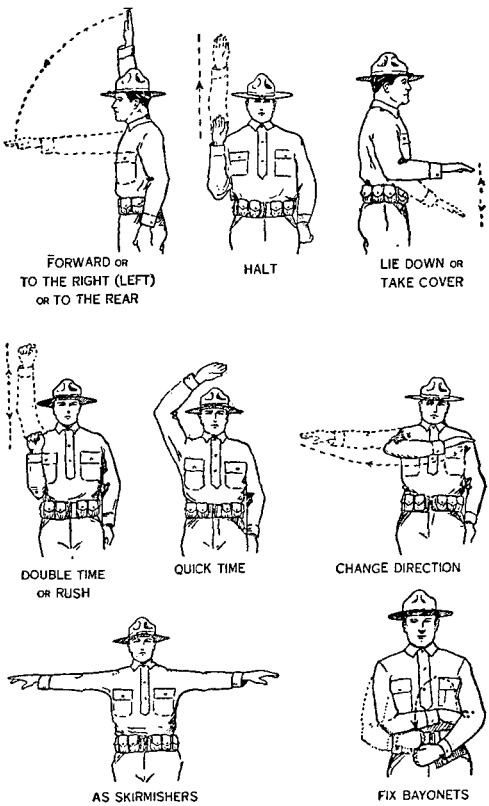


FIGURE 74.—Arm-and-hand signals

420. Quick time.—Raise the elbow to a position above and to the right (left) of the shoulder and extend the forearm to the left (right), hand above the head, palm to the front.

421. Change direction.—Carry the hand that is on the side toward the new direction across the body to the opposite shoulder and, with the palm down and the forearm horizontal, swing

the forearm in a horizontal plane, extending the arm and hand to point in the new direction.

422. Enemy in sight.—Hold the weapon horizontally above the head with the arm or arms extended as if guarding the head.

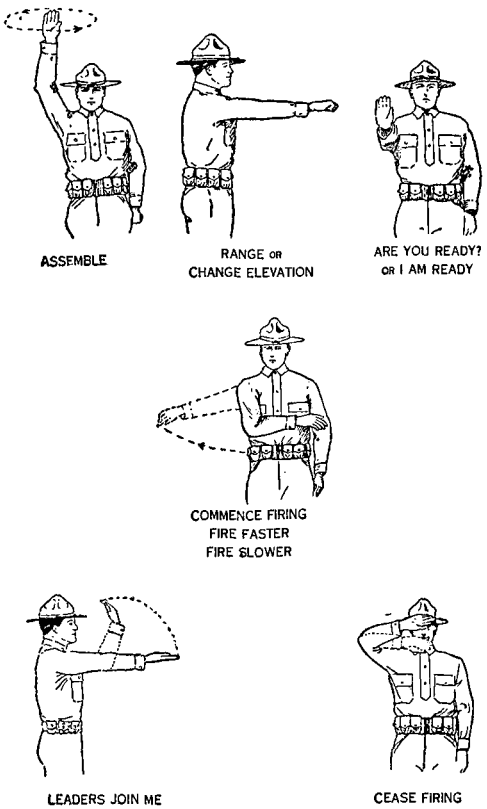


FIGURE 75.—Arm-and-hand signals

423. As skirmishers.—Raise both arms laterally until horizontal, arms and hands extended, palms down. If it is necessary to indicate direction of march, signal ***FORWARD MARCH,*** moving at the same time in the desired direction.

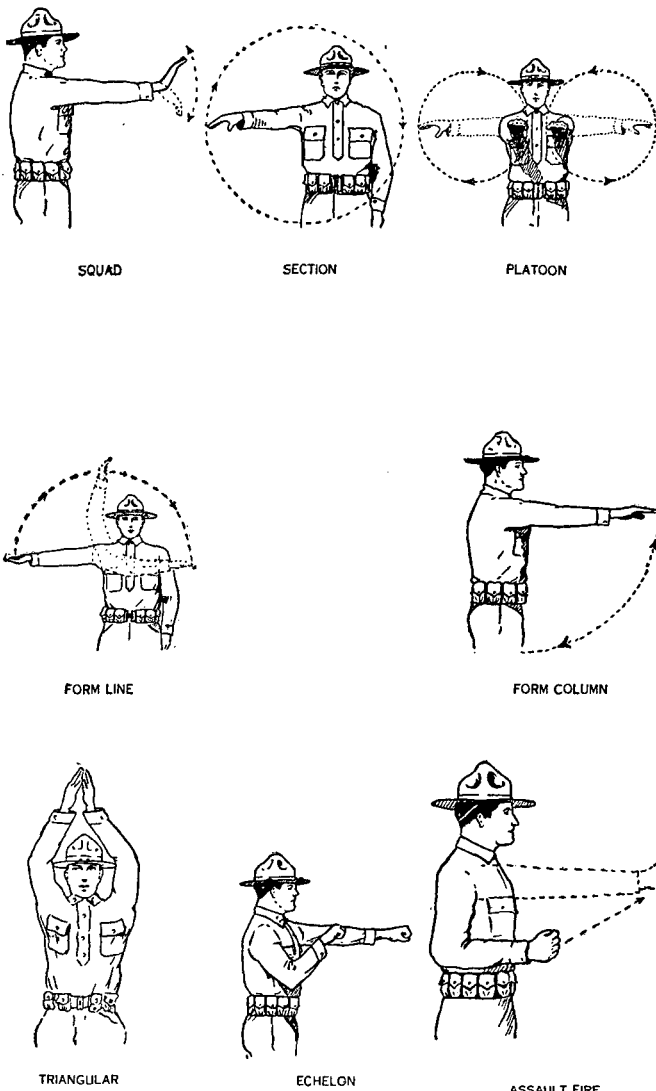


FIGURE 76.—Arm-and-hand signals

424. **Assemble.**—Raise the hand vertically to the full extent of the arm, fingers extended and joined, and describe large horizontal circles with the arm and hand.

425. **Range; or, change elevation.**—Announce the range by extending the arm fully toward the leader or men for whom the signal is intended, with the fist closed; open the fist, exposing the palm and fingers to the leaders or men, once for 500 yards, twice for 1,000 yards, and so on; move the arm, fist closed, wrist rigid, upward and back to the original position, once for each 100 yards up to 500 and for each additional 100 yards above 500 or the multiple of 500. Change elevation by indicating the complete new range.

426. **Are you ready?**—Extend the arm toward the leader for whom the signal is intended, hand raised, fingers extended and joined, palm toward the leader.

427. **I am ready.**—Execute the signal ***ARE YOU READY.***

428. **Commence firing.**—Extend the arm and hand horizontally in front of the body to their full extent, palm of the hand down; move them several times through a wide horizontal arc.

429. **Fire faster.**—Execute rapidly the signal ***COMMENCE FIRING.*** For machine guns, a change to the next higher rate of fire is required.

430. **Fire slower.**—Execute slowly the signal ***COMMENCE FIRING.*** For machine guns, a change to the next lower rate of fire is required.

431. **Cease firing.**—Raise the forearm in front of the forehead, palm to the front, and swing it up and down several times in front of the face.

432. **Leaders join me.**—Extend one arm toward the leaders and beckon the leaders to you.

433. **Squad.**—Extend one arm toward the squad leader, palm of the hand down; distinctly move the hand up and down several times, holding the arm steady.

434. **Section.**—Extend one arm toward the section leader, palm of the hand down, and describe large vertical circles.

435. **Platoon.**—Extend both arms toward the platoon leader, palms of the hands down, and describe large vertical circles.

436. **To form column.**—Execute the signal for the unit which is to form column; drop the arm to the side and immediately swing it, extended in a pendulum movement straight to the front, not higher than the shoulder, and back again to the side.

437. To form line.—Raise the right arm laterally until horizontal, arm and hand extended, palm up, swing the arm upward until vertical, then to the left horizontal position and back immediately to the right horizontal position; repeat swinging movement several times.

438. Triangular formation.—Raise both arms over the head, palms inward, tips of fingers of both hands in contact.

439. Echelon formation.—Face the unit for which the signal is intended; extend both arms horizontally to the front, fists closed with the knuckles up; withdraw either fist halfway toward the body by flexing the arm at the elbow.

SECTION IV

ADDITIONAL ARM-AND-HAND SIGNALS FOR RIFLE COMPANIES

440. Fix bayonets.—Simulate the movement of the right hand in fixing a bayonet on rifle.

441. Assault fire.—Thrust the fist several times in the direction of the enemy.

SECTION V

ADDITIONAL ARM-AND-HAND SIGNALS FOR MACHINE-GUN COMPANIES

442. Action.—Thrust the fist several times in the direction toward which it is desired to go into action.

443. Echelon formation.—See paragraph 439.

444. Elevate, depress.—Extend one arm toward the gunner(s) concerned; move the hand in short upward (downward) movements by flexing the hand at the wrist; with the palm of the hand toward the gunner(s), expose one finger for each mil the gun is to be elevated (depressed).

445. Shift right (left).—Extend one arm toward the gunner(s) concerned; swing the hand and arm horizontally in the direction in which the fire is to be shifted, palm turned in that direction; with the palm of the hand toward the gunner(s), expose one finger for each mil the fire is to be shifted.

446. Off carts.—Face the unit for which the signal is intended; raise the elbow laterally the height of the shoulder and touch the shoulder with the fingers.

447. On carts.—Face the unit for which the signal is intended; raise both elbows laterally to the height of the shoulders and touch the shoulders with the fingers.

448. Out of action.—Strike the closed fist of one hand rapidly against the open palm of the other several times.

449. Around carts.—Face the unit(s); extend one arm fully toward the unit(s) concerned, hand pointing downward; move the hand in a large horizontal circle by flexing the arm at the elbow and shoulder.

SECTION VI

ADDITIONAL ARM-AND-HAND SIGNALS FOR HOWITZER COMPANIES

450. Action.—See paragraph 442.

451. Change deflection.—Thrust the hand out horizontally to the full extent of the arm, in the direction in which the change in deflection is to be made, beginning the thrust at the shoulder with the palm of the hand down. For the 37-mm gun, each thrust, with the fist closed, signifies 1 mil; with the hand open, 5 mils. For the 3-inch trench mortar, each thrust, with the fist closed, signifies one turn of the traversing handle.

452. Echelon formation.—See paragraph 439.

453. Fire one round.—Extend one arm above the head toward the gunner for whom the signal is intended. Cut the hand sharply downward.

454. Increase (decrease) the range.—Thrust the fist upward vertically from the shoulder to the full extent of the arm once for each increase of 25 yards; thrust it downward vertically in the same manner for each decrease of 25 yards. For a change of more than 100 yards signal a new range.

455. Fire five rounds.—Extend one arm above the head, hand open; flex the wrist, making a quick, choppy, lateral movement with the hand.

456. Off carts.—See paragraph 446.

457. On carts.—See paragraph 447.

458. Out of action.—See paragraph 448.

459. Traversing fire.—Face the target, extend one arm fully to the front; move it upward and downward with a chopping motion, at the same time swinging the arm to the right (left) in the direction it is desired to distribute the fire. This signal

will mean to fire 10 rounds with one turn of the traversing handle or a change of 10 mils in the deflection between rounds.

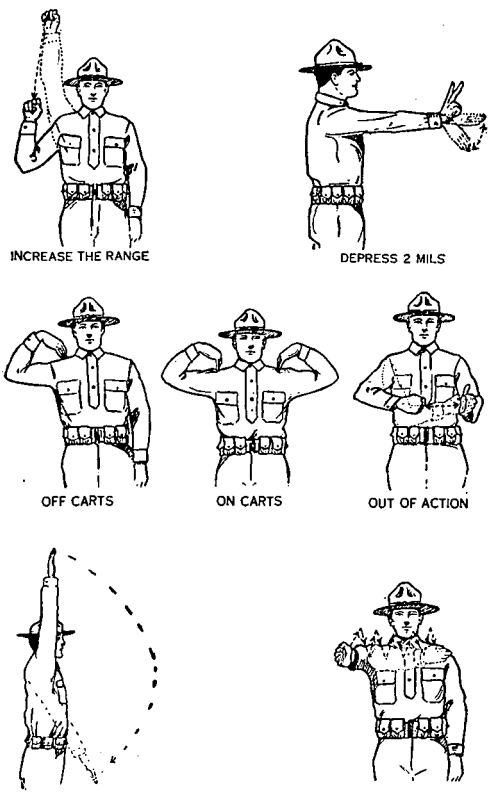


FIGURE 77.—Arm-and-hand signals

SECTION VII

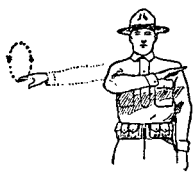
ARM-AND-HAND SIGNALS FOR SERVICE COMPANIES (TRANSPORTATION)

460. Execution of transportation signals.—The signals for transportation formations and movements consist of two parts—

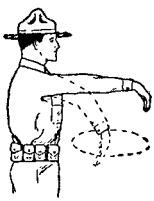
a preparatory signal and a signal of execution. The preparatory signal is the part designating the formation or movement; for the signal of execution the arm is extended vertically and then dropped sharply to the side. When applicable, these signals may be used by the other companies having transportation.

461. Attention.—Extend the hand upward vertically to the full extent of the arm, palm to the front, and move the arm and hand slowly back and forth several times from right to left, left to right, in a vertical plane. It is advisable to give the whistle signal for attention at the same time.

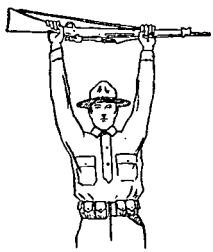
ATTENTION



SECTIONS
COLUMN RIGHT



AROUND CARTS



ENEMY IN SIGHT

FIGURE 78.—Arm-and-hand signals

462. Forward.—See paragraph 416.

463. Halt.—See paragraph 417.

464. Change direction.—See paragraph 421.

465. Right by file.—Point, with the arm fully extended, to the file (files) which is to initiate the movement and then indicate with the fingers the number of files. Then signal, ***FORWARD.***

466. Right (left) by section.—Point to the right (left) section with the arm fully extended, palm of the hand down, and then signal ***FORWARD.***

467. Sections column right (left).—Describe several small vertical circles with the arm fully extended to the right (left); then signal change of direction to the right (left).

468. Right (left) into line.—Signal ***SECTIONS COLUMN RIGHT (LEFT), MARCH.***

469. Right (left) front into line.—Describe several large vertical circles on the right (left) side of the body with the arm and hand fully extended.

SECTION VIII

BUGLE SIGNALS

470. Scope.—The bugle signals used for infantry drill and combat are confined to:

Assembly To arms	Paragraph 16, TR 75–5.
Attention Forward march Halt Column right Column left	Paragraph 17 *c*, TR 75–5.

471. Employment.—The general rules for employment of bugle signals are as prescribed in paragraph 17 *a*, TR 75–5.

PART TWO

CEREMONIES AND INSPECTIONS

		Paragraphs
CHAPTER 1.	Ceremonies	472–502
2.	Inspections	503–523
3.	Manual of the guidon	524–536
4.	Manual of the saber	537–546
5.	Manual of the colors	547–554

CHAPTER 1

CEREMONIES

		Paragraphs
SECTION I.	General rules	472–478
II.	Reviews	479–482
III.	Parades	483–487
IV.	Presentation of decorations	488
V.	Escorts	489–491
VI.	Guard mounting, foot troops	492–494
VII.	Relieving the old guard	495–502

SECTION I

GENERAL RULES

472. Arrangement of units in formation.—*a.* The commanding officer of the unit concerned, assisted by his staff, actively supervises formations for all ceremonies. They move to such positions as will best enable them to make corrections.

b. Companies in battalion and battalions in regiment are formed as prescribed in Chapter 15, Part One.

473. Staff salutes.—When troops are brought to present arms, the staffs of the various commanders of troops salute with their commanders.

474. Place of formation.—*a.* At the assembly for a ceremony, companies are formed on their own parades.

b. At *adjutant's call*, except for ceremonies involving a single battalion, each battalion will be formed on its own parade, re-

ports received, and the battalion presented to the battalion commander. At the second sounding of *Adjutant's call*, the regiment is formed.

475. Modification of formations.—Formations for ceremonies may be modified by commanding officers when the nature of the ground, size of units, or exceptional circumstances require such change to be made.

476. Formation of special units.—The service, howitzer, and regimental headquarters companies are formed as prescribed in Chapters 10, 11, and 14, Part One. These companies and the machine-gun companies normally form mounted with transportation; however, they may form dismounted without transportation. When formed dismounted they conform to the formation of the rifle companies.

477. Size of units.—When participating in a ceremony it is desirable that all platoons contain the same number of squads. When companies are at peace or reduced strength, the battalion may be formed in line, the rifle companies being in line or line of company masses and the machine-gun company in line of platoon masses.

478. Fixed bayonets.—Bayonets are fixed for all reviews and parades.

SECTION II

REVIEWS

479. General rules.—*a.* (1) The adjutant causes markers to be placed or otherwise indicates the line of march of the column in such manner that its flank will pass about 20 paces from the reviewing officer.

(2) The post of the reviewing officer is indicated by a marker.

(3) Officers of the same grade as the reviewing officer or of higher grade, and distinguished personages invited to accompany him, place themselves on his left or as otherwise indicated; their staffs and orderlies place themselves on the corresponding side of the staff and orderlies of the reviewing officer; and all others who accompany the reviewing officer place themselves on the left of his staff or as otherwise indicated, their orderlies on the left of the line of orderlies. An officer, preferably a staff officer, is designated to escort distinguished personages and to indicate to them their proper positions.

b. (1) While passing around the troops, the reviewing officer may direct that his staff, flag, and orderlies remain at the post

of the reviewing officer, or that only his personal staff and flag accompany him. In either case, the commanding officer alone moves abreast of the reviewing officer. While passing around the troops the commanding officer is on that side of the reviewing officer which is away from the command. If the reviewing officer is accompanied by his staff, the staff officers of the commander place themselves on the side of the staff of the reviewing officer corresponding to the position of the commander.

(2) The reviewing officer makes such general inspection of the command as he may desire while passing around the troops. A detailed inspection is not a part of the ceremony of review.

(3) All individuals at the reviewing stand salute the color as it passes. When passing around the troops, the reviewing officer and those accompanying him salute the color when passing in front of it.

(4) The reviewing officer returns the salute of the commanding officer of the troops and the salutes of subordinate commanders down to include battalion commanders. Those who accompany the reviewing officer do not salute.

c. In passing in review, each staff salutes with its commander.

d. After saluting the reviewing officer in passing in review, the commanding officer of the troops turns out of the column and takes post on the side of the reviewing officer toward the direction of march of the command, and returns saber. The members of his staff accompanying him take post on the corresponding side of the reviewing officer's staff and return saber. When the rear element of his command has passed, the commanding officer of the troops, without changing his position, salutes the reviewing officer and draws saber. The members of his staff draw saber at the same time. He and the members of his staff accompany him; then rejoin the command.

e. If the person reviewing the command is not mounted, the commanding officer and his staff, on turning out of the column after passing the reviewing officer, dismount preparatory to taking post. In such case the salute of the commanding officer, prior to rejoining his command, is made with the hand before remounting.

f. When the grade of the reviewing officer entitles him to the honor, each regimental color salutes at the command ***PRESENT ARMS,*** given by the battalion commander of the right battalion, and again in passing in review. As a part of the first salute, when the commanding officer of the troops sa-

lutes the reviewing officer (par. 480 *a*), one band and the field music designated by the commanding officer of the troops render the prescribed honors. (See par. 480 *a*.) Officers and troops retain the position of salute until the completion of the music. During the second salute (when passing in review) only the prescribed ruffles and flourishes will be played by the field music of the band, which has turned out of the column and is opposite the post of the reviewing officer.

g. (1) The band of an organization plays while the reviewing officer is passing around the organization.

(2) During the march in review each band turns out of the column, takes post as hereinafter prescribed or as otherwise directed, and continues to play until the regiment has passed. It then ceases playing and follows in rear of its regiment. The band of the following regiment commences to play as soon as the preceding band has ceased.

(3) In large commands, bands may be massed and posted as directed by the commanding general.

h. The present arms by the troops and passing around the troops by the reviewing officer may be dispensed with.

i. Troops march in review with the guide toward the flank on which the reviewing officer is posted.

j. Troops pass in review in quick time only.

k. (1) In reviews of regiments or larger units care must be exercised by each organization commander that the step is maintained in his unit after it has passed the reviewing officer in order not to interfere with the march of the column in rear. If abnormal terrain or other adverse conditions make it necessary, the commanding officer may direct each battalion and special unit, after its rear has passed the reviewing officer 50 paces, to take the double time for 100 paces.

(2) When the review is to be followed by an inspection, units after passing in review re-form in their original places or as otherwise directed.

l. In a brigade or larger review, a regimental commander may cause his regiment to stand at ease, rest, or stack arms and fall out, and resume attention, provided it will not interfere with the ceremony.

m. When an organization is to be reviewed before an inspecting officer junior in rank to the commanding officer, the commanding officer receives the review and is accompanied by the inspecting officer, who takes post on his left.

480. Battalion review.—*a.* (1) The battalion having been formed in line (peace or reduced strength) or in line of company masses (peace or war strength), the battalion commander faces to the front. The reviewing officer moves a few paces toward the battalion commander and halts. The battalion commander turns about and commands: 1. ***Present,*** 2. ***ARMS,*** and again turns about and salutes. The reviewing officer returns the salute. At the reviewing stand, when the *National Anthem, To the color* or the *General's march* is played as a part of the honors rendered, the reviewing officer, and those accompanying him, salute as prescribed in Army Regulations. (In a unit larger than a battalion the commanding officer of troops waits until all elements have come to present arms or the salute, before turning about.) When the rank of the reviewing officer entitles him to the honor, the band or field music plays the appropriate music as prescribed in Army Regulations, starting to play as the commanding officer of troops salutes.

(2) The battalion commander (commanding officer of troops) turns about, brings the battalion to order arms, and again turns to the front.

(3) The reviewing officer moves toward the battalion commander and halts about 6 paces from him. The battalion commander salutes, joins the reviewing officer, and accompanies him around the battalion. The band plays while they are passing around the battalion. The reviewing officer proceeds to the right of the band and thence to the left of the line by passing immediately in front of the company commanders. He then proceeds around the flank and passes in rear of the battalion and the band.

(4) On arriving again at the right of the band, the battalion commander salutes and halts, and the reviewing officer with his staff proceeds to his post in front of the center of the battalion. When the reviewing officer and his staff have passed him, the battalion commander moves directly to his post in front of the battalion, faces it, and commands: ***PASS IN REVIEW.***

(5) At the command ***PASS IN REVIEW,*** the band changes direction, if necessary, and halts.

(6) (*a*) *The battalion being in line (rifle companies in line, and the machine-gun company in mass).*—When the band has halted, the battalion commander commands: 1. ***Right,*** 2. ***FACE,*** 3. ***Forward,*** 4. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH,*** the band

playing, the battalion moves off, the rifle companies forming column of threes to the right; the machine-gun company executing ***column right.***

(*b*) *The battalion being in line of company masses (rifle companies in company mass and the machine-gun company in column or line of platoon masses).*—When the band has halted, the battalion commander commands: 1. ***Column right,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH,*** the band playing, all companies execute ***column right*** simultaneously and move off. If the machine-gun company is in line of masses, it executes ***platoons column right.***

(7) The band and the battalion change direction at the points indicated without command from the battalion commander. At each change of direction each rifle company commander and machine-gun platoon commander in turn command: 1. ***Column left,*** 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. ***Forward,*** 4. ***MARCH.*** The third and fourth commands are given so that units may step off in unison when the change of direction is completed. At the second change of direction the machine-gun platoons execute ***column left*** at such time as will permit the right of the platoons to cover the right of the preceding unit. The band will so regulate its movements and pace as to remain 18 paces in advance of the leading unit.

(8) The battalion commander takes post 18 paces in front of the band immediately after the second change in direction.

(9) The battalion commander and staff salute when the former is 6 paces from the front of the reviewing officer and terminate the salute when the battalion commander has passed 6 paces beyond him. The band executes ***column left*** when it has passed the reviewing officer. When the rear of the band is 12 paces beyond the left flank of the marching column, it executes a second ***column left.*** A third ***column left*** is given at such time as to place the band in front of and facing the reviewing officer and 12 paces from the left flank of the troops.

(10) Each rifle company commander when in the same relative position with respect to the reviewing officer as prescribed for the battalion commander and his staff, without turning his body, commands: 1. ***Eyes,*** 2. ***RIGHT,*** 3. ***Ready,*** 4. ***FRONT.*** He gives the command ***RIGHT*** when he is 6 paces from the front of the reviewing officer, and the command ***FRONT*** when

the rear of his company has passed beyond the reviewing officer. He brings his saber to the first position of present saber at the command ***Eyes*** and to the second position at the command ***RIGHT.*** He resumes the carry at the command ***FRONT.*** Officers and noncommissioned officers salute at the command, ***Eyes RIGHT.*** In each company the squad leader of the right squad does not execute ***Eyes RIGHT.***

(11) Machine-gun company commander, second in command, and first sergeant execute and terminate this salute in the same manner and at the same relative position with respect to the reviewing officer as prescribed for the battalion commander and staff.

(12) Machine-gun platoon leaders command ***Eyes RIGHT*** and ***Ready, FRONT*** as prescribed for the rifle company commander.

(13) The band leader and the drum major execute and terminate the salute at the points prescribed for the battalion commander.

(14) If the reviewing officer is entitled to a color salute, the regimental color salutes when at 6 paces from his front and is raised when at 6 paces beyond him.

(15) Having saluted, the battalion commander and his staff take post and proceed as prescribed in paragraph 470 *d.*

(16) The review terminates when the rear unit has passed the reviewing officer. The band then ceases to play and, unless otherwise directed by the battalion commander, returns to the position it occupied before passing in review, or is dismissed. The battalion then executes such movements as the reviewing officer may have directed, or marches to its parade ground to be dismissed.

b. At battalion review the battalion commander and his staff may, in the discretion of the commanding officer, be dismounted.

481. Regimental review.—*a.* (1) The regiment ordinarily is formed in line of battalions, each battalion in column of company masses or line of company masses as prescribed in Chapter 15, Part One, or in case of regiments at peace or reduced strength, in line of battalions, each battalion being in line.

(2) The review proceeds as prescribed for the battalion, except that "regimental commander" is substituted for "battalion commander" and "regiment" for "battalion."

(3) At the regimental commander's command, ***Present arms,*** the battalion commander of the center battalion commands: 1. ***Present,*** 2. ***ARMS.*** The other battalion commanders, successively from the center, bring their battalions to present arms. Order arms is similarly executed.

(4) To march the regiment in review, the regimental commander commands, or orders: ***Pass in review.*** At this command the band changes direction, if necessary, and halts.

(5) (*a*) If the regiment is in line (peace or reduced strength) it passes in review in accordance with the principles laid down for the battalion.

(*b*) When the regiment is formed in line of battalions, each battalion in column of company masses, and the band is halted, the battalion commander of the right battalion commands: 1. ***Column right,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH,*** the band and the leading company of the right battalion move off, the band playing. The other companies of the right battalion move forward successively in time to execute ***column right*** on the same ground as the leading company, and follow the preceding company at 12 paces. Other battalion commanders, successively from the right, move their battalions by the same commands and in a similar manner in time to follow the preceding battalion at 50 paces. The band and companies change direction without command from the battalion commanders and pass in review, the rifle companies in platoon masses, the machine-gun company in column of platoons.

(*c*) When the regiment is formed in line of battalions, each battalion in column of company masses, and the band is halted, the battalion commander of the right battalion commands: 1. ***Companies, column right,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH,*** the band and the companies move off simultaneously, the band playing. The machine-gun company executes ***platoons column right.*** Other battalion commanders, successively from the right, move their battalions by the same command and in a similar manner in time to follow the preceding battalion at 50 paces. The band and companies change direction without command from the battalion commanders and pass in review in column of company masses.

(6) At the second change of direction each battalion commander takes post 30 paces in front of his leading company. The regimental commander takes post 30 paces in front of the band immediately after the second change of direction.

(7) The march of the combined special units is conducted similarly to that of a battalion.

(8) In passing in review, trains are in column of company sections. The train commander marches at the head of the column of trains, followed by the wagonmasters in charge of the combined special unit and battalion trains, who march at the head of their trains.

(9) The commands ***Eyes RIGHT*** and ***Ready, FRONT*** are given as prescribed for battalion review.

(10) The rear of the column having passed the reviewing officer, the battalions and special units ordinarily are marched to their parades and dismissed.

b. The review of a small body of troops composed of different arms is conducted on the principles laid down for the regiment. The troops of each arm are formed and marched so as to conform to the movement of the infantry.

482. **Reviews of brigades or larger units.**—*a.* The principles of regimental review are observed for larger units.

b. A command consisting of one regiment or less and detachments of other arms is formed for review in the order prescribed in Army Regulations.

c. (1) In the review of a brigade or larger command, regiments are formed as prescribed for the regiment. Trains and other organizations are similarly formed. The arrangement of the regiments and brigades is made as prescribed by the commander.

(2) The basic units of movement are the infantry battalion and the field artillery battery.

d. The reviewing officer takes post opposite the center of the command. The commanding officer of troops directs, ***Present arms.*** All regimental or separate unit commanders simultaneously direct, ***Present arms.*** Battalion and other units are presented and brought to the order, successively from the center, as prescribed for the regimental review. Brigade and regimental commanders and their staffs salute as soon as their last units have presented arms.

e. (1) The reviewing officer receives the present in front of the center of the command. After passing around the command, he takes post at a convenient distance in front and to the right flank. The commanding officer of the troops then commands or orders: ***PASS IN REVIEW.*** At the command ***PASS IN REVIEW,*** the band of the right regiment changes

direction to the right and halts, the unit or units posted on the right of the right regiment change direction to the right, form in the prescribed formation in column and halt with sufficient distance between them and between the band of the right regiment and the unit immediately in front of the band, for brigade and regimental commanders and their staffs to take their proper positions in front of their commands. The battalion commander of the right battalion commands: 1. ***Column right,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH,*** the band of the right regiment, playing, and the unit or units in front of the band executing ***forward march,*** the right battalion executes ***column right*** and follows the band at 50 paces. The band turns to the left out of column when 50 to 100 paces beyond the reviewing officer, and moves a sufficient distance in the new direction to countermarch and halt on the line with him. The other battalions of the right regiment move successively to the right in like manner in time to follow the preceding battalion in column of masses at 50 paces. The right battalion of each succeeding regiment moves to the right in time to allow the band of its regiment to follow the preceding unit at 75 paces. The distance between brigades is 100 paces.

(2) ***Eyes left*** is executed similarly to the method of executing ***eyes right*** as prescribed for the regiment.

(3) The foregoing formation may be modified to conform to available terrain.

(4) The command may pass in review toward either flank or to the front of either flank as required by the nature of the ground.

(5) If desired, battalions may be massed in a manner similar to the massing of companies.

SECTION III

PARADES

483. General rules.—*a.* While the band is sounding off, the officer receiving the parade and his staff, if dismounted, stand at attention with arms folded and raised so that the upper arms are horizontal. They resume attention with the adjutant. If mounted, they remain at attention.

b. At the command ***REPORT,*** given by a battalion adjutant, the company commanders in succession from the right salute and report "A (or other) Company, present or accounted for";

or "A (or other) Company, (so many) officers or men absent." The adjutant returns each company commander's salute after the report is made and understood. He returns to the carry saber after acknowledging each salute.

c. Headquarters companies, machine-gun companies, and the howitzer company are ordinarily formed mounted and with transportation. Their commanders dismount to execute ***officers center*** at battalion parades.

484. Battalion parade.—*a.* At *Adjutants' call* the battalion is formed in line (peace or reduced strength) or line of company masses, but is not presented. The battalion commander takes post at a convenient distance in front of the center of, and facing, the battalion.

b. The adjutant, from his post in front of the center of the battalion commands: 1. ***Parade,*** 2. ***REST.*** After the battalion has executed ***parade rest*** he then commands: ***SOUND OFF.***

c. The band, in place, plays the *sound off* of three chords, giving two beats in quick time to each chord, and at the conclusion of the third chord moves forward, playing in quick time. It executes ***column left*** so as to march across the front of the battalion midway between the adjutant and the line of company commanders. When the band has passed the left of the line it countermarches and returns over the same ground to the right of the line. After it passes beyond the right of the battalion it executes ***column right.*** When the entire band has passed beyond the front rank of the battalion it again countermarches and halts in its original position. When the band ceases playing, the *sound off* is again played. At evening parade, when the band ceases playing, *retreat* is sounded by the field music. Following the last note and while the flag is being lowered, the band plays the *National Anthem.*

d. Just before the last note of *retreat,* the adjutant comes to attention and at the ending of the last note commands: 1. ***Battalion,*** 2. ***ATTENTION,*** 3. ***Present,*** 4. ***ARMS.*** The adjutant then salutes. The battalion remains at present arms during the playing of the *National Anthem.* The adjutant then turns about, salutes, and reports "Sir, the parade is formed." The battalion commander directs the adjutant "Take your post, Sir," and draws saber. The adjutant moves at a trot (in quick time if dismounted), passes by the battalion commander's right, and takes his post.

e. The battalion commander then commands: 1. ***Order,*** 2. ***ARMS,*** and gives such movements in the manual of arms as he may desire. Officers, noncommissioned officers commanding platoons, the color guard, and guidon bearers having once executed the ***order arms*** remain in that position during the movements of the manual.

f. The battalion commander then directs the adjutant, "Receive the reports, Sir." The adjutant, passing by the battalion commander's right, advances at a trot (in quick time if dismounted) toward the center of the battalion, halts midway between it and the battalion commander and commands: ***REPORT.***

g. The reports are then made as prescribed in paragraph 483 *b.*

h. The reports received, the adjutant turns about, and reports "Sir, all present or accounted for"; or "Sir, (so many) officers and (or) (so many) men absent," including among the absentees those from the band and field music reported to him by the band leader prior to the parade.

i. The battalion commander directs "Publish the orders, Sir." The adjutant turns about, and commands: ***ATTENTION TO ORDERS.*** He publishes the orders and then commands: 1. ***Officers,*** 2. ***CENTER,*** 3. ***MARCH.*** After giving the command ***MARCH,*** the adjutant turns about and takes his post.

j. At the command ***Officers,*** company commanders execute ***carry saber.*** At the command ***CENTER,*** they face to the center. At the command ***MARCH,*** they close to the center (the band playing), halt, and individually face to the front.

k. The company commanders, having closed and faced to the front, the senior commands: 1. ***Forward,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** The company commanders march on the battalion commander, the center officer being the guide. The company commanders are halted 6 paces from the battalion commander by the senior, who commands: 1. ***Officers,*** 2. ***HALT.*** They halt and salute the battalion commander who returns the salute and commands: 1. ***Carry,*** 2. ***SABER.*** The battalion commander then gives such instructions as he deems necessary, and commands: 1. ***Officers,*** 2. ***POSTS,*** 3. ***MARCH.***

l. At the command ***POSTS,*** company commanders face about.

m. At the command ***MARCH,*** they step off with the guide as before. The senior commands: 1. ***Officers,*** 2. ***HALT,*** so as to

halt them 12 paces from the line; he then commands: 1. ***POSTS***, 2. ***MARCH.***

n. At the command ***POSTS,*** company commanders face outward, and at the command ***MARCH,*** step off in succession at 4-pace distance, resume their posts and execute ***order saber.*** During the execution of ***officers center*** and ***officers posts,*** company commanders remain at the carry saber except when saluting the battalion commander.

o. The music ceases when the last company commander has resumed his post.

p. The battalion commander then gives the commands for the battalion to pass in review and returns saber.

q. The battalion marches according to the commands and principles of review. When the last company has passed, the ceremony is concluded.

r. The band continues to play while the companies are in march upon the parade ground. After passing in review, companies are marched to their respective parades and dismissed.

s. When the company commanders have saluted the battalion commander, as explained in *k* above, he may direct them to form line with his staff, in which case they move individually to the front, passing to the right and left of the battalion commander and staff, place themselves on the right and left of the line established by the staff, and stand at attention at carry saber. They return saber with the battalion commander. The music ceases when the company commanders join the staff. When the company commanders take post on line with the staff, the second in command of each company immediately assumes command. The battalion commander then causes the companies to pass in review as heretofore prescribed.

485. Battalion parade (alternate ceremony).—*a.* An alternate ceremony for battalion parade, in which all company officers and guidon bearers close to the center and march to the front, may be substituted for that prescribed in paragraph 484.

b. The battalion commander and staff may be mounted or dismounted. All other persons may be mounted or dismounted. If mounted, orderlies to hold horses will be arranged for. This alternate ceremony proceeds as prescribed in paragraph 484 *a* to *i*, inclusive.

c. As soon as the orders have been published all mounted company officers and guidon bearers dismount. At the com-

mand ***OFFICERS,*** all company officers and guidon bearers carry saber and guidon. At the command ***CENTER,*** they face toward the center. At the command ***MARCH*** they close to the center, the band playing, halt, and individually face to the front; the company commanders establish the line; guidon bearers form line 4 paces in rear of the line of company commanders; all other officers form line 3 paces in rear of the line of guidon bearers.

d. The ceremony is continued according to the principles laid down in paragraph 484 *k* to *r*, inclusive, the guidon bearers executing the salute and carry with the company commanders.

e. The battalion commander may, if he desires, direct the company commanders to form line with his staff. After the company commanders have formed on line with the staff the battalion commander commands: 1. ***Officers,*** 2. ***POSTS,*** 3. ***MARCH.*** The remaining officers and the guidon bearers return to their posts as previously explained, except that the second-in-command in each company takes the post of the company commander and commands the company for the remainder of the ceremony.

486. Regimental parade.—*a.* The regiment is ordinarily formed in line of battalions in column of company masses.

b. The parade proceeds as for the battalion as prescribed in paragraph 484, with the following exceptions:

(1) "Regimental commander" is substituted for "battalion commander," and "regiment" for "battalion" in the description, and "battalions" for "battalion" in the commands.

(2) In moving across the front of the regiment the band passes midway between the adjutant and the line of battalion commanders.

(3) The battalions execute ***present arms, order arms, parade rest,*** and come to attention at the command of execution of their respective commanders, successively, from the center battalion.

(4) After publishing the orders, the adjutant commands: 1. ***Officers,*** 2. ***CENTER,*** 3. ***MARCH.***

(5) The battalion commanders form one line, closing on the center. The senior commands: 1. ***Forward,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** The center battalion commander is the guide and marches on the regimental commander.

(6) Battalion staff officers remain at their posts.

(7) After being dismissed, the battalion commanders turn successively to the right or left, move at a trot toward their respective battalions, each by the most direct route, and resume their posts. If dismounted, they face about at the command ***POSTS,*** and at the command ***MARCH*** proceed to their posts in quick time and by the most direct route.

(8) To march the regiment in review, the regimental commander commands, or orders: ***PASS IN REVIEW.*** The regiment marches according to the principles of review.

487. Regimental parade (alternate ceremony).—*a.* An alternate ceremony for regimental parade may be substituted for that prescribed in paragraph 486 when the size of the regiment or other circumstances make it desirable. Regimental and battalion commanders and their staffs may be mounted or dismounted. Company officers may be mounted or dismounted depending upon whether their companies are with or without transportation.

b. The ceremony proceeds according to the principles laid down in paragraph 486. The battalion commanders and their staffs close on the line of battalion commanders, company commanders form line 3 paces in rear of the line of battalion commanders, guidon bearers form line 4 paces in rear of the line of company commanders, and all other officers form line 3 paces in rear of the line of guidon bearers.

SECTION IV

PRESENTATION OF DECORATIONS

488. Presentation of decorations.—*a.* Whenever practicable a review will be held on occasions of—

(1) The presentation of an American decoration, except when the medal of honor is presented in person by the President.

(2) The decoration of the colors.

(3) The presentation of a foreign decoration.

b. After the reviewing officer has passed around the line and resumed his post, the commanding officer of the troops from his post commands, or orders: 1. ***Persons to be decorated and all colors, center,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH,*** persons to be decorated and all colors move by the most direct route and take post as follows:

(1) The persons to be decorated in single rank in the center of the command and 12 paces in front of the line of company

commanders in groups according to rank of decorations; within each group according to rank of individuals, highest ranking decoration and individual on the right, respectively.

(2) Colors to be decorated in single rank 6 paces in front of the center of the line of persons to be decorated in groups according to rank or decoration to be bestowed, highest ranking decoration on the right.

(3) All other colors with color guards in single rank 6 paces in rear of the center of the persons to be decorated and in the same relative position as their location in the command.

(4) The commanding officer of the troops takes post 6 paces in front of the center of the leading element. He then commands: 1. ***Forward,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH,*** the commanding officer, the persons to be decorated, and the colors advance, the band playing. The commanding officer of the troops marches on the reviewing officer. In all ranks the guide is center. The detachment is halted by the commanding officer of the troops when he has reached a point 6 paces from the reviewing officer by the command: 1. ***Detachment,*** 2. ***HALT.*** He then salutes the reviewing officer and reports, "Sir, the persons (colors) to be decorated are present." The reviewing officer returns the salute and directs that the command be presented. The commander of the troops returns to his post in front of the center of his command by moving around the right flank of the persons or colors to be decorated and then directly to his post. On reaching his post he commands: 1. ***Present,*** 2. ***ARMS,*** faces about and salutes. The band then plays the *National Anthem.* If only field music is present, it sounds *To the color.* On completion of the music, the commanding officer of the troops brings the command to the order. The persons to be decorated salute and terminate the salute at the commands, ***Present arms*** and ***Order arms,*** respectively, of the commanding officer of the troops.

c. A designated staff officer then reads the order announcing the awards. After the reading of the order the reviewing officer, accompanied if necessary by his staff or designated members thereof, advances to the colors and to the line of persons to be decorated and fastens the appropriate streamer to the staff of the color, and pins the decoration awarded on the left breast of each person. He then directs the commanding officer of the troops to march the command in review and resumes his

post. The persons decorated form line on the left of the reviewing officer or as otherwise directed, and the colors return to their posts by the most direct route.

SECTION V

ESCORTS

489. Escort of the color.—*a.* (1) The regiment being in line (peace or reduced strength) the regimental commander details a company other than the color company to receive and escort the national color to its place. For this ceremony the regimental color forms with the color guard at its post with the regiment.

(2) The band moves straight to its front until clear of the line of field officers, changes direction if necessary, and halts. The designated company forms column of threes (for a 1-platoon company) or column of platoon masses (for a 2-platoon company) 15 paces in rear of band with the color bearer in rear of leading platoon or section.

(3) The escort then marches without music to the regimental commander's office or quarters and forms line if in column of threes, or line of masses if in platoon mass, facing the entrance.

(4) The color bearer, preceded by the senior lieutenant and followed by a sergeant of the escort, obtains the color.

(5) When the color bearer returns, followed by the lieutenant and the sergeant, he halts before the entrance, facing the escort. The lieutenant places himself on the right and the sergeant on the left of the color bearer. The escort then presents arms and the field music sounds *To the color.* The lieutenant and the sergeant salute at the command of the company commander.

(6) Arms are brought to the order; the lieutenant and the sergeant return to their posts. The company is formed in column, the band taking post in front of the column. The color bearer places himself in the center of the space in rear of the leading platoon or section. The escort then marches back to the regiment, the band playing. The march is conducted so that the escort arrives at a point 50 paces in front of the right of the regiment and then passes parallel to its front. When the color arrives opposite the center of the regiment, the escort is formed in line to the left. The color bearer moves to a position 6 paces in front of the regimental commander.

(7) The color bearer having halted, the regimental commander, who, prior to the arrival of the color bearer, has taken post 30 paces in front of the center of the regiment, turns about and commands: 1. ***Present***, 2. ***ARMS.*** The regimental commander then turns to the front and salutes. The field music sounds *To the color* when the regimental commander salutes.

(8) The regimental commander then turns about and brings the regiment to the order and the color bearer takes post beside the regimental color bearer.

(9) The escort executes ***present and order arms*** at the command of its commander who then forms it in column to the right and, preceded by the band, marches it to its place, passing around the left flank of the regiment.

(10) The band plays until the escort passes the left of the line. The band then returns to its post on the right, passing in rear of the regiment.

(11) The regiment may be given the command ***rest*** when the escort passes the left of the line.

b. For a war strength regiment, the regiment being in line of battalions, each battalion in column of company masses, the ceremony is carried out according to the same principles as for the peace or reduced strength regiment (*a* above). The escort marches in column of platoon masses. When in line the formation is line of platoon masses. The post of the color is in rear of the second platoon.

c. Escort of the color is executed by a battalion according to the same principles as for a regiment.

490. Escorts of honor.—*a.* Escorts of honor are detailed for the purpose of receiving and escorting personages of high rank, civil or military. The troops detailed for this duty are selected for their soldierly appearance and superior discipline.

b. The escort forms in line, opposite the place where the personage is to present himself, the band on the flank of the escort toward which it is to march. On the appearance of the personage, the escort will be brought to attention and, when he has taken position from which to receive them, the honors due his rank will be rendered. Ordinarily the person so honored will inspect his escort. The escort then forms column of threes or masses and takes up the march. The personage with his staff or retinue takes position in rear of the column. When

the personage leaves the escort, line is again formed, and, when he has taken position from which to receive them, the same honors are rendered as on his arrival.

c. When the position of the escort is at a considerable distance from the point where the personage is to be received, as, for instance, where a courtyard or wharf intervenes, a double line of sentinels, facing inward, is posted from that point to the escort. The sentinels successively salute as the personage passes and then are relieved and join the escort.

d. An officer is designated to attend the personage and bear such message as he may desire to send to the commander of the escort.

491. Funeral escort.—*a.* (1) The composition and strength of the escort are prescribed in Army Regulations.

(2) The escort is formed opposite the place where the body of the deceased rests, the band on the flank of the escort toward which it is to march.

(3) Upon the appearance of the casket, the commander commands: 1. ***Present,*** 2. ***ARMS,*** and the band plays an appropriate air. At the conclusion of the music, arms are brought to the order. Other organizations are brought to attention by their commanders, who then salute.

(4) The escort forms column of threes or masses.

(5) The procession forms in the following order:

1. Music.
2. Escort.
3. Clergy.
4. Casket and pallbearers (honorary pallbearers, when present, in column of files on each side of the casket, the leading member of each column opposite the front wheels of the hearse or caisson; active pallbearers in column of twos immediately in rear of the casket).
5. Mourners.
6. Members of the former command of the deceased.
7. Other officers and soldiers.
8. Distinguished persons.
9. Delegations.
10. Societies.
11. Civilians.

Officers and soldiers are in order of rank, seniors in front.

(6) When the procession has been formed, the band and the escort are put in march by the commander of the escort. Elements in rear conform.

(7) The procession marches slowly to solemn music.

(8) When the column arrives at the burial ground, the escort is formed in line facing the grave. The remainder of the procession is conducted as close as practicable to the grave. When the casket is removed from the caisson or hearse the escort presents arms and the band plays an appropriate air. The casket is carried along the front of the escort and placed over the grave. When the casket is placed over the grave the escort is brought to the order and the band ceases playing.

(9) The commander of the escort then commands: 1. ***Parade,*** 2. ***REST.*** The escort executes ***parade rest,*** with the officers and men inclining the head. Other organizations present execute the same movement at the command of their commanders. They resume the attention in a similar manner.

(10) When the funeral services are completed and the casket lowered into the grave, the commander causes the escort to resume attention and to fire three volleys of blank cartridges. (See ch. 3, pt. one.) When the escort is larger than a company, one company is designated to fire the volleys.

(11) A bugler then sounds taps.

(12) The band and the escort are then put in march in quick time by the commander of the escort. Elements in rear conform. The band does not play until it has left the inclosure.

(13) When the distance to the place of interment is considerable, the escort, after leaving the camp or garrison, may march at ease in quick time until it approaches the burial ground, when it is brought to attention. The band does not play while the troops are marching at ease.

(14) The field music may alternate with the band in playing.

b. At the funeral of a person entitled to the honor, when arms are presented, the band plays the prescribed national air, or the field music sounds *To the color*, a march, flourishes, or ruffles, according to the rank of the deceased. On conclusion of the musical honors, the band plays an appropriate air.

c. At the funeral of a mounted officer or soldier, his horse, in mourning caparison, follows the hearse or caisson.

d. Should the entrance of the cemetery prevent the hearse or caisson from accompanying the escort to the grave, the column is halted at the entrance long enough to take the

casket from the hearse or caisson, when the troops are again put in march.

e. When necessary to escort the remains to a place where they are to rest before the funeral service, arms are presented upon receiving the remains and also as they are borne into the church or other place of rest.

f. Prior to the funeral, the necessary arrangements are made by the commander of the escort or a designated officer and the clergyman.

g. At a military funeral, all persons in the military service in uniform or civilian clothes, attending in their individual capacity, will stand at attention uncovered and hold the headdress over the left breast while the casket is being carried to and lowered into the grave, while taps is being sounded, and during the services at the grave. During the prayer they also bow their heads. In inclement weather the headdress may be raised and held over the head.

h. (1) In cases where the remains are cremated and the ashes interred with military honors, the provisions of *a* to *g* above will govern, the word "casket" being interpreted to include the receptacle containing the ashes.

(2) In cases where the remains are conducted to a crematory and the ashes are not to be interred with military honors, the final ceremony will consist only of the escort to the crematory. Arms are presented upon receiving the remains and also when they are borne into the crematory. The firing of volleys and the sounding of taps are omitted. In case the funeral ceremony is held at the crematory the escort will remain during the ceremony.

i. For details concerning use of flags, colors, and guidons, the honors to persons, and wearing of mourning, see Army Regulations.

SECTION VI

GUARD MOUNTING, FOOT TROOPS

492. General rules.—*a.* Guard mounting may be formal or informal as the commanding officer directs.

b. When infantry and dismounted troops are united for guard mounting, all details form as prescribed herein, subject to the provisions of Army Regulations, and guard mounting will be conducted as herein provided.

c. The commanding officer prescribes the uniform, arms, and equipment for guard duty.

493. Formal guard mounting.—*a.* When assembly is sounded the men who are going on guard are reported to the sergeant major at a designated point near the parade ground where guard mount is to be held. The sergeant major forms the guard, as a section, in three ranks, noncommissioned officers other than the sergeant of the guard being posted in line 3 paces in rear of the rear rank. The sergeant of the guard takes the post of section leader. If the guard consists of more than 24 privates, it will be formed as a platoon, in which case the sergeant of the guard acts as platoon sergeant and the next two senior noncommissioned officers as section leaders; throughout the ceremony they perform the duties of these leaders as prescribed for close-order drill. If an entire company is detailed on guard, the company forms and maneuvers as for close-order drill.

b. The band takes its place on the parade ground so that the left of its front rank is 12 paces to the right of the point where the right of the front rank of the guard is to be when formed. The adjutant signals to the band when *Adjutant's call* is to be sounded.

c. Immediately following *Adjutant's call,* the band plays. The adjutant, dismounted, with the sergeant major on his left, marches to the place on the parade ground selected for the ceremony. The adjutant halts and takes post so as to be 18 paces in front of and facing the center of the guard when formed. The sergeant major continues 18 paces, moves to the left, halts and faces about at 18 paces to the left of the front rank of the band. The guard detail is marched in column of threes to the parade ground by the noncommissioned officer designated to command it, and is halted on the left of the band and 18 paces therefrom with the left flank column in prolongation of the front rank of the band. The band ceases playing when the detail halts. The post of the noncommissioned officer in command of the detail is to the left and is abreast of the last man in the left flank file. The noncommissioned officer in command of the guard faces it to the left and commands: 1. ***Dress right,*** 2. ***DRESS.*** After allowing a few seconds for the guard to align itself to the right, the commander of the detail commands: 1. ***Ready,*** 2. ***FRONT,*** salutes the sergeant major and reports, "The detail is correct," or

"(so many) sergeants, corporals, or privates are absent." He then moves 3 paces beyond the sergeant major, marches to the right, and to a point 3 paces in rear of the right file of his detail, when he halts, executes ***right face,*** and either dresses on the line of noncommissioned officers or establishes that line.

d. The sergeant major returns the salute, then draws saber, if so armed, and commands: 1. ***Open ranks,*** 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. ***Ready,*** 4. ***FRONT.*** At the command ***MARCH*** the band moves 4 paces to the front and halts; the drum major aligns the band with the front rank of the guard detail. The sergeant major aligns the detail as described in paragraph 105. When the alignment is completed, the sergeant major places himself 9 paces in front of the center of the guard, halts, faces the adjutant, salutes and reports: " Sir, the details are correct," or " Sir, (so many) sergeants, corporals, or privates are absent."

e. The adjutant returns the salute, directs the sergeant major: ***TAKE YOUR POST,*** and then draws saber. The ser geant major then faces about, and moves by the right oblique directly to a point 3 paces beyond the left of the front rank, halts on the line of the front rank, faces to the front, and brings his saber to the order, if so armed. When the sergeant major leaves his post to report to the adjutant, the officer of the guard takes post 6 paces in rear of the right flank man of the rear rank of the guard. When there is a junior officer of the guard he takes post on the left of the senior officer of the guard. After the sergeant major has reported to the adjutant, the officer of the guard moves from the rear of the guard, passes around the right flank, and takes post, facing to the front, 9 paces in front of the center of the guard and draws saber. If there be a junior officer of the guard, he moves with the senior officer of the guard and takes post, facing to the front, 1 pace to the left of the senior, and draws saber with him.

f. The adjutant then commands: 1. ***Officer (or officers) and noncommissioned officers,*** 2. ***FRONT AND CENTER,*** 3. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***CENTER,*** the officer or officers carry saber, and the noncommissioned officers in rear of the detail face toward the nearest flank. At the command ***MARCH,*** the officer or officers advance and halt, remaining at the carry, 3 paces from the adjutant. The noncommissioned officers move by the most direct route and form in line in order of rank from right to left, facing to the front and 3 paces in rear of the officer or officers of the guard. They remain at the right shoul-

der. If there is no officer of the guard, the noncommissioned officers halt on a line, facing to the front, 3 paces from the adjutant. When the officer or officers and noncommissioned officers have halted, the adjutant, remaining at carry saber, inspects them, passing along the front of each rank from the right. The adjutant resumes his position, gives any special instructions required by the post commander, and commands: 1. ***Officer (or officers) and noncommissioned officers,*** 2. ***POSTS,*** 3. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***POSTS,*** all, except the officer of the guard, face about. At the command ***MARCH*** the noncommissioned officers resume their posts, moving by the shortest routes. If the guard consists of more than one platoon the junior officer of the guard, if present, takes the post and duties of the leader of the 1st platoon; the noncommissioned officer who has been acting as platoon leader takes the post of platoon sergeant.

g. The adjutant then directs the commander of the guard: "Inspect your guard, sir." The adjutant then returns saber. The officer commanding the guard faces about, commands: ***PREPARE FOR INSPECTION,*** returns saber, and proceeds to inspect the guard. The commander of the guard may direct the junior officer of the guard to assist in the inspection.

h. During the inspection the band plays. The adjutant observes the general condition of the guard and causes any man to fall out who is unfit for guard duty or does not present a creditable appearance. Men so fallen out march off in rear of the guard. Substitutes for men fallen out report to the commander of the guard at the guardhouse. The adjutant, when so directed, selects orderlies and color sentinels. He notifies the commander of the guard of his selections. If there be no officer of the guard, the adjutant inspects the guard.

i. (1) The inspection ended, the adjutant places himself about 30 paces in front of and facing the center of the guard, and draws saber. The commander of the guard takes his post 9 paces in front of the guard. If he be an officer, he draws saber with the adjutant and comes to the order. The new officer of the day takes post in front of and facing the center of the guard, about 30 paces in rear of the adjutant. The officer of the day without drawing saber takes the position of parade rest as prescribed in paragraph 23 *e* with the adjutant and resumes the attention with him.

(2) The adjutant then commands: 1. ***Parade,*** 2. ***REST,*** 3. ***SOUND OFF,*** and comes to the order and parade rest.

(3) The band in place plays the *Sound off* of three chords, giving two beats in quick time to each chord, and at the conclusion of the third chord moves forward playing in quick time, passes to the left of the line between the officer of the guard and the adjutant and back to its post on the right, when it halts and ceases playing, the *Sound off* being then again played.

(4) The adjutant then comes to attention, carries saber and commands: 1. ***Guard,*** 2. ***ATTENTION,*** 3. ***Close ranks,*** 4. ***MARCH.***

(5) The ranks are closed without command from platoon leaders.

(6) The adjutant then commands: 1. ***Present,*** 2. ***ARMS,*** faces toward the officer of the day, salutes, and then reports "Sir, the guard is formed." The officer of the day, after the adjutant has reported, returns the salute with the hand and directs the adjutant: "March the guard in review, Sir," or "March the guard to its post, Sir." The adjutant carries saber, faces about and brings the guard to the order.

(7) When directed to march the guard in review, the procedure is as follows:

(*a*) If the guard is organized as one section, the adjutant commands: 1. ***Right,*** 2. ***FACE.***

(*b*) If the guard is organized as one or more platoons, the adjutant commands: 1. ***Right,*** 2. ***FACE,*** 3. ***Close,*** 4. ***MARCH,*** 5. ***Platoon mass right,*** 6. ***MARCH.***

(*c*) The band turns to the right at the command ***FACE*** and places itself approximately 12 paces in front of the guard, and halts.

(*d*) The adjutant places himself 6 paces from the left flank of the guard and on line with the commander of the guard; the sergeant major, 6 paces from the left flank of the front rank of the guard. The officers and noncommissioned officers of the guard take their proper posts as prescribed for close-order drill.

(*e*) The adjutant then commands: 1. ***Pass in review,*** 2. ***Forward,*** 3. ***MARCH.***

(*f*) The guard moves in quick time with the band playing, past the officer of the day, marching and saluting according to the principles of review. The adjutant and the commander

of the guard salute together, leaders of platoons and drum major salute with their units and the sergeant major salutes with the unit by which he is marching.

(*g*) The band having passed, the officer of the day turns to the left out of the column, places itself opposite and facing him at a distance of 12 paces from where the left flank of the guard passes, and continues to play until the guard leaves the parade ground. The field music detaches itself from the band when the latter turns out of the column and, remaining in front of the guard, commences to play when the band ceases.

(*h*) Having passed 12 paces beyond the officer of the day, the adjutant halts. The sergeant major halts abreast of the adjutant and 1 pace to his left. The adjutant, and sergeant major if so armed, then return saber, face each other, salute and retire.

(*i*) After clearing the parade ground the guard is marched in column of threes to its post.

(*j*) While the band is sounding off and while the guard is marching in review, the officer of the day stands at attention with arms folded and raised so that the upper arms are horizontal. He takes this position when the adjutant comes to parade rest, resumes the attention with him.

(*k*) The officer of the day salutes once, returning the salutes of the commander of the guard and the adjutant.

(8) When directed to march the guard to its post, the adjutant repeats the command and the commander of the guard marches the guard directly to the guardhouse in the most practicable manner. The band and field music are dismissed.

j. The bugler of the new guard forms and continues with the field music and marches with it to the guardhouse. When the new guard is divided into reliefs, the bugler relieves the bugler of the old guard and with him reports to the new officer of the day for inspection and instruction.

494. Informal guard mounting.—*a*. Informal guard mounting is held on the parade ground of the organization from which the guard is detailed or, if the guard is detailed from more than one organization, at such place as the commanding officer may direct.

b. At assembly, the men who are going on guard are reported to the sergeant major at a designated point near the

parade ground where guard mount is to be held. The sergeant major forms the guard as for formal guard mounting, turns the detail over to the commander of the detail and retires. The detail commander then reports the detail to the commander of the guard at the point designated for the assembly.

c. (1) The commander of the guard takes post 3 paces in front of the center of the guard. The officer of the day takes his place 15 paces in front of and facing the center of the guard, and commands: 1. ***Officer (or officers) and noncommissioned officers,*** 2. ***FRONT AND CENTER,*** 3. ***MARCH.*** The officers and noncommissioned officers then take their positions, are inspected, given any special instructions desired, and sent to their posts as prescribed in formal guard mounting. The officer of the day commands: ***PREPARE FOR INSPECTION.*** The officer commanding the guard faces about and commands: 1. ***Open ranks,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** He then proceeds to the right flank of the guard, verifies the alignment, commands: 1. ***Ready,*** 2. ***FRONT,*** and takes post 3 paces in front of the center of the guard.

(2) The officer of the day then inspects the guard according to the principles of company inspection, sees to its fitness for the duty for which the guard is detailed, and selects the necessary orderlies and color sentinels. The men found unfit for guard are returned to quarters and replaced by suitable substitutes. This fact is reported by the officer of the day to the adjutant immediately after guard mounting.

(3) When the inspection is completed the officer of the day resumes his position and directs the commander of the guard to march the guard to its post. Ranks are closed and the guard marched, without music, in the most practicable manner.

(4) When the guard is commanded by a noncommissioned officer he takes post as prescribed for an officer, except that in marching to the front and center he takes post on the right of the line of noncommissioned officers. At the command of the officer of the day he returns to the post prescribed for the officer.

(5) The bugler of the new guard forms in the line of noncommissioned officers in rear of the detail at the formation of the guard and reports to the officer of the day as prescribed for formal guard mounting.

100821°—32——17

SECTION VII

RELIEVING THE OLD GUARD

495. March of new guard to guardhouse.—*a.* As the new guard approaches the guardhouse, the old guard is formed in line, with its field music 3 paces to its right and on the same line. When the field music at the head of the new guard arrives opposite the old guard's left, the commander of the new guard commands: 1. ***Eyes,*** 2. ***RIGHT*** and the commander of the old guard commands: 1. ***Present,*** 2. ***ARMS.*** Commanders of both guards exchange salutes. The new guard marches in quick time past the front of the old guard.

b. When the commander of the new guard is opposite the field music of the old guard, he commands: 1. ***Ready,*** 2. ***FRONT.*** The commander of the old guard commands: 1. ***Order,*** 2. ***ARMS,*** as soon as the new guard has cleared the front of the old guard.

c. The field music having marched 3 paces beyond the field music of the old guard changes direction to the right, and followed by the guard changes direction to the left when on line with the old guard. The changes of direction are without command. The commander of the new guard halts on the line established by the old guard, allows his guard to march past him, halts it and forms line 3 paces to the right of the field music of the old guard, and dresses his guard to the left. The field music of the new guard halts 3 paces to the right of the new guard on the line of its front rank.

496. Presenting old and new guards.—*a.* After the new guard is dressed, the commander of each guard, in front of and facing its center, commands: 1. ***Present,*** 2. ***ARMS,*** resumes his front, salutes the other guard, carries saber, faces toward his guard and commands: 1. ***Order,*** 2. ***ARMS.***

b. If the guard is commanded by a noncommissioned officer, he takes post and executes the facings as prescribed for an officer and renders the proper salute, rifle, saber or hand, according to his equipment.

497. Presenting guards to officers of the day.—After the new guard has arrived at its post and the commanders of the guards have exchanged salutes, each guard is presented by its commander to its officer of the day. If there be but one

officer of the day present, or if one officer acts in the capacity of the old and new officer of the day, each guard is presented to him by its commander.

498. Salutes by guard.—*a.* If other persons entitled to a salute approach, each commander of the guard brings his own guard to attention if not already at attention. The senior commander of the two guards then commands: 1. ***Old and new guards,*** 2. ***Present,*** 3. ***ARMS.***

b. The junior salutes at the command ***Present,*** given by the senior. After the salute has been acknowledged, the senior brings both guards to the order arms.

499. Disposition of new guard.—*a.* After the salutes have been acknowledged by the officers of the day, each guard is brought to the order by its commander. The commander of the new guard then directs the orderly or orderlies to fall out and report, and causes bayonets to be fixed, if so ordered by the commanding officer. Bayonets are not thereafter unfixed during the tour except in route marches, while the guard is actually marching, or when especially directed by the commanding officer.

b. The commander of the new guard then causes to fall out members of the guard for detached posts, places them under charge of the proper noncommissioned officers and then divides the remainder of the guard into three reliefs. When the guard consists of troops of different arms combined, the men are assigned to reliefs, under rules prescribed by the commanding officer, so that a fair division of duty may be assured.

500. Relief by new guard.—The sentinels and detachments of the old guard are at once relieved by members of the new guard. The two guards stand at ease or at rest while these changes are being made. The commander of the old guard transmits to the commander of the new guard all his orders, instructions, and information concerning the guard and its duties. The commander of the new guard then takes possession of the guardhouse and verifies the articles charged to the guard.

501. Dismissing old guard.—If considerable time is required to bring in that portion of the old guard still on post, the commanding officer may direct that, as soon as the orders and property are turned over to the new guard, the portion of the old guard at the guardhouse be marched off and dismissed.

In such cases, the remaining detachment or detachments of the old guard are inspected by the commander of the new guard when they reach the guardhouse. The latter directs the senior noncommissioned officer present to march these detachments off and dismiss them in the prescribed manner. For taking over prisoners, conducting relief of sentinels, etc., see TR 135–15.

502. When field music may be dispensed with.—In bad weather, at night, after long marches, or when the guard is very small, the field music may be dispensed with.

CHAPTER 2

INSPECTIONS

		Paragraphs
SECTION I.	The rifle company	503–506
II.	The machine-gun company	507–508
III.	The battalion	509–516
IV.	Battalion, regimental, and brigade headquarters companies	517–518
V.	The howitzer company	519–520
VI.	The service company of the regiment	521
VII.	The regiment	522–523

SECTION I

THE RIFLE COMPANY

503. Formation and procedure.—*a.* (1) The company being in column of platoons, the company commander commands: ***PREPARE FOR INSPECTION.*** At this command platoon leaders cause ranks to be opened. They then place themselves, facing to the front, 3 paces in advance of the right flank of their platoons.

(2) Ranks having been opened, the company commander commands ***AT EASE*** and returns saber. He then inspects the guidon bearers, the second in command, and the first sergeant. During this inspection the guidon bearer comes to attention without command, guidon at the order, and after being inspected resumes the position of rest. The second in command comes to attention, executes ***carry saber*** and after being inspected returns saber and accompanies the company commander, assisting him as the latter may direct. The first sergeant comes to attention and after being inspected resumes the position of rest or accompanies the captain if so directed. The company commander, commencing at the head of the column, then makes a minute inspection of the arms, equipment, dress, and appearance of the personnel of the company headquarters and of the several platoons. As he approaches each platoon its leader faces to the left, brings the platoon to attention, faces to

the front, and salutes. As soon as inspected he returns saber, places himself on the right of the company commander, and accompanies him throughout the inspection of the platoon.

(3) The senior noncommissioned officer present with company headquarters acts as platoon leader and prepares the detachment for inspection as prescribed for a platoon leader.

(4) The inspection is made from right to left in front and from left to right in rear of each rank.

(5) Each man, as the company commander approaches him, executes ***inspection arms.***

(6) The company commander takes the piece, grasping it with the right hand just above the lower band, the man dropping his hands. He inspects the piece and, with the hand and piece in the same position as in receiving it, hands it back to the man, who takes it with the left hand at the balance and executes ***order arms.***

(7) Men successively execute ***inspection arms*** as the company commander returns the piece to the man on their right. Should the piece be inspected without handling, each man executes ***order arms*** as soon as the company commander has passed to the next man.

(8) A man armed with the automatic rifle executes ***inspection arms*** as the company commander returns the piece of the man on his right. The inspection completed, he pulls the trigger, replaces the magazine, and resumes the position of the soldier, the automatic rifle being slung.

(9) Enlisted men armed with the pistol execute ***inspection pistol*** as prescribed in paragraphs 73 and 81. When the company commander has passed they execute return pistol.

(10) Upon completion of the inspection of each platoon, its leader takes his post, draws saber, faces to the left, commands: 1. ***Close ranks,*** 2. ***MARCH*** and adds ***AT EASE*** after ranks have been closed. He then takes his post in front of the center of the platoon.

(11) The company commander may direct the platoon leaders to make the detailed inspection of arms or other equipment of the men of their platoons.

b. The company in line is inspected according to similar principles.

c. When the company is formed as a single platoon, or when extra officers are present with a platoon, the captain inspects the officers before beginning the inspection of the front rank.

504. Inspection of quarters or camp.—*a.* When the company is dismissed, arms are put away. In quarters, headdress and accouterments are removed and the men stand near their respective bunks; in camp they stand covered but without accouterments in front of their tents.

b. If the personal field equipment has not been inspected in ranks and its inspection in camp or in quarters is ordered, each man arranges the required articles as prescribed in Chapter 2, Part Three.

c. The company commander accompanied by the other officers of the company then inspects the quarters or camp. The first sergeant precedes the company commander and calls the men to attention on entering each squad room or on approaching each tent; the men stand at attention but do not salute.

505. Inspection of personal field equipment while in ranks.—*a.* If the inspection is to include an examination of the personal field equipment while in ranks, the company commander, after the inspection of arms has been completed, causes the platoon to take interval and prepare for inspection of equipment. Intervals having been taken, the platoon leader commands: 1. ***UNSLING EQUIPMENT,*** 2. ***OPEN PACKS.***

b. At the first command, each man steps to the right with the right foot a full pace, lays his rifle on the ground, muzzle to the front, barrel to the left, butt near the toe of his right foot, unslings his equipment and places it on the ground at his feet, haversack to the front, the pack one foot in front of the toes.

c. At the second command packs are opened and equipment displayed as prescribed in Chapter 2, Part Three.

d. The captain then passes along the ranks as before, inspects the equipment and directs the platoon leader to have packs closed and the platoon assembled. The platoon leader then commands: ***CLOSE PACKS.***

e. Each man assembles his equipment as prescribed in Chapter 1, Part Three, and, leaving the equipment in its position on the ground at his feet, resumes the attention.

f. All equipment being assembled, the platoon leader commands: ***SLING EQUIPMENT.***

g. Packs are slung and belts fastened and rifles taken.

h. The platoon leader than causes the platoon to assemble. The inspection is completed as already explained.

506. Inspecting officer other than the captain.—When the company has been formed for inspection and the inspecting officer is some one other than the company commander, the latter, after commanding ***REST,*** will face to the front. When the inspecting officer approaches, the captain will face about, bring the company to attention, face to the front and salute. As soon as the company commander has been inspected he faces about, commands ***AT EASE,*** returns saber and accompanies the inspecting officer. During the inspection of a platoon its leader marches on the right of the inspecting officer. The inspection proceeds as hereinbefore prescribed.

SECTION II

THE MACHINE-GUN COMPANY

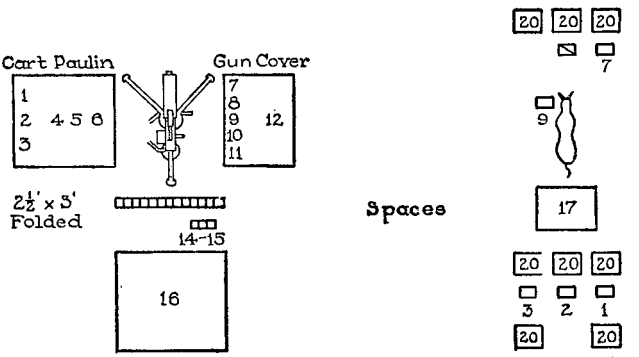
507. General principles.—*a.* The instructions contained in this section apply to the inspection of the gun, fire control, signal communication, cart and individual equipment of the machine-gun company, platoon, section, or squad with transportation. The following paragraphs outline the method of displaying the equipment for inspection and the procedure in inspecting a machine-gun company.

b. The method of inspection may be modified by the inspecting officer as circumstances require.

c. Individual equipment of the soldiers will be displayed as prescribed in Chapter 2, Part Three.

508. Formation and procedure.—*a.* The company being in column of platoons, each platoon in line of squads, the company commander commands: ***PREPARE FOR INSPECTION.*** At this command, ranks are opened by platoon leaders and the inspection proceeds as in paragraph 503, with the exception that the company commander, in addition to inspecting personnel and individual equipment, inspects the transportation, harnessing, and loading. All mounted men dismount. A bugler holds the company commander's horse 3 paces in rear of the company headquarters detachment. The mount of each platoon leader is held by a designated platoon runner who takes post 3 paces to the left of and on line with the gun-cart mule of the left squad of the platoon. During inspection, the guidon bearer takes post dismounted on the right of the company headquarters.

b. If it is desired further to inspect equipment, the company commander commands: ***LAY OUT EQUIPMENT.*** Squads break ranks and under the supervision of the squad leaders dis-



1. Steam Cond Device
2. Flash Hider
3. Asbestos Mittens
4. Cleaning Rod
5. Spare Barrel
6. Contents of Gunner's Pouch
7. Clinometer
8. Luminous Sights
9. Alidade
10. Protractor
11. Fire-Control Table
12. Parts of Gun, if Disassembled
13. Amm. Chests
14. Water Chests
15. Carrying Slings
16. Section and Platoon Equipment
17. Gun Cart
18. Amm. Cart
19. Cart Repair Tool Roll
20. Individual Equipment

FIGURE 79.—Layout of equipment for inspection

play squad and individual equipment arranged as shown in Figure 79. The assistant mule leader, having displayed his individual equipment, holds the mule while the mule leader dis-

plays his individual equipment. The company commander proceeds as before. The tool chest covers are unhooked and opened. The tool box is pulled to the rear and the cover raised. The tool roll, pertaining to the cart-repair outfit, is displayed on the top of the ammunition rack of the ammunition cart.

c. When the inspecting officer approaches, the company commander faces the company, brings it to attention, faces the front, and salutes the inspecting officer. When the inspection of the company commander is completed, he again faces the company, commands: ***AT EASE,*** and accompanies the inspecting officer.

d. When the inspecting officer approaches the right or leading platoon, the platoon leader faces to the left, brings the platoon to attention, and again faces to the front. He accompanies the inspector during the inspection of the platoon.

e. Upon completion of the inspection of each platoon, its leader takes his post, draws saber, faces to the left, commands: 1. ***Close ranks,*** 2. ***MARCH*** and adds ***AT EASE*** after ranks have been closed. He then takes his post in front of the center of the platoon.

SECTION III

THE BATTALION

509. Preparation of companies for inspection.—The headquarters, rifle and machine-gun companies are prepared for inspection and inspected in the manner prescribed in paragraphs 518, 503, and 508, respectively.

510. Procedure in inspecting.—*a.* The battalion being in column of platoons, with all personnel except that of the machine-gun company dismounted, the battalion commander commands: ***PREPARE FOR INSPECTION.*** At this command each company and the band, if present, are prepared for inspection. Buglers rejoin their companies. The color bearer and the color guard proceed to the head of the column and take position 3 paces in rear of the staff.

b. The battalion commander then commands ***REST,*** returns saber and inspects his staff and the color guard. When the battalion commander approaches the staff the officers, without command, come to attention and execute ***carry saber.*** When they have been inspected they return saber and accompany the

major. As the battalion commander approaches the color guard the color bearer commands: 1. ***Color guard,*** 2. ***ATTENTION.*** The color guard may be dismissed as soon as inspected.

c. The battalion commander, commencing at the head of the column, makes an inspection of arms, accouterments, dress, and appearance of the personnel of the band and the several companies in succession.

d. When the inspection of the band has been completed, it may be dismissed or may be conducted to the rear of the column and be required to play during the inspection, as directed.

e. As the battalion commander approaches each company its company commander faces toward it and commands: 1. ***Company,*** 2. ***ATTENTION,*** faces to the front and salutes. As soon as he has been inspected he faces about and commands ***AT EASE,*** returns saber and accompanies the battalion commander. The inspection proceeds as prescribed for company inspection.

f. The battalion commander may direct the company commanders to make the detailed inspection of arms or other equipment of their companies. He may require officers of his staff to assist in the inspection, especially by checking equipment.

g. When a company has been inspected the major directs that it be dismissed or otherwise occupied.

511. Other formations authorized.—The battalion, in any other formation directed, may be inspected according to similar principles.

512. Companies not under inspection may fall out.—When desired, the battalion commander may cause companies not under inspection to stack arms, fall out, and resume their places in time to be inspected.

513. Inspection of camp or quarters.—During the inspection of the camp or quarters of a company, the battalion commander is preceded by the first sergeant and followed by the company commander. Such other officers as may be designated follow the company commander.

514. Inspection of field and combat trains.—Field and combat trains are inspected at such place and in such formation as the battalion commander may direct.

515. Inspecting officer other than the battalion commander.—If the inspecting officer be other than the battalion commander, the latter prepares the battalion for inspection as

prescribed in the preceding paragraphs. Upon the approach of the inspecting officer the battalion commander brings the battalion to attention, faces to the front, and salutes. The inspecting officer inspects the battalion commander, who then commands ***REST,*** returns saber, and accompanies the inspecting officer. The inspection then proceeds as hereinbefore prescribed.

516. Inspection by battalion exceptional.—As a general rule, an inspection by battalion is not made unless special conditions make it desirable. Ordinarily it is preferable to inspect each company in its own area, or have the companies marched successively to a designated place in time to be inspected.

SECTION IV

BATTALION, REGIMENTAL, AND BRIGADE HEADQUARTERS COMPANIES

517. General.—The company, in any of the special formations given in paragraphs 305 and 306, is inspected in a manner similar to that of the rifle company. For a more detailed inspection of the personnel and equipment, the special formation described below may be used.

518. Inspection formation.—*a.* The company being in mounted assembly formation and having arrived near the ground selected for the inspection, forms for inspection as follows: The company commander, mounted, establishes the senior noncommissioned officer of company headquarters at the point where he wishes the right of the formation to rest and causes him to face in the direction the company is to be faced for inspection. He then takes post 3 paces in front of the noncommissioned officer so posted, faces to the rear, and commands: ***FORM FOR INSPECTION.***

b. At this command, the next senior noncommissioned officer of company headquarters marches to the company headquarters and halts it 3 paces in rear of the senior noncommissioned officer. He then commands: 1. ***Form for inspection,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH,*** the men of company headquarters move forward and place themselves in single rank on line with, and to the left of, the senior noncommissioner officer. All dress to the right. The senior noncommissioned officer aligns company headquarters and commands: 1. ***Ready,*** 2. ***FRONT,*** 3. ***AT EASE.***

c. Each remaining section then forms in a similar manner in rear of the company headquarters with a distance of 3 paces and in the following order: Staff section, intelligence platoon, pioneer platoon (regiment only), communication platoon headquarters, message center section, radio and visual section, wire section, and transportation section. If a given element such as the pioneer platoon occupies an excessive frontage, it may be divided into two sections, the second being formed 3 paces in rear of the first. Each section is marched by its senior noncommissioned officer present or its officer to a point 3 paces in rear of where it is to form. The senior takes post, faces to the left, and commands: 1. ***Form for inspection,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** He then faces to the front. Men of the section execute the movement as prescribed for company headquarters. The section is properly aligned by its senior, who then commands: ***AT EASE.***

d. The company commander, from his position, requires the chiefs of each section to cover in file. When the movement is completed, the company commander commands ***REST*** and dismounts.

e. The inspection then proceeds in a manner similar to that prescribed for the rifle company.

f. The company may be dismissed by section or platoon after the inspection of each is completed, if so directed by the inspecting officer; or the entire company can be re-formed in any desired formation by establishing a guide and giving the commands for the formation.

g. The guidon bearer is on the left of the mounted messengers of the message center section.

h. Transportation forms in rear of the personnel, and the equipment carried on the transportation is displayed in rear of each vehicle.

SECTION V

THE HOWITZER COMPANY

519. General principles.—*a.* The instructions contained in this section apply to the inspection of the gun, fire-control, signal communication, and cart equipment of the howitzer company, platoon or squad transportation and individual equipment. The following paragraphs outline the method of display-

ing the equipment for inspection and the procedure in inspecting a howitzer company.

b. The method of inspection may be modified by the inspecting officer as circumstances require.

c. Individual equipment of the soldiers will be displayed as prescribed in Chapter 2, Part Three.

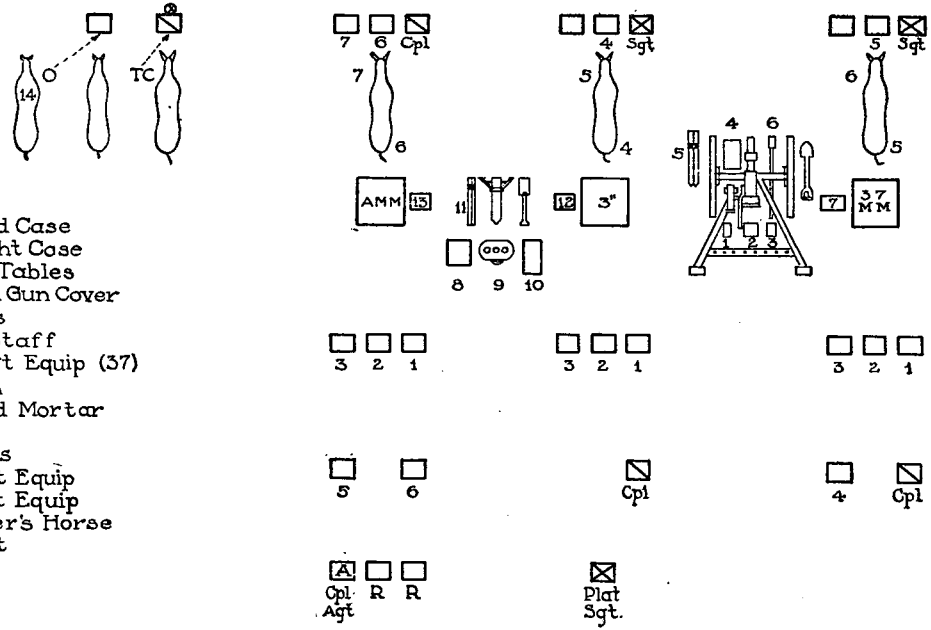
520. Formation and procedure.—*a.* The company being in column of platoons, each platoon in line of squads, the company commander commands: ***PREPARE FOR INSPECTION.*** At this command, ranks are opened by platoon leaders and the inspection proceeds as in paragraph 503, with the exception that the company commander, in addition to inspecting personnel and individual equipment, inspects the transportation, harnessing, and loading. All mounted men dismount. A bugler holds the company commander's horse 3 paces in rear of company headquarters detachment. The mount of each platoon leader is held by a designated platoon runner who takes post 3 paces to the left of and on line with the cart mule of the left squad. During inspection, the guidon bearer takes post dismounted on the right of the company headquarters.

b. If it is desired to further inspect equipment, the company commander commands: ***LAY OUT EQUIPMENT.*** Squads break ranks and under supervision of the squad leaders display squad and individual equipment arranged as shown in Figure 80.

c. When the inspecting officer approaches, the company commander faces the company, brings it to attention, faces the front, and salutes the inspecting officer. When the inspection of the company commander is completed, he again faces the company, commands: ***AT EASE,*** and accompanies the inspecting officer.

d. When the inspecting officer approaches the right or leading platoon, the platoon leader faces to the left, brings the platoon to attention, and again faces to the front. He accompanies the inspector during the inspection of the platoon.

e. Upon completion of the inspection of each platoon, its leader takes his post, draws saber, faces to the left, commands: 1. ***Close ranks,*** 2. ***MARCH,*** and adds ***AT EASE*** after ranks have been closed. He then takes his post in front of the center of the platoon.



Legend

1. Quad. Sight and Case
2. Telescopic Sight Case
3. Compass-F.C. Tables
4. Flash Hider and Gun Cover
5. Aiming Stakes
6. Clean Brush Staff
7. Paulin and Cart Equip (37)
8. Gunner's Pouch
9. Base Plate and Mortar
10. Sand bags
11. Aiming Stakes
12. Paulin and Cart Equip
13. Paulin and Cart Equip
14. Platoon Leader's Horse

Ind. Equipment

FIGURE 80.—Formation and display of equipment of the howitzer platoon for inspection

SECTION VI

THE SERVICE COMPANY OF THE REGIMENT

521. General.—*a.* The company commander prescribes the formation and equipment for company inspection.

b. At regimental inspection the part of the service company with the combined special units is inspected as a rifle company.

c. For the inspection of transportation, the combined special units and battalion trains will ordinarily be in line or column of company sections. (Fig. 67.) Assistant wagonmasters in charge of trains are posted, facing the front, 9 paces in front of their trains. Other personnel, individually mounted, form the leading element of the combined special unit train.

d. For regimental inspection, trains are formed as shown in Figures 71, 72, and 73. The regimental train commander is posted 15 paces in front of the center of the line of trains when the regiment is formed in line, and 15 paces in front of the center of the column of trains when the regiment is formed in column of battalions. The wagonmaster is posted 6 paces in rear of the train commander.

e. The formation of transportation for inspection may be modified to suit the ground.

SECTION VII

THE REGIMENT

522. General.—The commands, means, and principles are the same as prescribed for the battalion. The regiment may be formed in any suitable formation required by the space and ground available. Battalions are prepared for inspection as prescribed for battalion inspection. Upon the approach of the inspecting officer, each battalion commander brings his battalion to attention and salutes. Battalion inspection follows.

523. Regimental inspections exceptional.—Only in very exceptional situations will a regimental inspection be ordered. As a rule, inspections will be as indicated for the battalion in Section III.

CHAPTER 3

MANUAL OF THE GUIDON

	Paragraphs
SECTION I. General	524
II. Dismounted	525–535
III. Mounted	536

SECTION I

GENERAL

524. Care and use.—The guidon is a company emblem, its specifications prescribed and use authorized by Army Regulations. The care and use of the guidon are governed by the following rules:

a. It is carried at ceremonies; on other occasions it is carried only when prescribed by the commander.

b. In garrison it is kept in the orderly room when not being carried in formation.

c. In camp it is displayed at the head of the company street or in front of the orderly-room tent of the company, between reveille and retreat, except during inclement weather and when being carried in formation.

d. On the march it is with the company baggage or left at the orderly room should the baggage not be carried.

e. In combat it is always with the company baggage.

f. The guidon bearer is a specially selected enlisted man designated by the company commander.

SECTION II

DISMOUNTED

525. General rules.—The guidon is brought to present arms, parade rest, the order, and the trail with the company. At the command of execution of other movements of the manual, the guidon is brought to the carry. When falling in, standing at rest or at ease, executing the facings, side step, and alignments, the guidon is carried as prescribed for the rifle. When march-

ing at route step or at ease the guidon is at the carry, the lance held by either hand. If at the order, unless otherwise prescribed, the guidon is brought to the carry at the command of execution for marching in quick time. The guidon is brought to the position of double time at the preparatory command for marching in double time.

526. Carry guidon.—The lance of the guidon is held vertically in the right hand, resting in the hollow formed by the thumb and first finger, back of the hand to the right, arm extending downward, lance resting in the hollow of the shoulder, ferrule about 6 inches from the ground. The carry is the habitual position when troops are marching.

527. Begin at the carry guidon, to execute order guidon.—Lower the lance to the ground so that the ferrule is on a line with and touching the toe of the right shoe, right hand grasping the lance as in the carry.

528. Being at order guidon, to execute carry guidon.—Grasp the lance with the left hand opposite the right elbow and raise the lance 6 inches, permitting it to slide through the right hand. Cut the left hand smartly to the side and assume the position of the carry.

529. Being at order guidon, to execute parade rest.—Executed in a similar manner as when armed with the rifle, without changing the position of the right hand.

530. Guidon salute.—Being at the order or carry. At the command ***Present***, throw the guidon forward to a vertical position, right arm extended horizontally, steadying the lance with the left hand below the right. At the command ***ARMS,*** assisted by the left hand, place the lance beneath the right shoulder, right arm fully extended, lance horizontal; cut the left hand to the side. When passing in review, the first motion of the guidon salute is executed as the company commander completes the saber salute. The guidon is brought to the carry with the company commander.

531. Being at the guidon salute.—To execute order or carry guidon. Raise the lance to a vertical position with the right hand. Lower the lance with the right hand, steadied by the left, allow the lance to slide through the hand to the position of order or carry.

532. Individual salute by guidon bearer.—At the carry, order, or trail. Bring the lance to a vertical position. Salute

with the left hand. Left hand and arm in same relative position as when executing the rifle salute.

533. **Being at the order, to execute trail guidon.**—Raise the lance and incline the guidon forward so that the lance makes an angle of about 15° with the vertical, the right arm bent slightly.

534. **Being at the trail, to execute order guidon.**—Lower the lance with the right hand and resume the order.

535. **At double time.**—The guidon is held diagonally across the body, the right hand grasping the lance at the position used at the carry, right forearm horizontal, elbow near the body, left hand grasping the lance opposite the junction of the neck and left shoulder.

SECTION III

MOUNTED

536. **General rules.**—When carried mounted the following modifications will prevail:

a. When leading the horse the lance is held in the left hand in the same relative manner as in the trail dismounted.

b. At stand to horse, the heel of the lance is raised slightly from the ground while stepping back; upon halting, the heel is placed on the ground about one foot in front of the left forefoot of the horse; the left hand continues to grasp the lance, as well as a lock of the mane.

c. After mounting, the lance is grasped with the right hand and is then raised over the reins, and is lowered on the right side of the saddle, the heel being inserted in the guidon socket, the right arm is passed through the sling.

d. When mounted, the heel being in the guidon socket, the right hand grasps the lance, forearm nearly horizontal, the arm through the sling, lance vertical. This is the position of carry guidon, mounted, and is the habitual position of the guidon when the guidon bearer is mounted.

e. (1) Guidon salute and return to the carry are executed as from carry, dismounted, except that the left hand is not used in executing these movements.

(2) The individual salute is not rendered by a guidon bearer when mounted.

f. At the command ***Prepare to dismount,*** the arm is disengaged from the sling, the heel is disengaged from the guidon

socket; the lance, slightly inclined to the rear, is carried over the reins, the lance lowered until the heel rests on the ground about one foot in front of the left forefoot of the horse and the lance grasped jointly in the left hand with a lock of the mane. After dismounting the position of stand to horse is assumed.

g. When the organization is marching at route step, or at ease, the guidon may be carried at will with the spearhead elevated.

CHAPTER 4

MANUAL OF THE SABER

		Paragraphs
SECTION I.	General	537
II.	Dismounted	538–543
III.	Mounted	544–546

SECTION I

GENERAL

537. General.—*a.* For garrison service all officers and warrant officers are equipped with the officer's saber. The saber is not carried in the field.

b. Dismounted, the scabbard is carried on the left side attached to the belt by the saber sling or chain and hooked to the belt by means of the upper ring, guard of the saber to the rear.

c. Mounted, the scabbard is carried in the saber carrier attached to the offside of the cantle of the saddle, guard of the saber to the rear.

d. Officers of a commander's staff draw and return saber with him.

e. The position of order saber is assumed by dismounted officers when in formation at attention, except as otherwise provided in *f*, *g*, *h*, and *i* below. While troops are executing the manual of arms during ceremonies, dismounted officers remain at the position of order saber.

f. The position of carry saber is assumed:

(1) To give commands.

(2) To change position at quick time.

(3) When officially addressing or when officially addressed by another officer, if saber is drawn.

(4) In formation upon the approach of an inspector.

(5) Preparatory to returning saber.

(6) At the preparatory command for and while marching in quick time.

g. The position of present saber is assumed:

(1) To salute when the saber is drawn.

(2) At the command ***Present arms*** when the unit is presented to the colors, to any person, or when the *National Anthem* is played.

(3) At the command ***Eyes right (or left)*** when marching past a reviewing officer or stand.

h. The position of port saber is assumed when marching in double time.

i. The position of the saber at parade rest is assumed by dismounted officers whenever the unit executes ***parade rest.***

j. Mounted officers do not execute ***order saber, port saber, or parade rest.***

k. The manual of the saber is executed without command except for saber drill.

l. The saber may be carried in the scabbard while marching at ease or at route step

SECTION II

DISMOUNTED

538. To draw saber.—*a.* The commands are: 1. ***Draw,*** 2. ***SABER.*** At the command ***Draw,*** unhook the saber, with the thumb and first fingers of the left hand, thumb on the end of the hook, fingers lifting the upper ring. Grasp the scabbard with the left hand at the upper band and bring the hilt of the saber a little forward, guard down, blade inclined downward to the rear at an angle of about 45°. Turn the head and glance toward the saber knot. Engage the right wrist in the saber knot and secure it. Grasp the hilt in the right hand, press the left hand against the left thigh and draw the saber about 6 inches from the scabbard. Turn the head and eyes to the front.

b. At the command ***SABER,*** draw the saber quickly, raising the arm to its full extent to the right front at an angle of about 45° with the horizontal, the saber, edge down, in prolongation of the arm. Make a slight pause and bring the saber down so that the back of the blade is against the point of the shoulder, edge to the front, arm nearly extended, elbow back, the grip clasped easily between the first and second fingers and the thumb, the third and fourth fingers back of the grip. At the same time hook up the scabbard with the thumb and first two fingers of the left hand, thumb through the upper ring,

fingers supporting it. Drop the left hand by the side. This is the position of carry saber, dismounted.

c. Members of dismounted organizations will not engage the wrist in the saber knot except when they intend to publish orders, call the roll, etc.

539. To present saber.—*a.* The commands are: 1. ***Present,*** 2. ***SABER.*** At the command ***Present,*** raise and move the saber to the front, base of the hilt as high as and 3 inches in front of the chin, edge to the left, point 6 inches farther to the front than the hilt, thumb extended on the left of the grip, all fingers grasping the grip.

b. At the command ***SABER*** lower the saber smartly until the point is in prolongation of the right foot and near the ground, edge to the left, hand by the side, thumb on the left of the grip, arm extended. If marching, the arms swing naturally as when not carrying the saber.

c. ***Present saber*** is executed when 6 paces from the person saluted or at the point of nearest approach if more than 6 paces. The second position is held until the person saluted has passed or the salute has been returned. In passing in review a platoon leader salutes when he is 6 paces from a point directly opposite the reviewing officer. The second position is held until a point 6 paces beyond the reviewing officer is passed by the rearmost element of his platoon.

d. The commander of a unit larger than a platoon salutes when he is 6 paces from a point directly opposite the reviewing officer and holds the second position until his staff or guidon bearer has passed 6 paces beyond the reviewing officer.

e. The procedure described above for a platoon leader will be followed by a company or other unit commander if he is the person who gives the command ***Eyes right (or left).***

f. From present saber the position of carry is assumed in two counts in the cadence of quick time. The first count brings the saber to the order, the second count to the carry.

540. To return saber.—When practicable, ***return saber*** should be executed at the halt. The commands are: 1. ***Return,*** 2. ***SABER.*** At the command ***Return,*** carry the right hand opposite to and 6 inches in front of the left shoulder, saber vertical, edge to the left. At the same time unhook and lower the scabbard with the left hand and grasp it at the upper band. At the command ***SABER,*** drop the point to the rear and

pass the blade across and along the left arm. Turn the head slightly to the left, fixing the eyes on the opening of the scabbard, raise the right hand, insert and return the blade. Free the wrist from the saber knot, turn the head to the front and drop the right hand by the side. Hook up the scabbard with the left hand and drop the left hand by the side.

541. **To execute order saber.**—The commands are: 1. ***Order,*** 2. ***SABER.*** Being at carry saber at the command ***Order*** drop the point of the saber directly to the front point on or near the ground, edge down, thumb along the back of the grip.

If executed from the position of present, the saber is brought to the position of order by turning the hand to the left.

542. **To execute parade rest.**—Being at order saber, the commands are: 1. ***Parade,*** 2. ***REST.***

At the command ***REST*** move the left foot about 15 inches to the left of the right foot, keeping the legs straight, so that the weight of the body rests equally on both feet. Place the left hand behind the body, resting in the small of the back, palm to the rear.

At the command ***ATTENTION,*** resume the position of attention.

543. **To execute port saber.**—The commands are: 1. ***Port,*** 2. ***SABER.***

At the command ***SABER,*** the saber is carried diagonally across the breast, edge to the front, right hand at about the height of the waist and in front of the right hip, left hand steadying the scabbard.

SECTION III

MOUNTED

544. **To draw saber.**—At the command ***Draw,*** execute the same movements as when dismounted, except that the left hand is not used. At the command ***SABER,*** execute the same movements as when dismounted, except that at carry saber, mounted, the right hand rests on the thigh.

545. **To present saber.**—Executed at the same commands and in the same manner as when dismounted, except that after lowering the saber the hand is held slightly in rear of the thigh and the point of the saber is a little to the right and in front of the stirrup.

546. To return saber.—At the command ***Return,*** carry the hand to a position the height of and 6 inches in front of the right shoulder, the blade vertical, edge to the front, the grip grasped so that the pommel rests in the hollow of the hand. At the command ***SABER,*** turn the head and eyes toward the scabbard, raise the saber vertically to the full extent of the arm, lower the blade forward, insert the point in the scabbard and drive it home. Disengage the wrist from the saber knot and assume the position of attention.

CHAPTER 5

MANUAL OF THE COLOR AND STANDARD

	Paragraphs
SECTION I. General rules	547–550
II. Manual of the color	551–555
III. Manual of the standard	556–562

SECTION I

GENERAL RULES

547. Use and care of the color and standard.—The following rules will govern the use and care of the color and standard:

a. The national and regimental flags carried by dismounted organizations are called the national color and the regimental color. The term "color" implies the national color. The term "colors" implies both the national color and regimental color.

b. The national and regimental flags carried by mounted or motorized organizations are called the national standard and the regimental standard. The term "standard" implies the national standard. The term "standards" implies both the national standard and the regimental standard.

c. The rules prescribing the colors and standards to be carried by regiments, battalions, squadrons, and detachments, on all occasions, are contained in Army Regulations.

d. In garrison, the colors and standards, when not in use, are kept at the office or quarters of the commanding officer and are escorted thereto and therefrom by the color guard or standard guard. In camp the colors or standards, when not in use, are displayed in front of the commanding officer's tent. From reveille to retreat, when the weather permits, they are displayed uncased. From retreat to reveille and during inclement weather, they are cased and placed in the commanding officer's office, quarters, or tent.

e. Colors and standards are cased when furled and placed within protective covering.

f. When not in use, colors and standards should be frequently unfurled and aired in sunlight to prevent deterioration of the fabric.

g. The colors and standards may be carried in any formation at regimental headquarters in which two or more companies, troops, or batteries participate.

h. In separate organizations and commands entitled to colors or standards, and in battalions and squadrons not stationed with their regimental headquarters, the colors and standards are similarly cared for and displayed at the office, quarters, or tent of the commanding officer.

i. Battalions and squadrons stationed with their regimental headquarters do not display the colors or standards of their organizations.

j. At regimental formations, the colors or standards are posted with the regiment. When the regimental formation is broken up, as at drill or field exercises, the colors or standards join the regimental commander or are dismissed, if so directed.

548. Salutes by the regimental color and standard.—*a.* The regimental color or standard salutes, except as provided in *f* below, in the ceremony of escort to the color and rendering honors to an individual entitled to the salute of the regimental color or standard, but in no other case.

b. If marching, dismounted, the regimental color or standard salutes when at 6 paces from the person entitled to the salute and resumes the carry when 6 paces beyond him.

c. If marching, mounted, the regimental standard salutes at 12 yards from the person entitled to the salute and resumes the carry immediately after passing him.

d. The national color or standard renders no salute.

e. In passing in review the color or standard guard executes ***eyes right*** at the command of the senior color sergeant, who commands 1. ***Eyes,*** 2. ***RIGHT*** and ***FRONT*** at the saluting distances prescribed in *b* and *c* above. To an individual entitled to the honor, the regimental color or standard salutes, except as provided in *f* below, at the command ***Right*** and resumes the carry at the command ***Front.*** The man on the right flank does not execute ***eyes right.*** In those organizations which do not execute ***eyes right*** in passing in review, the standard guard omits this compliment. Where applicable, the regimental standard salutes at the command of the senior, who commands: 1. ***Standard,*** 2. ***SALUTE.*** The return to the carry is made at the command: 1. ***Carry,*** 2. ***STANDARD.***

f. The regimental standard of a motorized organization does not salute except when the unit is dismounted.

549. The color guard.—*a.* The color guard consists of two color sergeants, who are the regimental color bearers, and two experienced privates selected by the regimental commander, usually for long and honorable service. A position on the color guard is one of honor and responsibility. The privates so designated, when not actually engaged in the performance of their duties as members of the color guard, join their organizations. The senior color sergeant carries the national color, and commands the color guard. He gives the necessary commands for movements and for rendering honors, when present, otherwise the senior remaining member does so. The junior color sergeant carries the regimental color. The regimental color is always placed on the left of the national color in whatever direction they face.

b. When battalions carry the color, the battalion staff sergeant acts as color bearer, and two experienced privates are selected by the battalion commander as members of the color guard. The general rules prescribed for the regimental color guard are applicable to the battalion, when its color is carried.

c. The color guard is formed and marched in one rank, the color bearers in the center. It is marched in the same manner and by the same commands as a squad, substituting in the commands ***guard*** for ***squad.***

d. The privates of the color guard execute neither the loadings nor the firings. In rendering honors, they execute all required movements in the manual; in drill, all movements unless otherwise directed.

e. At the command of the senior color sergeant, the privates of the color guard ***present arms*** or, if armed with the pistol, execute the hand salute, on receiving and parting with the colors. After having parted with the colors, the guard is brought to ***order arms*** by command of the senior remaining member, who is placed as right man of the guard.

f. Having received the colors, the senior sergeant conducts the guard to its proper position before the color company, as outlined in *g* below. Having parted with the colors, the guard is dismissed by the senior sergeant.

g. At drills and ceremonies in which the colors are to participate, except escort of the color, the colors are received by the color company prior to the formation of the battalion with

the following ceremony: The color company is formed, its company commander facing the front. The color guard, conducted by the senior sergeant (*c* above), approaches from the front and halts at a distance of 12 paces from the company commander. The company commander then faces about, brings the company to the ***present,*** faces to the front, salutes, again faces about, and brings the company to the ***order.*** The privates of the color guard execute ***present*** and ***order arms*** with the color company. The color guard is then marched by the senior color sergeant directly to its post as indicated in Figure 81, depending upon the formation of the color company. When the color company joins the battalion the color guard takes post as shown in Figures 68, 69, and 70; when the color battalion joins the regiment the color guard takes post as shown in Figures 71, 72, and 73. The color is received by organizations smaller than a company (funeral escort) in the manner prescribed above. When the color joins the organization it takes post on the left when in line, and in rear when in column.

h. When it is desired to dismiss the color guard at the conclusion of a drill or ceremony in which the colors have participated, the color guard proceeds from its position and halts 12 paces in front of and facing the company commander. The company commander then faces about, brings the company to the ***present,*** faces to the front, salutes, again faces about, and brings the company to the ***order.*** The privates of the color guard execute ***present*** and ***order arms*** with the color company. The color guard then escorts the colors to the office, quarters, or tent of the commanding officer. The color guard is dismissed from organizations smaller than a company (funeral escort) in the manner prescribed above.

i. In campaign, prior to engagement of the regiment, and upon direction of the commanding officer, the colors are stored with the regimental baggage under guard of one color sergeant. The other color sergeant remains with regimental headquarters.

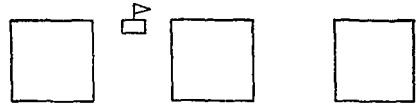
550. The standard guard.—*a.* The provisions of paragraph 549 which apply to the color guard will apply in principle to the standard guard.

b. Rules governing the standard guard at drills and ceremonies are prescribed—

(1) For the Cavalry, in TR 425–55 and 425–130, and Cavalry Field Manual.

(2) For the Field Artillery, in Field Artillery Field Manual, Volume I.

(3) For motorized organizations other than in cavalry and field artillery commands, the provisions for the Field Artillery apply in principle.



Company in line of platoon masses

Company in column of platoon masses

FIGURE 81.—Position of the colors in the color company

SECTION II

MANUAL OF THE COLOR

551. Position of the color at the carry.—*a.* At the carry, the heel of the pike rests in the socket of the sling; the right

hand grasps the pike at the height of the shoulder; the pike is inclined slightly to the front.

b. The carry is the habitual position when the troops are at the right or left shoulder, present or trail arms.

552. Position of the color at the order.—At the order, the heel of the pike rests on the ground on line with and touching the toe of the right shoe. The right hand at a convenient place on the pike clasps it with the thumb, back of the hand to the right, and holds it in a vertical position.

553. Position of the color at parade rest.—*a.* At parade rest, the heel of the pike is on the ground, as at the order; the pike is held with both hands in front of the center of the body, left hand uppermost.

b. The ***order*** is resumed at the command ***Attention.***

c. The ***order*** and ***parade rest*** are executed with the troops.

554. Position of the color at the color salute.—*a.* This position is assumed from the carry by slipping the right hand up the pike to the height of the eye, then lowering the pike by straightening the arm to the front.

b. If the troops execute ***present arms*** from the order, the position of carry is first assumed and then the color salute executed, the national color remaining at the carry.

555. Position of colors during manual of arms.—The colors habitually remain at the order during the execution of the manual of arms.

SECTION III

MANUAL OF THE STANDARD

556. Position of the standard at stand to horse.—At ***stand to horse*** the ferrule of the lance rests on the ground on a line with and touching the toe of the left shoe, lance vertical, left hand at the height of the neck, elbow and forearm closed against the lance.

557. Position of the standard at to mount and mounted.—*a.* At the command ***Prepare to mount,*** the lance is raised slightly from the ground while stepping back. Upon halting, the ferrule is placed on the ground about 1 foot in front of the left forefoot of the horse. The left hand continues to grasp the lance, as well as a lock of the mane.

b. After mounting, the lance is grasped with the right hand and is then raised over the horse's neck, over the reins, and is

lowered on the right of the saddle, the ferrule being inserted in the stirrup socket.

558. Position of the standard at the carry (mounted).—*a.* The ferrule is inserted in the stirrup socket, the right hand grasping the lance, forearm nearly horizontal (the arm through the sling), lance vertical. ***Carry standard*** is the habitual position of the standard when troops are mounted.

b. When holding the horse, the lance is held in the left hand in a position corresponding to that prescribed in paragraph 551 *a.*

559. Position of standards for motorized organizations.—*a.* For ceremonies the standards of motorized organizations, except when dismounted, are carried in a vertical position in fixtures attached to the forward part of the chassis near the front light as directed by the regimental or separate unit commander (par. 548 *f*). Organizations will improvise the necessary fixtures for carrying standards as they will not be an article of issue.

b. On the march, except for ceremonies, motorized organizations carry the standards as directed by unit commanders.

560. Position of the standard at the standard salute (mounted).—Mounted, the ferrule is raised from the socket of the stirrup and the standard is lowered to the front until the lance is horizontal and passes under the right arm close to the armpit.

561. Position of the standard while dismounting.—At the command ***Prepare to dismount,*** the lance is raised from the stirrup socket, passed over the horse's neck, over the reins, and lowered to the ground about 1 foot in front of the left forefoot of the horse. The lance is then grasped in the left hand.

562. Manual of the standard, dismounted.—The manual of the standard, dismounted, is the same as the manual of the color.

PART THREE

THE INFANTRY PACK, DISPLAY OF EQUIPMENT, AND TENT DRILL

		Paragraphs
CHAPTER 1.	The infantry pack	563–579
2.	Display of equipment, foot troops, dismounted and mounted	580–584
3.	Shelter tent drill, foot troops	585–601
4.	Wall and pyramidal tent drill	602–609

CHAPTER 1

THE INFANTRY PACK

		Paragraphs
SECTION I.	Methods of attaching and assembling	563–575
II.	Adjustment of equipment	576–578
III.	Special equipment	579

SECTION I

METHODS OF ATTACHING AND ASSEMBLING

563. The cartridge belt.—*a. To assemble the cartridge belt or magazine belt.*—Place the adjusting strap on the ground, eyeleted edge to the front; place the pocket sections on the ground in prolongation of the adjusting strap, pockets down, tops of the pockets to the front; insert end of adjusting strap in outer loop of metal guide, from the upper side, carry it under the middle bar and up through the inner loop; engage the hooks on the end of the adjusting strap in the eyelets provided on the inner surface of the belt. The belt should be adjusted to fit the individual.

b. To assemble the pistol belt.—Place the belt on the ground, outer side of the belt down. Insert hook end of belt through sliding keeper, then through the unattached male buckle; double the belt back through the sliding keeper and secure the end hook in that particular center eyelet required to give proper length. Slide the magazine pouch over attached female end and

attach it to the fastener provided. The belt is put on with the male buckle on the man's right, thus bringing the magazine pouch in front of left hip.

c. To fill the cartridge belt.—Unsnap the flap of a pocket and the retaining strap, if one is provided; pull the retaining strap out to full length. Insert a clip of cartridges, bullets down, in front of the retaining strap; press down until the points of the bullets rest on the bottom of the pocket. Snap the retaining strap to its fastener. Insert a second clip, bullets down, in the same pocket, in rear of both the first clip and the retaining strap; press down until the points of the bullets rest on the bottom of the pocket. Close the flap of the pocket and snap it to its fastener. The remaining nine pockets are filled in the same manner.

d. To fill the magazine belt.—Unsnap the flap of a pocket and insert two automatic clips, base plates up, magazine catches toward the buckles of the belt. Refasten the flap. The remaining pockets are filled in the same manner.

e. To fill the pistol belt.—Unsnap the flap of the magazine pouch and insert magazines in pouches, magazine base plates up, prolonged ends of the magazine base plates to the right (toward the buckle), refasten the flap.

564. To attach the first-aid pouch.—*a. To the cartridge belt.*—When the haversack is carried, attach the first-aid pouch under the fourth pocket from the front of the left section of the cartridge belt by inserting from inside of the belt one hook of the double-hook attachment in the eyelet; pinch the base of the fourth pocket, bringing the eyelets together; insert in the same manner the other hook in the other eyelet. When the haversack is not carried, attach the first-aid pouch under the fifth (rear) pocket of the left section of the belt in the manner prescribed above. This provides room for the bayonet scabbard when carried on the belt.

b. To the magazine belt.—Attach the first-aid pouch under the third pocket from the front of the left section of the belt in the manner prescribed for the cartridge belt.

c. To the pistol belt (see fig. 82).—Attach the first-aid pouch in the fifth and sixth holes from the female-buckle end on the left of the pistol belt, in the same manner as described for attaching it to the cartridge belt.

d. First-aid packet.—Place the first-aid packet in the pouch with the ring down and toward the body; secure the flap.

565. To attach the canteen cover.—*a. To the cartridge belt.*—Attach the canteen cover to the cartridge belt under the fourth or fifth pocket (depending upon the waist measure of the wearer) from the front of the right section of the belt, in the manner described for attaching the first-aid pouch. Place the assembled canteen and cup in the canteen cover so that the concave surfaces are toward the body; secure the flaps.

b. To the magazine belt.—Attach the canteen cover under the third pocket from the front of the right section of the magazine belt as described for attaching it to the cartridge belt.

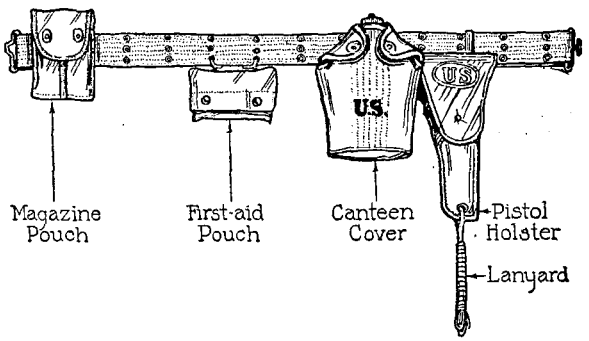


FIGURE 82.—Pistol belt, with magazine pouch, first-aid pouch, canteen cover, and pistol holster attached

c. To the pistol belt (see fig. 82).—Attach the canteen cover in the fifth and sixth holes from the male buckle end on the right of the pistol belt in the manner described in *a* above.

566. To attach the pack carrier to the haversack (see figs. 83 and 84).—Spread the haversack on the ground, inner side down, outer flap to the front. Place the button-holed edge of the pack carrier, lettered side of the pack carrier up, under the button-holed edge of the haversack. Superimpose the buttonholes of the haversack upon the corresponding ones of the pack carrier. Lace the carrier to the haversack by passing the ends of the coupling strap down through the corresponding buttonholes of the haversack and the pack carrier nearest the center, bringing the ends up through the next buttonholes and continuing to the right and left, respectively, to the sides.

567. To attach the belt to the haversack (see fig. 85).—*a. To the cartridge belt.*—Place the haversack and pack carrier (assembled) on the ground, inner side down; place the cartridge belt along the junction of the haversack and carrier, pockets down, tops toward the haversack; insert the hook on rear belt suspender in the center eyelet of the adjusting strap, so that the point of the hook will be on the outside of the belt; twist the front belt suspender toward the ends of the belt and

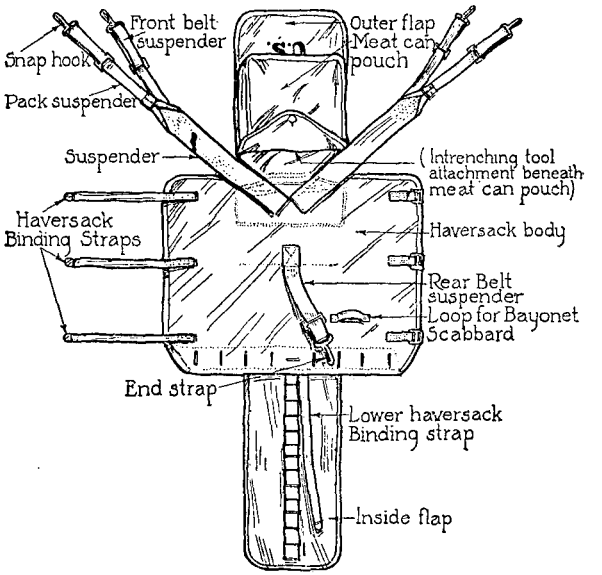


FIGURE 83.—The haversack

insert the hooks in the eyelets between the first and second pockets from each end of the belt, so that the points of the hooks will be on the outside of the belt and the suspenders will be flat on the body.

b. To the magazine belt.—Proceed as with the cartridge belt.

c. To the pistol belt.—Proceed as with the cartridge belt, the hooks on the ends of the front-belt suspenders being inserted in the second eyelets from the buckle, and the hook on the rear-belt suspender in the center eyelet of the belt.

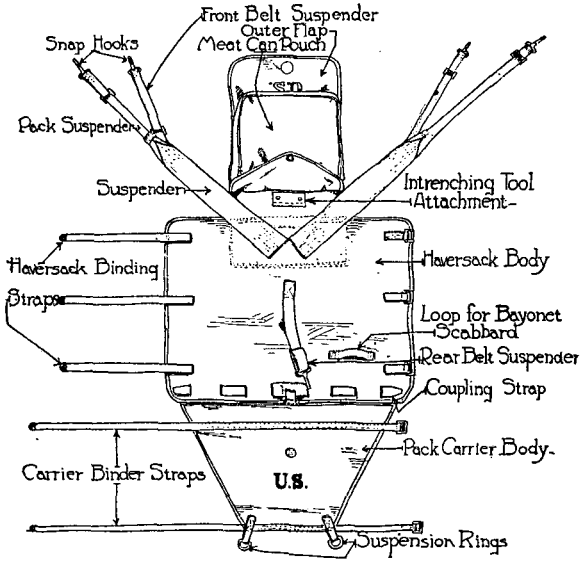


FIGURE 84.—Haversack with pack carrier attached

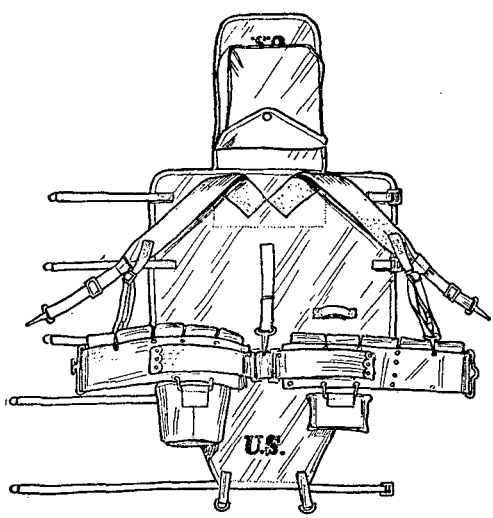


FIGURE 85.—The haversack attached to belt

568. To attach the bayonet scabbard.—*a. To the haversack.*—Attach the scabbard by passing its lower end through the loops provided on the side of the haversack body; then engage the double hook attachment in the eyelets on the outer flap of the haversack, inserting the hook from the underside. Place the bayonet in the scabbard, ring to the rear.

b. To the cartridge belt.—When the haversack is not carried, attach the scabbard under the third pocket from the front of the left section of the cartridge belt. To do this, remove first-aid pouch from under the fourth pocket and attach it under the fifth pocket of the left section. Place the bayonet in the scabbard, ring to the front.

569. To attach the intrenching-tool carrier to the haversack (see figs. 84 and 91).—Fold the outer flap of the haversack over so that the meat-can pouch is uppermost; pass the intrenching-tool carrier underneath the meat-can pouch and engage the double hook attachment in the eyelets in the flap provided, inserting the hooks from the underside. Place the intrenching tool in its carrier and secure it by means provided on the intrenching-tool carrier. Secure the intrenching tool to the roll by means of the third haversack binding strap.

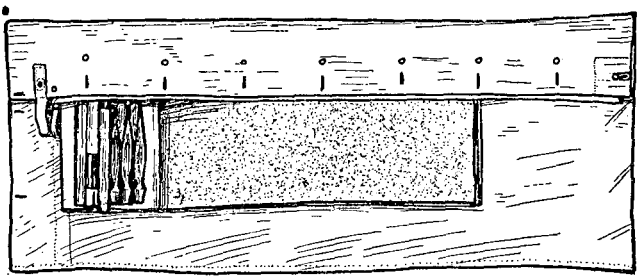


FIGURE 86.—To make the roll

570. To make the roll (see fig. 86).—Spread the shelter half on the ground and fold in the triangular end so that the shelter half forms a rectangle. Make a second fold by carrying the folded edge to the opposite edge. Fold the blanket twice parallel to its longer axis so that the blanket is now one-fourth its previous width, and then fold once at the middle so as to bring the ends together. This will form a rectangle approximately 17 by 42 inches. Place the blanket symmetrically in the center

of the folded shelter half; place the underwear, the tent pole, and the pins on that end of the blanket from which the rolling is to begin (near end). Fold the sides and then the near end of the shelter half snugly over the blanket, fold 10 inches of the far end of the shelter half toward the blanket and, beginning at the near end, roll as tightly as possible, rolling the roll into the folded end of the shelter half, thus making an envelope roll.

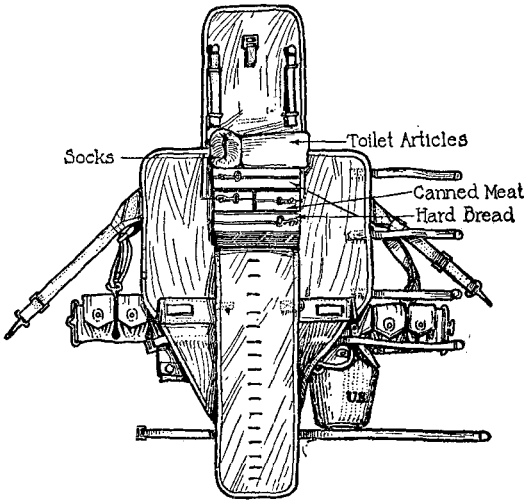


FIGURE 87.—To assemble the full equipment with rations—packing the haversack

571. To assemble the full equipment with rations (see figs. 87 and 88).—*a. To pack the haversack.*—Place the equipment on the ground, inside of the haversack up, pockets of the cartridge belt up, haversack spread out, inside flap and pack carrier extended to their full length. Place one container of hard bread on its side in the center of the haversack, in front of and touching the line of attachment of the inside flap. Place two cans of meat component end to end, parallel to and in front of the can of hard bread. Place the remaining can of hard bread in front of the cans of meat component. Place the toilet articles and socks in front of the hard bread. Fold the inside flap of the haversack over these articles. Fold the sides of the

haversack over the rations and toilet articles. Pass the upper two binding straps through the loop opposite the point of attachment of the strap to the haversack body. Fasten each strap by passing the end of the strap through the opening of its opposite buckle next to the buckle attachment, over the center bar and back through the opening of the buckle away from the attachment. Pull the strap tight and make the fastening secure. Fold over the outer flap of the haversack and fasten it by means of the lower haversack binding strap passed

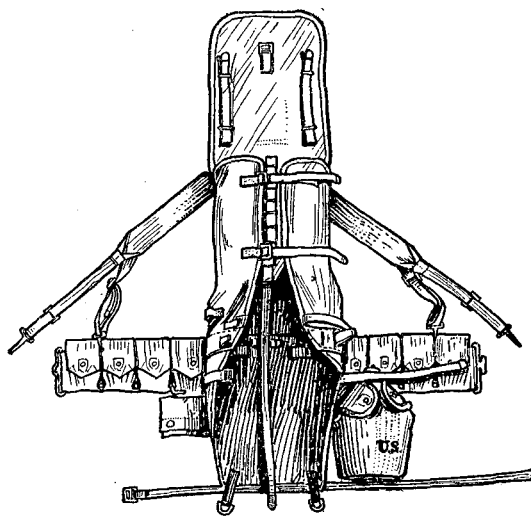


FIGURE 88.—To assemble the full equipment with rations—assembling the pack

through the buckle on the inside of the outer flap. Pull the strap tight, drawing the outer flap snugly over the filled haversack. The haversack is now packed and the carrier is ready for the reception of the roll.

b. To assemble the pack (see fig. 89).—Place the roll in the pack carrier and haversack with one end against the bottom of the packed haversack. Grasp the lower suspension rings, one in each hand. Place the right knee against the bottom of the roll. Pull the carrier down and force the roll up close against the bottom of the packed haversack. Without remov-

ing the knee, fasten the lower pack carrier binding strap over the roll and secure it by passing, from below, its end up through the opening of its corresponding buckle away from the buckle attachment, then over the center bar, and down through the opening of the buckle next to the buckle attachment, and then back underneath the standing end of the strap. In a similar manner secure the third haversack binding strap and then the upper carrier binding strap. Engage the snap hooks on the pack suspenders in the lower suspension rings.

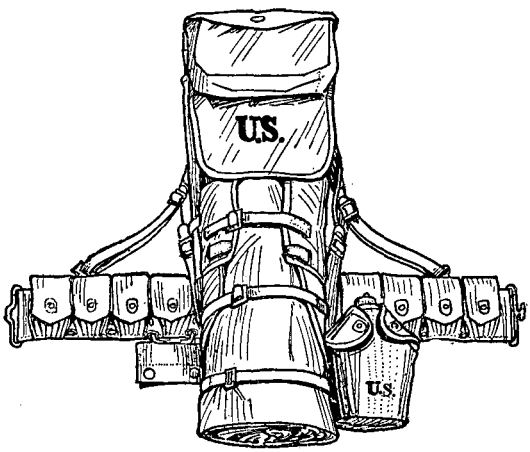


FIGURE 89.—To assemble the full equipment with rations—assembling the pack

c. To attach the overcoat (see figs. 90 and 91).—Turn the sleeves inside out, place the overcoat on the ground outside down, coat smooth, collar extended, sleeves smooth and extended toward pockets, move the inside flap of the tail under the outside flap about 6 inches and gather the slack in the coat, thus caused, in one fold along the middle seam, tapering toward the collar. Fold the bottom of the front edges of the coat about 12 inches toward the center seam, forming a parallelogram approximately 42 by 52 inches. Fold the collar end down about 15 inches again at the top and roll smoothly and tightly toward the tail; turn the tail up to a depth of about 9 inches, and roll the entire coat into this pocket. Place the overcoat

thus rolled, the open side of roll down, on top of the haversack, in rear of the bayonet handle so that the center back seam is over the center of the top of the haversack. Secure the coat at the top with a shelter half rope. Bind the ends of the overcoat down and along the sides of the haversack. Lash the ends of the roll to the haversack with the rope, using a half hitch near each end of the overcoat, and passing the rope around the haversack over the outside flap.

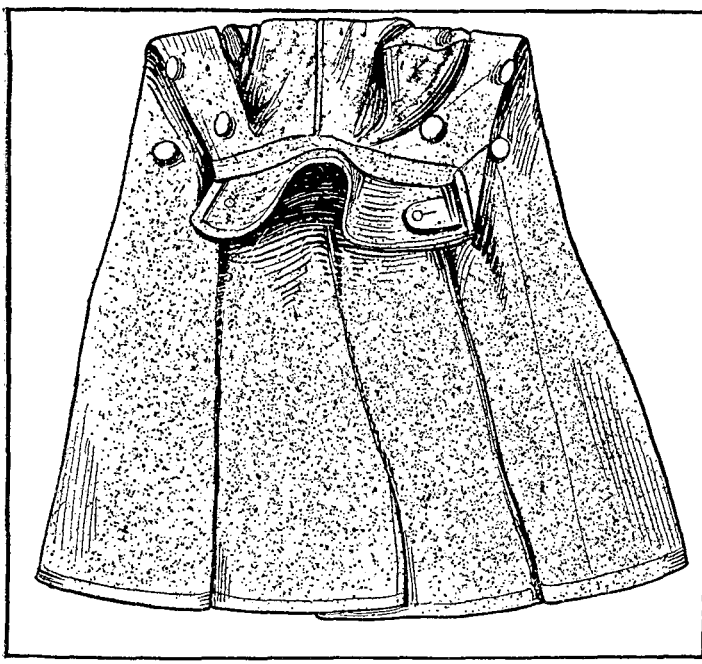


FIGURE 90.—To fold the overcoat

d. To attach the raincoat.—Fold the raincoat neatly into a rectangle about 10½ inches long by 8½ inches wide, with the outside of the raincoat out. Place the raincoat between the inner and the outer haversack flaps. Secure it with the lower haversack binding strap, by passing the latter under the bottom haversack binding strap and fastening it tightly to the buckle on the underside of the outer haversack flap.

c. To attach the helmet (see figs. 91 and 92).—Attach the helmet by placing the chin strap over the meat-can pouch; the chin strap is then secured by tying it on with a cord (shoe or legging lace).

572. To assemble the full equipment without rations.—*a. To pack the haversack.*—Place the equipment on the ground as hereinafter described. Roll the toilet articles and the extra pair of socks in the inside flap so that the top of the toilet articles will be on line with the top of the haversack body. Fold up the lower haversack strap against the roll thus formed.

b. To assemble the pack.—Place the roll on the haversack and pack carrier, with its upper end against the roll formed by the toilet articles. Bind it to the haversack and carrier by means of the haversack and carrier binding straps, turning up the bottom of the pack carrier so that the folded edge of the pack carrier will be even with the bottom of the roll and so that the lower carrier binding strap will engage the roll. Fold down the outer flap of the haversack and secure it by means of the middle haversack binding strap and the buckle provided on the underside of the flap; engage the snap hooks of the pack suspenders in the lower suspension rings.

c. Other articles.—The coat and helmet are attached as provided in paragraph 571.

573. To assemble the full equipment, less the roll, with rations.—*a. To pack the haversack.*—Detach the carrier from the haversack. Place the rest of the equipment on the ground as hereinafter described. Place the rations, the toilet articles, and the socks in the middle of the haversack as prescribed for the assembling of the full equipment with rations. Fold the inside flap and the side of the haversack up and over. Pass the three haversack binding straps through the loops on the inside flap and secure them by means of the buckles on the opposite side of the haversack. Pass the lower haversack binding strap through the buttonhole in the lower edge of the haversack, fold the outer flap of the haversack over the whole, and secure it by means of the buckle on its underside and the lower haversack binding strap. Pass the haversack suspension rings through the adjoining buttonholes in the lower edge of the haversack and engage the snap hooks on the ends of the pack suspenders.

b. Other articles.—Attach the overcoat, raincoat, and helmet as prescribed in paragraph 571.

574. To assemble the full equipment, less the roll, without rations.—*a. To pack the haversack.*—Detach the carrier from the haversack. Place the rest of the equipment on the ground as hereinbefore described. Fold up the inside flap of the haversack and form a pouch as described for assembling the full equipment, less the pack, with rations. Place the socks and the toilet articles in the bottom of the pouch thus formed. Fold the outer flap of the haversack over the whole and secure it by means of the buckle on its underside and the lower

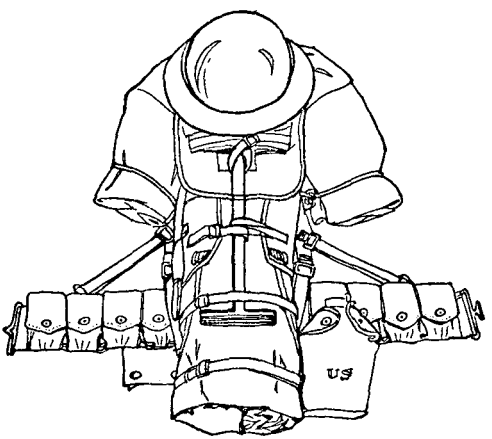


FIGURE 91.—The full equipment assembled

haversack binding strap. Pass the haversack suspension rings through the adjoining buttonholes in the lower edge of the haversack and engage the snap hooks of the pack suspenders.

b. Other articles.—Attach the overcoat, raincoat, and helmet as prescribed in paragraph 571.

575. To discard the roll without removing the equipment from the body.—Unsnap the pack suspenders from the suspension rings and snap them into the eyelets on top of the belt and in rear of the rear pockets of the right and left pocket sections. Support the bottom of the pack with the left hand, with the right hand grasp the coupling strap at its middle, and withdraw first one side and then the other. Pull down on the roll with both hands and remove it. When the roll has

been removed, lace the coupling strap through the buttonholes along the upper edge of the carrier.

SECTION II

ADJUSTMENT OF EQUIPMENT

576. Cartridge and magazine belt.—Adjust the belt to fit loosely about the waist; that is, so that when buckled it may rest well down over the hip bones and below the pit of the abdomen. Care should be taken that the adjustments are made equally from both ends of the adjusting strap, so that the center eyelet will be in the middle of the belt. The proper position of the belt is the same, whether filled or empty.

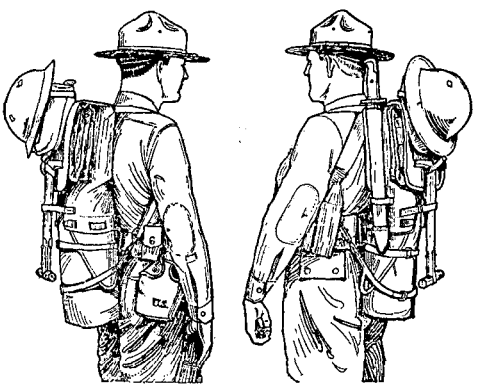


FIGURE 92.—Full equipment adjusted to the soldier

577. Full equipment.—Put on the equipment, slipping the arms through the pack suspenders as through the sleeves of a coat. By means of the adjusting buckles on the belt suspenders, raise or lower the belt until it rests well down over the hip bones and below the pit of the abdomen. Raise or lower it in rear until the adjusting strap lies smoothly across the small of the back. By means of the adjusting straps on the pack suspenders, raise or lower the load on the back until the top of the haversack is on a level with the top of the shoulders, so that pack suspenders from their point of attachment on the haversack to the shoulders will be horizontal. The latter is essential to the proper adjustment of the load.

578. **Full equipment, less the roll.**—Put on the equipment as prescribed for the full equipment. Adjust the belt as prescribed in paragraph 576. Adjust the pack suspenders as prescribed in paragraph 577.

SECTION III

SPECIAL EQUIPMENT

579. **Special equipment.**—Special equipment will be carried as prescribed below. Articles which are not mentioned may be disposed about the person in the most advantageous manner, unless otherwise prescribed by commanding officers.

a. Ammunition carrier, 3-inch trench mortar.—On top of all equipment except the gas mask.

b. Bandoleer, magazine, for Browning automatic rifle.—Suspended on either side by strap passed over the opposite shoulder.

c. Bolo with scabbard.—As prescribed for intrenching tools.

d. Bugle.—Suspended on the left side by a strap passed over the right shoulder.

e. Discharger, rifle grenade.—On the belt, in front of the first-aid pouch.

f. Case, dispatch.—Suspended on the right side by a strap passed over the left shoulder.

g. Case, record.—Suspended on the left side by a strap passed over the right shoulder.

h. Glasses, field.—On the left side, suspended from the belt or by a strap passed over the right shoulder.

i. Clinometer, 3-inch trench mortar.—Suspended on the left side by a strap passed over the right shoulder.

j. Clinometer, machine-gun.—On the belt in front of the right hip.

k. Compass, case.—On the belt in front of the right hip.

l. Cutter, wire, small.—Attached to the left side of the belt immediately in front of the first-aid pouch.

m. Gas mask.—Worn under the left arm and over all other equipment, suspended by a strap passed over the right shoulder.

n. Instrument, angle of site.—On the right side, suspended by a strap passed over the left shoulder.

o. Kit, flag, combination.—On the right side, suspended by a strap passed over the left shoulder. Worn over all equipment except the gas mask.

p. Pistol and holster.—On the right hip.

q. Pistol, Very, with holster.—Same as pistol. When worn together, the Very pistol is worn in rear.

r. Pockets, web, for Browning automatic rifle.—Attached to the belt in front of the right hip.

s. Pockets, magazine, web, double.—In front of the left hip.

t. Sight, quadrant, for 37-mm gun.—On the left side, suspended by a strap passed over the right shoulder, with telescopic sight.

u. Sight, telescopic, for 37-mm gun.—On the left side, suspended by a strap passed over the right shoulder, with quadrant sight.

v. Sight, telescopic, rifle.—On the right side, suspended by a strap passed over the left shoulder.

CHAPTER 2

DISPLAY OF EQUIPMENT, FOOT TROOPS, DISMOUNTED AND MOUNTED

580. General provisions.—For all inspections, whether indoors or in the field with or without shelter tents, the equipment of foot troops will be displayed as shown in Figures 93 and 94.

581. Display of individual equipment, dismounted men (fig. 95).—*a.* For display, the blanket is folded within the shelter half exactly as the blanket and shelter half are folded for rolling the infantry pack.

b. If both the overcoat and raincoat are carried, the raincoat will be displayed on top of the overcoat. If only the raincoat is carried it will replace the overcoat.

c. Special articles of equipment issued to indviduals and carried on the belt will remain attached.

d. Foot powder when carried will be displayed in the same relative position to the toilet articles as the extra shoe laces but on the opposite side.

e. Bandoleers will be displayed between the overcoat and the tent pins, the bottoms of the pockets being flush with the rear edge of the blanket.

f. All other articles of equipment issued to individuals, such as field glasses, field message book, pencil, watch, compass, signal kit, and hand or rifle grenades, will be displayed in the extra space between overcoat and the tent pins.

g. When the equipment is displayed with shelter tents pitched it will be placed outside and in front of the tent, with the rear edge of the blanket on the line of the tent front, one corner of the blanket touching the center pole.

h. The automatic rifle, when displayed, will occupy the same general position relative to the equipment as the rifle.

i. Arms may be stacked before intervals are taken for the purpose of laying out equipment, in which case the rifle will not be displayed on the ground.

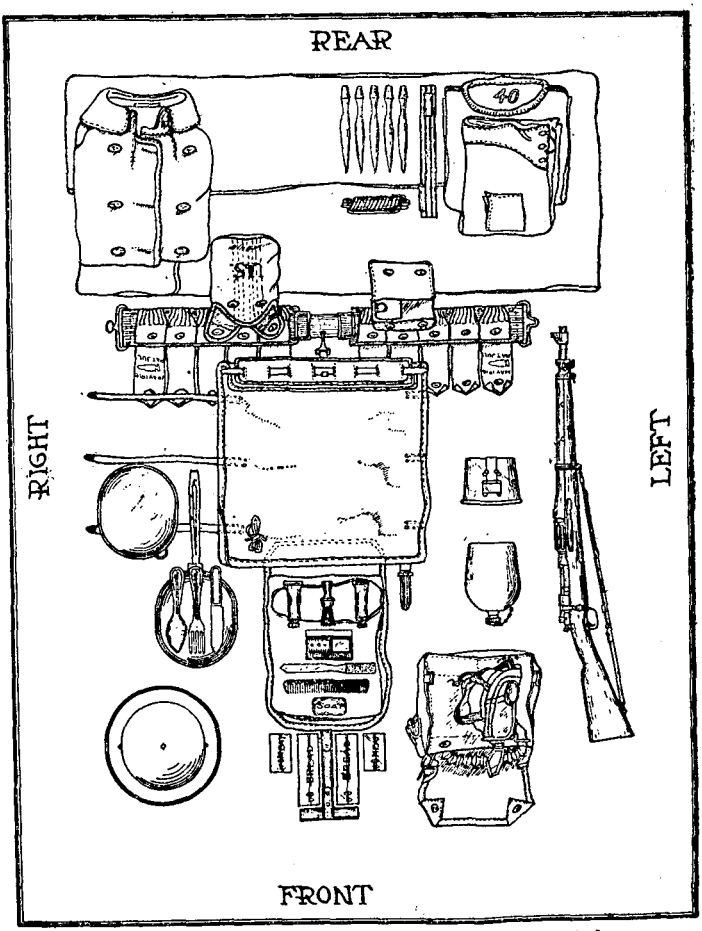


FIGURE 93.—Display of individual equipment, dismounted man

582. **Display of individual equipment, mounted men (fig. 94).**—The display of individual equipment of mounted men will be in accordance with that prescribed in paragraph 581 and Figure 93, with the following exceptions:

a. The equipment will be displayed on the shelter half, if shelter tents are not pitched. The shelter half will be laid out, buttons up and to the left, triangular end to the rear and folded on top of the shelter half. If shelter tents are pitched, the blankets will be laid out on the ground in the same manner as if the shelter half was being used.

b. The canteen cover will remain on the saddle and be displayed with the mounted equipment.

583. **Display of mounted equipment (fig. 94).**—The mounted equipment will be displayed in front of the shelter half or blanket as follows:

a. Saddle.—The saddle is placed seat up, pommel to the front, saddle bags immediately in front of the front edge of the shelter half, or as close to the front edge of the blanket as the helmet and gas mask will permit, cincha and cincha strap crossed over seat, stirrups crossed over seat, hoods up.

b. Saddle bags.—Attached to saddle, spread out flat.

c. Lariat and picket pin with case.—Lariat coiled and to the left of left saddle bags; picket-pin case attached to and on left of lariat; picket pin to the left of case.

d. Horse kit.—Arranged opposite saddle bags as follows:

(1) *Currycomb.*—Teeth up, to right of right front half of right saddle bag.

(2) *Horse brush.*—Bristles up, in rear of currycomb.

(3) *Grooming cloth.*—Folded and placed in front of lariat.

(4) *Extra horseshoes.*—On top of grooming cloth.

(5) *Extra horseshoe nails.*—On top of grooming cloth.

(6) *Saddle soap container.*—To the left of horseshoes.

(7) *Sponge for saddle soap.*—To the left of horseshoes, in front of saddle soap container.

e. Rifle scabbard.—Attached to and parallel to long edge of saddle.

f. Saddle blanket.—Folded, horse side in, folded edge to the front, double fold to the left, across seat of saddle.

g. Bridle.—Reins folded over headstall, laid on blanket, bits to the right, browband up.

h. Surcingle.—Folded, buckle to the right, laid on rear edge of blanket.

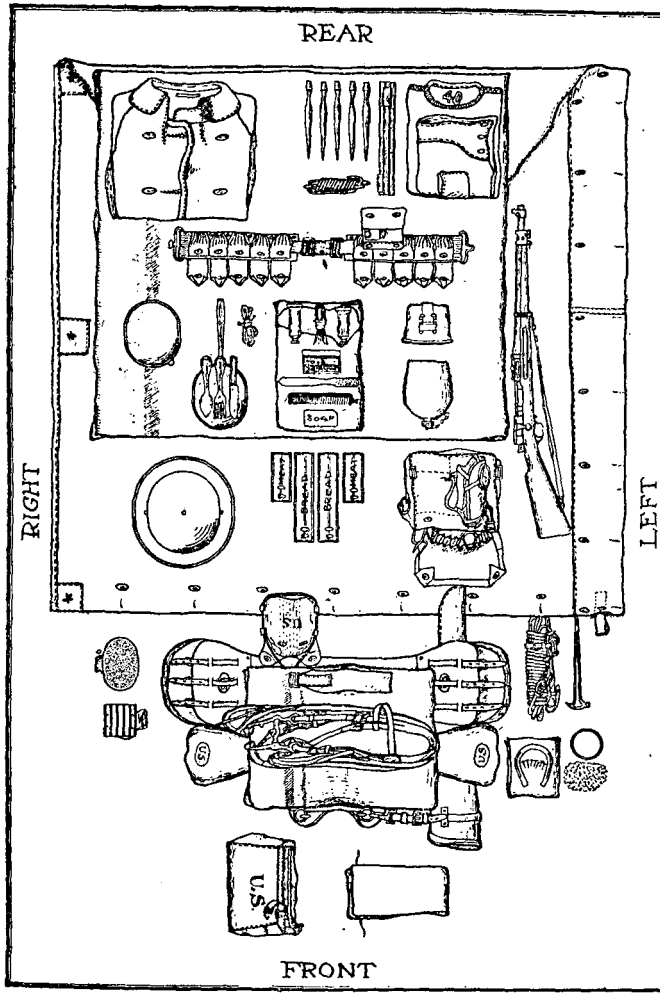


FIGURE 94.—Display of individual equipment, mounted man

i. Feed bag.—Longer axis of the bag parallel to the front and on line with the pommel of the saddle. The "U. S." up and bottom to the right.

j. Grain bag.—Placed to the left of the feed bag, bottom to the left and organization mark up.

k. Special articles of equipment issued mounted individuals are displayed in the most convenient manner as prescribed by the commanding officer. The saddle used by the guidon carrier has a special right stirrup with a bracket in which the guidon ferrule is inserted. It is displayed in the same manner as the ordinary stirrup.

584. Display of officers' equipment.—Officers' equipment, if displayed, is laid out in a manner similar to that described for enlisted men. (See figs. 93 and 94.)

CHAPTER 3

SHELTER-TENT DRILL, FOOT TROOPS

		Paragraphs
SECTION I.	Pitching single shelter tents	585–589
II.	Pitching double shelter tents	590–593
III.	When packs are not carried	594
IV.	To strike shelter tents	595–599
V.	In the field	600–601

SECTION I

PITCHING SINGLE SHELTER TENTS

585. Purpose.—The purpose of this exercise is to enable the unit commander to establish his unit rapidly and correctly in single shelter tents, arranged in a neat and orderly way.

586. Formation.—The company commander forms the company in column of platoons on smooth or level ground suitable for instruction. During the instruction, if level ground is not available, the normal formation may be departed from sufficiently to indicate to the men the correct manner of taking advantage of the ground in camping. When tents are pitched on broken or rolling ground, the company commander indicates the general disposition for platoons. Platoon leaders provide for the proper disposition of tents in their own platoons. Except at inspection, the alignment should alway be subordinate to the proper employment of ground in camping. If desired, the section or platoon may be formed in single rank and tents pitched in a single line.

587. Commands.—The commands are: 1. ***FORM FOR SHELTER TENTS,*** 2. ***Count,*** 3. ***OFF,*** 4. ***Take interval to the left,*** 5. ***MARCH,*** 6. ***PITCH TENTS.***

588. Execution.—*a. Forming.*—At the command ***FORM FOR SHELTER TENTS,*** sections form as prescribed in paragraph 107.

b. Taking intervals.—At the commands for taking interval, the movement is executed as prescribed in paragraph 106.

c. Pitching.—(1) At the command ***PITCH TENTS*** each odd-numbered man draws his bayonet with his left hand and thrusts it into the ground, ring to the front, outside of, and against his left heel near the instep. The bayonet marks the position for the front pole of the tent. Men armed with the pistol mark the place with the left heel.

(2) Each man steps off obliquely to the right with the right foot a full pace, lays his rifle on the ground, muzzle to the front, barrel to the left, butt near the toe of his right foot. He then steps back into place. All men then unsling equipment and place the packs on the ground in front of them. They then open their packs and remove their shelter halves, poles, and pins. The men of each file spread their shelter halves on the ground the tent is to occupy, triangle to the rear, buttons to the center, the even-numbered man's half on the left.

FIGURE 95.—To pitch shelter tents

(3) They then button the halves together. The odd-numbered man adjusts his pole, inserts its small end through the front eyes of the tent, and holds the pole upright in position beside the bayonet. The even-numbered man pins down the front corners of the tent in line with the bayonets. He then drives the front guy pin a rifle length in front of the front pole. If he is not armed with the rifle he measures off on the tent rope the distance from the base of the front tent pole to either the right or left front tent pin, and drives the front guy pin this distance in front of the front tent pole (the distance from the base of a tent pole to its corresponding corner tent pin being equal to the length of a rifle). He places the loop of the guy rope over the front guy pin, runs the other end of

the rope through the loops of the shelter halves, and ties it at such length that the pole is vertical when the rope is taut. Both men then proceed to the rear of their tent. The even-numbered man adjusts his pole as described above, while the odd-numbered man pins the tent corners, the rear guy rope, and the rear triangle so that the rear guy pin is a bayonet length in rear of the triangle. If he is not armed with the bayonet, he drives the rear guy pin as described for the front guy pin. The even-numbered man drives the remaining pins on the left and the odd-numbered man drives them on the right. Axes, hand, intrenching and pick mattocks, intrenching, may be used to drive tent pins. The shovel, intrenching, the bolo, and the bayonet will not be used to drive tent pins.

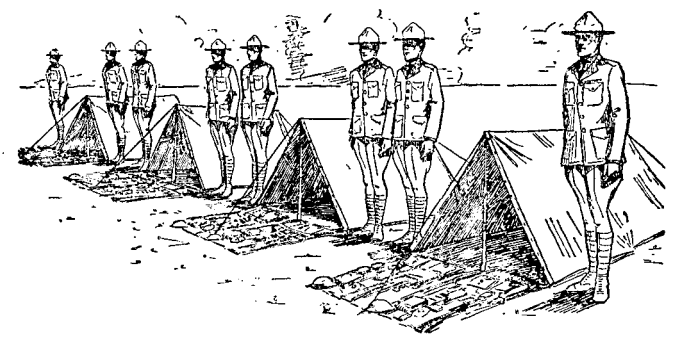


FIGURE 96.—To display equipment

(4) Each man then arranges the contents of his pack as described in paragraph 581 and stands at attention by the side of his own shelter half, toes on line with the corner tent pins.

589. Supervision.—Platoon commanders supervise their platoons throughout the exercise. When pitching tents in the field, tents will be placed under cover so as to provide concealment from ground and aerial observation.

SECTION II

PITCHING DOUBLE SHELTER TENTS

590. Purpose.—The purpose of this exercise is to establish the unit rapidly and correctly in a double-tent camp, arranged

in a neat and orderly manner. The double-tent camp is preferable to the single tent in cold or inclement weather because of the superior shelter it affords. It is valuable in restricted areas, because of its greater concentration of personnel. The double tent is composed of two single tents buttoned together at the square ends. The tent is supported by three poles, one in the center and one at each end. Two guy ropes are attached to each end. Guy pins are in line with the side pins of the tent. Nos. 1, 2, 3, and 4 pitch and occupy one double tent; Nos. 5, 6, 7, and 8, another.

591. Formation.—As for single tents, paragraph 586.

592. Commands.—*a.* ***FORM FOR SHELTER TENTS.***

b. 1. ***Take interval, 2 paces,*** 2. ***To the right (left),*** 3. ***MARCH,*** 4. ***Company,*** 5. ***HALT.***

c. ***PITCH DOUBLE TENTS.***

593. Execution.—*a. Forming.*—At the command ***FORM FOR SHELTER TENTS*** the exercise proceeds as for single tents, paragraph 588.

b. Taking intervals.—At the commands for taking interval, the movement is executed as prescribed in paragraph 588.

c. Pitching.—(1) At the command ***PITCH DOUBLE TENTS*** all men proceed as for single tents, paragraph 588, except that only Nos. 1 and 5 mark the line with their bayonets. Packs and rifles are placed on the ground at such convenient distance to the rear as not to interfere with pitching the tent.

(2) After the bayonets have been placed, all men spread their shelter halves on the ground to be occupied by their respective tents. Odd-numbered men place their shelter halves with triangles to the front; the even-numbered men place theirs with the triangles to the rear.

(3) They button together the four shelter halves of each tent, the ridges first, then the square ends. The odd numbers insert and support the front and rear poles, respectively, the front pole in contact with the bayonet, the rear pole in a line with it perpendicular to the line of bayonets. The even numbers pin the front and rear corners of the tent. One even number then enters the tent with his pole and, assisted by the other, adjusts the pole to the center eyes of the shelter halves. He inserts the top of the pole, in the following order, through the eyes of the lower half of the front tent, the lower half of

the rear tent, the upper half of the front tent, and the upper half of the rear tent. The even numbers then fasten the guy ropes and all drive the remaining pins.

(4) The occupants turn back the triangular ends, display the contents of their packs, as prescribed in paragraph 581, and stand at attention by the side of their own shelter halves, facing outward, with their toes on line with the corner tent pins.

SECTION III

WHEN PACKS ARE NOT CARRIED

594. Procedure.—When packs are not carried by the men the following procedure governs:

a. Arms are stacked and the men are directed to fall out to obtain and sling their packs.

b. When the men have returned to their positions, the unit commander causes them to take arms and then pitch tents as heretofore prescribed.

SECTION IV

TO STRIKE SHELTER TENTS

595. Purpose.—The purpose of this exercise is to enable the unit commander to change the unit from camp to march order.

596. Formation.—The company is brought to attention with the men in the position prescribed in paragraphs 588 *c* (4) and 593 *c* (4).

597. Command.—***STRIKE TENTS.***

598. Procedure.—At the command ***STRIKE TENTS*** the men remove their equipment from the tents, pull up pins, unbutton the halves, and make up their packs. They sling their equipment and stand at attention in the positions occupied after interval was taken and before the command ***PITCH TENTS.***

599. Supervision.—Platoon commanders supervise their platoons. They require especially that packs are made up in the manner prescribed. (See ch. 1 of this part.)

SECTION V

IN THE FIELD

600. Procedure.—So far as practicable the same procedure is followed in the field as for instruction. Details of execution

are invariably subordinated to the tactical, administrative, and sanitary requirements of field service.

601. The general.—When the general is sounded in camp as a signal for striking tents, they are prepared for striking by removing equipment from them and pulling up the pins. They are held in an upright position by one man at each pole until the last note of the bugle, when all are caused to fall simultaneously toward the kitchens.

CHAPTER 4

WALL AND PYRAMIDAL TENT DRILL

	Paragraphs
SECTION I. To pitch, strike, and fold common and wall tents	602–604
II. To pitch, strike, and fold pyramidal tents	605–607
III. In the field	608–609

SECTION I

TO PITCH, STRIKE, AND FOLD COMMON AND WALL TENTS

602. Pitching common and wall tents.—*a. Preliminary arrangements.*—The officer or noncommissioned officer in charge selects suitable ground. He indicates the direction in which the tent is to face, the line on which the tent is to be placed, and the position of the door pin. Four men are required to pitch each tent.

b. Procedure for each tent.—First, a pin is driven to mark the center of the door. Then the tent is spread on the ground it is to occupy, the door loops being placed over the door pin. The front corners are drawn taut, aligned, and pegged down. The rear door is laced, if there is one. Rear corners are drawn taut in both directions and pegged down. Then the four corner guy pins are driven in prolongation of the diagonals of the tent and about 2 paces beyond the corner pins.

The front door is temporarily loosened and the lee corner loops loosened from the corner pins. The ridge pole is inserted between the ventilation strip and the tent ridge. The upright eyelet pins are inserted in the ridge pole and in the eyelets of the tent. The fly eyelets are placed over the end-pole eyelet pins. The tent is raised and held in position. The lee corner loops are replaced and the corner and fly guy ropes secured and tightened to hold the poles vertical. The wall pins are driven through the open loops as they hang. Finally, the intermediate

guy pins are driven in alignment with the corner guy pins already driven.

603. Striking common and wall tents.—The men first remove all pins except those of the four corner guy ropes. The pins are neatly placed in a receptacle. One man holds each corner guy rope, and the tent is lowered. The poles are removed and the tent folded. The poles are fastened together and the remaining pins collected.

604. Folding common and wall tents.—First the tent is spread flat on the ground, folded at the ridge so that the bottoms of the side walls are even, ends of the tent forming triangles to the right and left. Then the triangular ends of the tent are folded in toward the middle to form a rectangle. The top is folded over about 9 inches. The tent is folded in two by carrying the top fold over to the foot, and again from the top to the foot.

All the guy ropes are thrown on the tent except the second from each end. The ends are folded in so as to cover about two-thirds of the second widths. The left end is then folded over to meet the turned-in edge of the top right end, then the right end is folded over the top right end, then the right end is folded over the top, completing the bundle. Finally, the bundle is tied with the two exposed guy ropes.

SECTION II

TO PITCH, STRIKE, AND FOLD PYRAMIDAL TENTS

605. Pitching pyramidal tents.—*a. Preliminary arrangements.*—The commander designates the ground on which the tents are to be erected. The line of tents is marked by driving a wall pin on the spot to be occupied by the right front corner of each tent. The interval between adjacent pins should be 30 feet, which leaves a space of about 2 feet between tents. Each tent is usually erected by the squad which will occupy it.

b. Procedure for each tent.—(1) If the tripod is to be used, it is first spread on the ground where the center of the tent will be.

(2) The tent is next spread on the ground which it is to occupy, door to the front. The corners and door are laced and the right front wall loop is placed over the corner pin already driven.

(3) The left corner wall loop is carried to the left as far as it will go, and a wall pin driven through it, in line with the right corner pins already driven.

(4) The rear corner wall loops are pulled to the rear and outward, so that the bottom of the rear wall of the tent is stretched to complete the square. Wall pins are then driven through these loops. Each rear corner pin should be directly in rear of its corresponding front corner pin to form the square. Unless the canvas is wet a small amount of slack should be allowed before the corner pins are driven.

(5) Three men crawl under the tent and fit the pole into the rings, and such accessories as hood, fly, and tripod are adjusted.

(6) Steadied by one man at each corner guy rope, the tent is then raised by the men underneath.

(7) The four corner guy ropes are then placed over the lower notches of large pins, which are driven in prolongation of the diagonals at such distances as to hold the walls and ends of the tent vertical and smooth when the guy ropes are drawn taut.

(8) A wall pin is then driven through each remaining loop, and a large pin for each guy rope is driven in line with the four corner guy pins already driven. The guy ropes of the tent are placed over the lower notches of the large pins. All ropes are then drawn taut.

606. Striking pyramidal tents.—First all pins are removed except those of the four corner guy ropes and the rear corner wall pins. The pins are neatly piled or placed in a receptacle. With one man holding each corner guy rope, the tent is then slowly lowered to the rear. The tripod and poles are fastened together and the remaining pins collected.

607. Folding pyramidal tents.—*a. Procedure for each tent.*—(1) The tent having been lowered to the rear, the back wall and roof canvas are pulled out smooth. This is accomplished by leaving the rear corner wall pins in the ground with the loops attached. One man at each corner guy and one or two holding the square iron perpendicular pull the canvas to its limit away from the former front of the tent. This places the three remaining sides of the tent on top of the rear side, with the door side in the middle.

(2) Next, to straighten the right side wall and roof canvas, the right front corner is carried over and laid on the left front

corner. All canvas is pulled smooth, the guy ropes thrown toward the square iron, and the bottom edges pulled even. Then the right front corner is returned to the right to cover the right rear corner. This folds the right side of the tent on itself, with a crease in the middle and under the front side of the tent.

(3) Next, to straighten the left side wall and roof canvas, the left front corner is carried to the right and back in a similar fashion. This will leave the front and rear sides of the tent lying smooth and flat and the two side walls folded inward, each on itself.

(4) The square iron is folded downward toward the bottom of the tent and then the hood is placed in the square iron. The tent is now folded around the square iron as a core, all folds being pressed down flat and smooth, and parallel to the bottom of the tent. If each fold is compactly made and the canvas is kept smooth, the last fold will exactly cover the lower edge of the canvas.

(5) All exposed guys are laid along the folded canvas except the two on the center width. These two are pulled out and away from the bottom edge to their extreme length so as to be used later for the final tying of the bundle.

(6) From one end the bundle is folded toward the center hinging on the first seam; that is, the one joining the first and second widths. It is again folded toward the center, so that the canvas already folded will come to within about 3 inches of the middle width. It is again folded to the opposite edge of the middle width of canvas.

(7) From the opposite end the first width is folded in half. A second fold comes about 4 or 5 inches from the part of the tent already folded from the first end. This second fold is then thrown entirely over the part already folded.

(8) The exposed guys are drawn taut toward and across one another so that they are at right angles. The bundle is turned over on the guy rope which is in prolongation of the tent seam. The guy ropes are crossed on the new top of the bundle. The bundle is turned over again on the crossed ropes and tied.

b. The bundle.—(1) When properly tied and pressed together the bundle will be 23 by 34 inches, requiring about 8,855 cubic inches to store and pack.

(2) The unit designation, stenciled on the lower half of the middle width of canvas in the back wall, will appear on the exposed top of the bundle.

SECTION III

IN THE FIELD

608. Procedure.—So far as practicable the same procedure is followed in the field as for instruction. Details of execution are invariably subordinated to the tactical, administrative, and sanitary requirements of field service.

609. The general.—When the general is sounded in camp as a signal for striking tents, they are prepared for striking as herein prescribed, but are steadied in an upright position until the last note of the bugle, when all are caused to fall simultaneously in the same general direction.

APPENDIXES

APPENDIX I. Equipment carried by the rifle squad.
II. Equipment carried by the machine-gun squad.

APPENDIX I

EQUIPMENT CARRIED BY THE RIFLE SQUAD

Item	On the march								Unit weights, pounds
	S No. 2	RG No. 5	SAR No. 7	Cpl No. 1	S No. 3	R No. 4	AR No. 6	2d No. 8	
Mask, gas	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	3.875
Compass, watch				1					.200
Adhesive tape, spool				1					.100
Foot powder, ¼-lb. tin				2					.250
Rifle, cal. .30, complete	1	1	1	1	1	1		1	9.539
Bayonet	1	1	1	1	1	1		1	1.019
Discharger (grenade)		1							3.194
Scabbard, bayonet	1	1	1	1	1	1		1	.466
Rod, cleaning				1					.634
Screw driver, rifle				1					.070
Rifle, automatic							1		15.500
Belt, magazine, auto rifle							1		1.325
Case, spare parts, complete							1		1.250
Filler, magazine			1	1			1		.212
Magazine (extra)							3		1.603
Cartridges, ball, cal. .30	40	40	40	40	40	40	[1] 60	40	.594
Cartridges, tracer, cal. .30									
Catridges, A. P., cal. .30									
Belt, cartridge, cal. .30	1	1	1	1	1	1		1	1.450
Canteen, cup and cover	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1.355
Packet, first-aid	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	.248
Axe or bolo and carrier	1								2.057
Pick mattock and carrier		1	1						2.575
Shovel, int. and carrier					1	1	1	1	2.193
Wire cutter and carrier				1					1.000
Housewife				1					.185
Ration, reserve	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	3.000
Drawers, pair	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	.680
Handkerchief	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	.032
Laces, breeches, extra	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	.002
Laces, shoe, extra	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	.002
Stockings, pair, extra	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	.170
Brush, shaving	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	
Brush, tooth	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	
Comb	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	.752
Mirror, trench	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	
Razor, safety	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	
Towel, face	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	.092

[1] Weight of auto rifle ammunition, 3.563 pounds. Weight of rifle ammunition, 2.374 pounds.

Equipment carried by the rifle squad—Continued

Item	On the march								
	S No. 2	RG No. 5	SAR No. 7	Cpl No. 1	S No. 3	R No. 4	AR No. 6	2d No. 8	Unit weights, pounds
Undershirt	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	.975
Blanket, O. D.	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	3.525
Can, meat	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	.775
Fork	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	.094
Knife	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	.100
Pins, tent, shelter	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	.086
Poles, tent, shelter	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	.850
Spoon	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	.109
Tent, shelter, half	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	2.800
Carrier, pack	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	.456
Haversack	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	2.137
Pouch, first-aid	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	.106
Raincoat	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	3.200
Clothing worn on person includes belt; breeches, wool; helmet; leggins, spiral; coat, wool; drawers, wool; overcoat; shirt, flannel; shoes; stockings, wool; tags, identification; undershirt, wool	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	[2] 19.801
Total weight, pounds	62.473	66.185	62.717	63.317	62.609	62.609	74.886	62.609	
	In combat								
Mask, gas	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	3.875
Compass, watch				1					.200
Adhesive tape, spool				1					.100
Foot powder, ¼-lb. tin				2					.250
Rifle, cal. .30, complete	1	1	1	1	1	1		1	9.539
Bayonet	1	1	1	1	1	1		1	1.019
Discharger (grenade)		1							3.194
Scabbard, bayonet	1	1	1	1	1	1		1	.466
Rod, cleaning				1					.634
Screw driver, rifle				1					.070
Rifle, automatic							1		15.500
Belt, magazine, auto rifle							1		1.325
Case, spare parts, complete							1		1.250
Filler, magazine			1	1			1		.212
Magazine (extra)	1		1	1	1	1	9	1	1.603
	20	20	20	20	20	20		20	
Cartridges, ball, cal. .30	145	145	145	145	145	145	180	145	[3]
Cartridges, tracer, cal. .30	10	10	10	10	10	10	20	10	[3]

[2] Based on winter clothing.

[3] Weight of auto rifle ammunition, 10.688 pounds. Weight of rifle ammunition, 13.063 pounds.

Equipment carried by the rifle squad—Continued

Item	In combat								
	S No. 2	RG No. 5	SAR No. 7	Cpl No. 1	S No. 3	R No. 4	AR No. 6	2d No. 8	Unit weights, pounds
Cartridges, A. P., cal. .30	5	5	5	5	5	5	20	5	[3]
Belt, cartridge, cal. .30	1	1	1	1	1	1		1	1.450
Canteen, cup and cover	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1.355
Packet, first-aid	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	.248
Axe or bolo and carrier	1								2.057
Pick mattock and carrier		1	1						2.575
Shovel, int. and carrier					1	1	1	1	2.193
Wire cutter and carrier				1					1.000
Housewife									
Ration, reserve	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	3.000
Drawers, pair									
Handkerchief									
Laces, breeches, extra									
Laces, shoe, extra									
Stockings, pair, extra									
Brush, shaving									
Brush, tooth									
Comb									
Mirror, trench									
Razor, safety									
Towel, face									
Undershirt									
Blanket, O. D									
Can, meat	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	.775
Fork	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	.094
Knife	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	.100
Pins, tent, shelter									
Poles, tent, shelter									
Spoon	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	.109
Tent, shelter, half									
Carrier, pack									
Haversack	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	2.137
Pouch, first-aid	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	.106
Raincoat									
Clothing worn on person includes belt, breeches, wool, helmet; leggins, spiral; coat, wool; drawers, wool; overcoat; shirt, flannel; shoes; stockings, wool; tags, identification; undershirt, wool	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	[2] 19.801
Total weight, pounds	58.422	60.531	58.686	59.081	58.558	58.558	80.036	58.558	

[2] Based on winter clothing.

[3] Weight of auto rifle ammunition, 10.688 pounds. Weight of rifle ammunition, 13.063 pounds.

NOTE.—Panels: 3 per squad, carried by scouts and No. 4 rear-rank.

APPENDIX II

EQUIPMENT CARRIED BY THE MACHINE-GUN SQUAD

Item	On the march										
	Sqd. ldr.	No. 1	No. 2	No. 3	No. 4	No. 5	No. 6	No. 7	No. 8	No. 9	No. 10
Mask, gas	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Compass, watch	1										
Adhesive tape, spool	1										
Foot powder, ¼-lb. tins	2										
Pistol, automatic	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Holster, pistol	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Magazine, pistol (extra)	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2
Cartridges, pistol, cal. .45	21	21	21	21	21	21	21	21	21	21	21
Belt, cartridge, pistol	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Canteen, cup and cover	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Packet, first-aid	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Pouch, first-aid	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Axe, hand and carrier			1								
Pick mattock and carrier								1	1		
Shovel, int. and carrier				1	1	1	1				
Cutter, wire, small	1										
Haversack	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Housewife	1										
Ration, reserve	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Drawers, pair	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Handkerchiefs	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Laces, breeches, extra	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Laces, shoe, extra	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Raincoat	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Stockings, pair	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Brush, shaving	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Brush, tooth	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Mirror, trench	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Comb	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Razor	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Towel, face	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Undershirt	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Blanket, O. D	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Can, meat	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Fork	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Knife	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Spoon	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Pins, shelter tent	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5
Poles, shelter tent	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Tent, shelter half	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Carrier, pack	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Book, field message, with pencil	1										
Clinometer, w/case	1										
Clothing worn on person includes belt, waist; breeches, woolen; coat, woolen; drawers, woolen; helmet, steel; leggins; overcoat; shirt, flannel; shoes; stockings, woolen; tags, identification; undershirt, woolen; handkerchief; ornament, collar	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1

Equipment carried by the machine-gun squad—Continued

Item	In combat										
	Sqd. ldr.	No. 1	No. 2	No. 3	No. 4	No. 5	No. 6	No. 7	No. 8	No. 9	No. 10
Mask, gas	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Compass, watch	1										
Adhesive tape, spool	1										
Foot powder, ¼-lb. tins	2										
Pistol, automatic	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Holster, pistol	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Magazine, pistol (extra)	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2
Cartridges, pistol, cal. .45	21	21	21	21	21	21	21	21	21	21	21
Belt, cartridge, pistol	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Canteen, cup and cover	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Packet, first-aid	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Pouch, first-aid	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Axe, hand and carrier			1								
Pick mattock and carrier								1	1		
Shovel, int. and carrier				1	1	1	1				
Cutter, wire, small	1										
Haversack	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Housewife											
Ration, reserve	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Drawers, pair											
Handkerchiefs											
Laces, breeches, extra											
Laces, shoe, extra											
Raincoat											
Stockings, pair											
Brush, shaving											
Brush, tooth											
Mirror, trench											
Comb											
Razor											
Towel, face											
Undershirt											
Blanket, O. D											
Can, meat	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Fork	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Knife	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Spoon	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Pins, shelter tent											
Poles, shelter tent											
Tent, shelter half											
Carrier, pack											
Book, field message with pencil	1										
Clinometer w/case	1										
Clothing worn on person includes belt, waist; breeches, woolen; coat, woolen; drawers, woolen; helmet, steel; leggins; overcoat; shirt, flannel; shoes; stockings, woolen; tags, identification; undershirt, woolen; handkerchief; or nament, collar	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1

INDEX

	Paragraph	Page
Advance from a halt; commands	34	15
Alignment; defined	1	1
Ammunition drill:		
Action	372	181
Ammunition squad; formation	367	180
Assemble the squad	371	180
Change numbers and duties in the squad	369	180
Equipment	366	179
Object	365	179
Out of action	373	182
Secure equipment	368	180
Squad column; formation	370	180
Arm-and-hand signals	415–468	215–224
Attention; position	22	11
Automatic rifle; rules for carrying	39	18
Base; defined	1	2
Battalion:		
Dismiss the battalion	400	207
Formations	397	200
Form the battalion	399	203
General	396	200
Inspection—		
Camp or quarters	513	261
Companies not under inspection	512	261
Exceptional	516	262
Field and combat trains	514	261
Inspecting officer other than the battalion commander	515	261
Other formations authorized	511	261
Preparation of companies for	509	260
Procedure	510	260
Staff	398	202
Battalion, regimental, and brigade headquarters companies:		
Formations	305–312	142–148
General	300–304	139–140
Inspection—		
Formation	517	262
General	517	262
Brigade:		
Drill	408	216
Form the brigade	409	216
Bugle signals	470, 471	224
Cease firing; commands	63	28
Center; defined	1	2

	Paragraph	Page
Ceremonies:		
Arrangement of units in formation	472	225
Fixed bayonets	478	226
Modification of formations	475	226
Place of formation	474	225
Presentation of decorations	488	239
Size of units	477	226
Special units; formation	476	226
Staff salutes	473	225
Change step; commands	35	16
Close-order drill:		
Machine-gun company	177–215	71–86
Purposes of	2	3
Close order; rifle company	82–131	33–50
Colors:		
Carry, position of colors at	551	280
Manual of arms, position of colors during	555	281
Order, position of colors at	552	281
Parade rest, position of colors at	562	281
Salute, position of colors at	554	281
Colors and standard:		
Color guard	549	278
Salutes by regimental	548	277
Standard guard	550	279
Use and care	547	276
Column; defined	1	2
Commands:		
Employment of	18	7
How revoked	8	4
Count off	86	34
Decorations, presentation of	488	239
Definitions	1	1
Depth; defined	1	2
Direction; partial changes of	11	5
Dismounted without arms	19–36	9–16
Dismounted with rifle and automatic rifle	37–63	17–28
Distance:		
Based on multiples of three	10	5
Defined	1	2
In column of subdivisions	12	5
Double time:		
Commands	29	14
Defined	1	2
Execution of movements in	7	4
Drill:		
Close-order, purposes of	2	3
Precision in	3	4
Drill and combat signals	410–471	214–224
Element; defined	1	2

	Paragraph	Page
Equipment:		
Individual—		
Dismounted men, display of	581	298
Mounted men, display of	582	300
Mounted, display of	583	300
Officers', display of	584	302
Escorts:		
Color	489	241
Funeral	491	243
Honor	490	242
Extended order	132–176	51–70
Extended-order exercises	299	131
Eyes right or left; commands	24	12
Face in marching; commands	34	15
Facings; commands	25	12
File; defined	1	2
Fire by volley; commands	62	28
Firings, commands for	60	27
Fix bayonets; being at order arms	57	26
Flank; defined	1	2
Formation:		
Defined	1	2
Three ranks	13	5
Front; defined	1	2
Guard mounting:		
Dismissing old guard	501	253
Disposition of new guard	499	253
Field music may be dispenses with when	502	254
Formal	493	246
General rules	492	245
Informal	494	250
March of new guard to guardhouse	495	252
Presenting guards to officers of the day	497	252
Presenting old and new guards	496	252
Relief by new guard	500	253
Salutes by guard	498	253
Guide:		
Defined	1	2
General rules for	9	5
Guidon:		
Care and use	524	267
Dismounted—		
Carry guidon	526	268
Carry guidon, being at guidon salute	531	268
Carry guidon, being at order guidon	528	268
Double time	535	269
General rules	525	267
Individual salute by guidon bearer	532	268
Order guidon, being at carry guidon	527	268
Order guidon, being at guidon salute	531	268
Order guidon, being at the trail	534	269

	Paragraph	Page
Guidon—Continued.		
Dismounted—Continued.		
Parade rest, being at order guidon	529	268
Salute	530	268
Trail guidon, being at the order	533	269
Mounted; general rules	536	269
Gun drill:		
Howitzer company	341–373	160–182
Machine-gun company	216–275	87–122
Gun, 37-mm, drill:		
Action	351	166
Assemble the squad	347	162
Change numbers and duties in the squad	345	162
Dismount the gun and form squad column	348	163
Equipment	342	160
Firing	353	170
Form squad column	346	162
Form the squad	343	161
Mount the gun on wheels and form squad column	349	165
Object	341	160
Out of action	352	169
Prepare for action	350	165
Secure equipment	344	161
Half step; commands	32	15
Halt; commands	30	14
Head; defined	1	2
Howitzer company:		
Close-order drill	313–340	149–159
Extended order	374–391	183–189
Gun drill	341–373	160–182
Inspection—		
Formation and procedure	520	264
General principles	519	263
Without transportation; general	313	149
With transportation	335–340	157–159
Howitzer platoon:		
Agent corporal, duties of	384	186
Align the platoon	325	155
Assemble the platoon	388	188
Change direction	329	156
Column of squads, being in mass or line of squads	328	156
Extended-order exercises	389	188
Formations; extended order	385	186
Formations; with transportation	323	154
Form the platoon	324	154
Individual duties	322	154
Line of squad columns	386	186
Line of squads to the front, being in column of squads	332	157
Line of squads to the front, being in mass	334	157
Mass to the front, being in column of squads	331	157
Open and close ranks	327	156

	Paragraph	Page
Howitzer platoon—Continued.		
Organization	321	153
Platoon column	387	187
Platoon leader; duties and position	381	185
Platoon mass, being in line of squads	333	157
Platoon sergeant; duties and position	382	186
Selection and occupation of position	390	189
Supply	391	189
Transport corporal, duties of	383	186
Howitzer squad:		
Align the squad	319	153
Assemble the squad	379	184
Change direction	320	153
Deploy the squad	378	184
Formations, with transportation	377	184
Form the squad	317	151
Objects	314	149
Organization	315	150
Squad leader; duties and positions	380	185
Transportation	316	150
Infantry pack:		
Assembly of full equipment, less the roll, without rations	574	294
Assembly of full equipment, less the roll, with rations	573	293
Assembly of full equipment without rations	572	293
Assembly of full equipment with rations	571	289
Bayonet scabbard, attachment	568	288
Belt, attachment to haversack	567	286
Canteen cover, attachment	565	285
Cartridge and magazine belt	576	295
Cartridge belt	576	295
Discard of roll without removing equipment from the body	575	294
First-aid pouch, attachment of	564	284
Full equipment, less the roll	578	296
Full equipment with roll	577	295
Intrenching tool, attachment to haversack	569	288
Pack carrier, attachment to haversack	566	285
Roll, making of	570	288
Special equipment	579	296
Inspection arms; being at order arms	47	23
Inspections	503–523	255–266
Instruction by the numbers	21	9
Instructor, duties of	19	9
Interval:		
Based on multiples of three	10	5
Defined	1	3
Left; defined	1	3
Left shoulder arms; being at right shoulder arms, in march	54	25
Line; defined	1	3
Load; commands	60	27
Loading, commands for	59	27

	Paragraph	Page
Machine-gun battery drill:		
Establish base lines	270	117
Firing by chart	275	122
Formations for	263	112
General	262	110
Lay guns on initial aiming point	266	114
Lay guns on parallel lines	269	117
Lay the guns for elevation	273	120
Lay the guns on their part of the target	272	118
Measure the battery angle of parallax	268	115
Mount guns	265	114
Object	260	110
Organization of battery	261	110
Parallel all guns on their base lines by means of an aiming circle or compass	267	114
Prepare for battery position	264	112
Shift battery through an angle	271	118
Tasks	274	121
Machine-gun company:		
Column of masses; being in line of masses	214	86
Column of squads; being in column of masses	215	86
Deployment, rules for	277	123
Dismiss the company	212	86
Extended order	276–299	123–138
Factors governing extended order	276	123
Formations	210	84
Form the company	211	85
Gun drill	216–275	87–122
Inspection—		
Formation and procedure	508	258
General principles	507	258
Movement	278	124
Training, preliminary	279	124
Without transportation; general	177	71
With transportation; general	209	84
Machine-gun drill, advanced:		
Attention to points, before, during, and after firing	250	106
Carry gun equipment by hand	234	96
Cease firing	242	102
Commence firing	241	102
Dismount gun from low position	236	98
Equipment required	233	95
Go into action	239	100
Immediate action	241	102
Lay off an angle	245	104
Lay the gun	238	98
Measure an angle	244	103
Measure quadrant elevation	248	105
Mount gun on sloping ground	237	98
Mount the gun in low position	235	97
Put on quadrant elevation	247	105
Put out base and aiming stakes	246	104

Machine-gun drill, advanced—Continued.	Paragraph	Page
Supply of ammunition, water, oil, and spare parts	251	106
Take gun out of action	240	100
Zero the dial	243	102
Machine-gun drill, elementary:		
Change numbers and duties in the squad	224	89
Clear the gun	232	95
Dismount the gun	229	94
Dismount the tripod	227	92
Examine the gun equipment	225	90
Form the gun squad	219	88
General rules	218	87
Lay out equipment	221	88
Load, and half load, the gun	230	94
Mount the gun	228	93
Mount the tripod	226	92
Object and scope	216	87
Organization of the squad	217	87
Post the gun squad	222	89
Secure equipment	220	88
Stand clear of gun or gun equipment	223	89
Unload the gun	231	95
Machine-gun platoon:		
Agent corporal, duties of	294	129
Align the platoon	208	84
Assembly	298	130
Formations; extended order	295	129
Formations; with transportation	205	82
Form the platoon	207	84
General	203	81
Individual duties and posts	204	82
Line of sections	296	130
Platoon column	297	130
Platoon leader, duties of	291	128
Platoon sergeant, duties of	292	129
Transport corporal, duties of	293	129
Machine-gun section:		
Align the section	194	80
Assembly	290	128
Change direction	198	80
Column of squads, being in section mass or line of squads	197	80
Formations; extended order	287	126
Formations; with transportation	192	78
Form the section	193	80
General	191	78
Line of squad columns	288	128
Line of squads to the flank, being in column of squads	199	81
Line of squads to the front, being in column of squads	201	81
Open and close ranks	196	80
Section column	289	128
Section leader, duties of	285	126

	Paragraph	Page
Machine-gun section—Continued		
Section mass, being in line of squads	202	81
Section mass or line of squads to the front, being in column of squads	200	81
Transportation	286	126
Machine-gun squad:		
Align the squad	188	78
Assembly	284	126
Change direction; command	189	78
Change direction; duties of mule leader	184	73
Formations	281	125
Form the squad	186	76
Load the carts	185	73
March to the flank	190	78
Mule, gathering	183	73
Mule leader; duties of	181	73
Mule, leading	182	73
Objects of close-order drill	178	72
Organization	179	72
Squad column, without transportation	283	126
Squad column, with transportation	282	126
Squad leader; duties	280	124
Transportation	180	72
Manual of arms; rules for execution	40	19
Manual of the color	551-555	280-281
Manual of the color and standard	547-562	276-282
Manual of the guidon	524-536	267-270
Manual of the pistol	64-81	29-32
Manual of the saber	537-546	271-275
March other than at attention; commands	36	16
Mark time; commands	31	15
Mass formation; defined	1	3
Movements; execution	6	4
Noncommissioned officers; duties	14	5
Numbering of units	15	6
Numbers, instruction by the	21	9
Order arms:		
Being at inspection arms	48	23
Being at present or port arms	46	22
Being at right shoulder arms	51	23
Being at trail arms	43	21
Position	41	20
Order, close; defined	1	3
Pace; defined	1	3
Parade rest; being at order arms	53	25
Parades:		
Battalion	484	235
Battalion (alternate ceremony)	485	237
General rules	483	234
Regimental	486	238
Regimental (alternate ceremony)	487	239

	Paragraph	Page
Piece; defined	1	3
Pistol:		
Closing chamber	69	30
Conduct of men armed with	65	29
Dismounted	66–74	30, 31
Inserting magazine	70, 78	31, 32
Inspection	73, 81	31, 32
Load	71, 79	31, 32
Mounted	75–81	31, 32
Opening chamber	68, 77	30, 32
Raise	66	30
Return	74	31
Unload	72, 80	31, 32
Withdrawing magazine	67, 76	30, 32
Port arms:		
Being at order arms	44	21
Being at right shoulder arms	50	23
Position of the soldier	22	11
Post of officers, noncommissioned officers, guidons, and special units	16	6
Present arms; being at order arms	45	21
Quibbling	4	4
Quick time:		
Commands	28	14
Defined	1	3
Rank; defined	1	3
Recruit:		
Grouping of	20	9
Instruction of	37	17
Regiment:		
Dismiss the regiment	407	213
Formations	402	207
Form the regiment	404	210
General	401	207
Halt	406	216
Inspection	522, 523	266
March	405	212
Rules for formations	403	209
Rests; commands	23	11
Reviews:		
Battalion	480	229–231
Brigades or larger units	482	233
General rules	479	226–228
Regimental	481	231–233
Rifle company:		
Align the company	127	46
Being in column of threes at close interval, to form company mass	129	48
Being in company mass, to form column of platoon masses or column of threes	130	50
Close-order drill; general rules	123	44
Dismiss the company	126	46

	Paragraph	Page
Rifle company—Continued.		
Form the company	124	45
Form with close interval between men	125	46
Inspection—		
Formation and procedure	503	255
Inspecting officer other than the captain	506	258
Personal field equipment while in ranks	505	257
Quarters or camp	504	257
Instructions for sections and platoons applicable	128	46
Organization	122	44
Route-march formation	131	50
Rifle platoon:		
Advance the platoon in attack	167	66
Align the platoon	113	41
Assemble the platoon	174	70
Being at column of threes at close interval, to form platoon mass	171	42
Being in platoon mass, to form column of threes at close interval	118	43
Being in column of threes, to form line of sections	119	43
Being in line of sections, to form column of threes	120	43
Being in column of threes, to form column of twos	121	43
Deploy in column of sections, being in column of threes	172	70
Dismiss the platoon	112	41
Distances and intervals	170	67
Formations	168	66
Form the platoon	110	40
General rules	109	40
Instructions for rifle section applicable	111	40
Line of sections or sections echeloned, being in column of threes	173	70
Open ranks	114	41
Organization	108	40
Pitch tents	116	42
Posts of leaders and runners	169	67
Reform the platoon at a designated place	175	70
Scouts, use of	171	67
Take interval and assemble	115	42
Rifle; rules for carrying	38	17
Rifle salute:		
Being at order or trail arms	56	26
Being at right shoulder arms	55	26
Rifle section:		
Advance; direction of	155	62
Advance the section during the fire fight	165	65
Antiaircraft formation	166	65
Assemble the section	164	65
Assume triangular formation	162	64
Base squad	156	62
Being in column of threes, at close interval between squads, to march (or form) at normal interval	102	38
Being in column of threes, at normal interval between squads, to march (or form) at close interval	101	38
Being in column of threes, to change direction	103	38
Being in column of threes, to form line to the front	104	38

Rifle section—Continued.	Paragraph	Page
Being in line, to march short distances	99	38
Being in line, to march to the flank	100	38
Being in line, to open and close ranks	105	38
Being in line, to pitch tents	107	39
Deploy as skirmishers	163	64
Deployment, direction of	154	62
Dismiss the section	98	37
Formation	157	62
Form the section	97	37
Frontage	158	62
Line of squads; formation	161	64
Organization	96	37
Posts of section leader and second in command	159	62
Section column; formation	160	64
Take interval and assemble	106	39
Rifle squad:		
Advance by infiltration	152	61
Advance the squad as a unit	153	61
Align the squad	87	34
Assemble	150	61
Being in line at normal interval, to obtain close interval	88	35
Being in line at close interval, to obtain normal interval	89	35
Being in line, to march to the flank	90	35
Being in column, to change direction	91	35
Being in line, to take interval and assemble	92	35
Being in line, to march short distances	93	36
Being in line at normal or close interval, to stack arms	94	36
Being in line behind stacks, to take arms	95	37
Count off	86	34
Definition and purpose	82	33
Deploy	147	60
Dismiss the squad	85	34
Formations	145	59
Form the squad	84	33
Marching the squad without unnecessary commands	149	60
Scouts	151	61
Squad column	146	59
Squad leader, position of	148	60
Strength and organization	83	33
Right; defined	1	3
Right shoulder arms:		
Being at order arms	49	23
Being at port arms	52	25
Saber:		
Dismounted—		
Draw saber	538	272
Order saber	541	274
Parade rest	542	274
Port saber	543	274
Present saber	539	273
Return saber	540	273

Saber—Continued.	Paragraph	Page
General	537	271
Mounted—		
Draw saber	544	274
Present saber	545	274
Return saber	546	275
Salutes:		
Guards, old and new	498	253
Guidon	530	268
Hand	26	13
Regimental color and standard	548	277
Staff	473	225
Scouts:		
Rifle platoon	171	67
Rifle squads	151	61
Service company of the regiment:		
Formations and drill of company with transportation	395	195
Formations and drill without transportation	394	191–195
Inspection	521	266
Organization	393	190
Shelter tent drill:		
Double—		
Execution	593	306
Purpose	590	305
In the field; procedure	600	307
Procedure when packs are not carried	594	307
Single—		
Commands	587	303
Execution	588	303
Formation	586	303
Purpose	585	303
Supervision	589	305
Striking—		
Command	597	307
Formation	596	307
Procedure	598	307
Purpose	595	307
Side step; commands	33	15
Signals:		
Action	442	220
Are you ready	426	219
Arm-and-hand	415–469	215–224
Around carts	449	221
Assault fire	441	220
Assemble	424	219
As skirmishers	423	217
Attention	461	223
Attention to orders	413	215
Bugle	470, 471	224
Cease firing; arm and hand	431	219

Signals—Continued.	Paragraph	Page
Cease firing; whistle	414	215
Change deflection	451	221
Change direction	421	216
Commence firing	428	219
Double time; or rush	419	216
Drill and combat	410-471	214-224
Echelon formation	439	220
Elevate, depress	444	220
Enemy in sight	422	217
Execution of transportation signals	460	222
Fire faster	429	219
Fire five rounds	455	221
Fire one round	453	221
Fire slower	430	219
Fix bayonet	440	220
Forward; to the right (left); to the rear	416	215
General description	411	214
Halt	417	215
I am ready	427	219
Increase (decrease) the range	454	221
Leaders join me	432	219
Lie down; or take cover	418	215
Off carts	446	220
On carts	447	221
Out of action	448	221
Platoon	435	219
Purpose and limitation	410	214
Quick time	420	216
Range; or change of elevation	425	219
Right by file	465	223
Right (left) by section	466	224
Right (left) front into line	469	224
Right (left) into line	468	224
Section	434	219
Sections column right (left)	467	224
Shift right (left)	445	220
Squad	433	219
To form column	436	219
To form line	437	220
Traversing fire	459	221
Triangular formation	438	220
Whistle	412, 413	215
Skirmisher, individual:		
Bayonet, instructions for use of	137	54
Commence firing	136	54
Cover, use of	142	56
Crawling	140	56
Lie down, being at a halt, quick time, double time or running	138	54
Move forward at a run, if lying down	139	54
Night movements	144	59
Observation	143	58

	Paragraph	Page
Skirmisher, individual—Continued.		
Rifle, use of	141	56
Set the sight	135	53
Staff officers; formations	17	6
Staff salutes	473	225
Standard:		
Carry (mounted), position of the standard at	558	282
Dismounting, position while	561	282
Manual, dismounted	562	282
Motorized organizations, position of standards for	559	282
Salute (mounted) position of standard at	560	282
Stand to horse, position of standard at	556	281
To mount and mounted, position of the standard at	557	281
Step:		
Defined	1	3
In column of subdivisions	12	5
Steps and marchings; execution	27	14
Tests:		
Advanced gun drill; general	252	107
Dismounting the gun	256	108
Elementary gun drill; general	252	107
Going into action	258	109
Immediate action; general	252	107
Immediate action; preparation, procedure, etc	259	109
Laying the gun	257	108
Loading the gun	254	108
Mounting the gun	253	108
Text, explanation of, in using right and left	5	4
Trail arms, being at order arms	42	20
Trench mortar, 3-inch, drill:		
Action	362	176
Assemble the squad	360	174
Change numbers and duties in the squad	358	174
Equipment	355	172
Firing	364	177
Form the squad	356	173
Object	354	172
Out of action	363	177
Prepare for action	361	174
Secure equipment	357	173
Squad column	359	174
Unfix bayonets; being at orders arms	58	26
Unload; commands	61	28
Wall and pyramidal tent drill:		
Common and wall tents—		
Folding	604	310
Pitching	602	309
Striking	603	310

Wall and pyramidal tent drill—Continued.

	Paragraph	Page
In the field—		
Procedure	608	313
The general	609	313
Pyramidal tents—		
Folding	607	311–313
Pitching	605	310
Striking	606	311
Whistle signals	412, 413	215

○